

GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
ARCHAEOLOGICAL SURVEY OF INDIA

CENTRAL
ARCHAEOLOGICAL
LIBRARY

ACCESSION NO. 12055

CALL No. 954.023/Ghe.

D.G.A. 79

Acc. 12055

Vol. I

~~D4366~~



1983

42 77

A.N.

12055

See

THE

STORY

OF

THE

WET

025

LOGICAL

LIBRARY V. ELHI

Acc. No.

12055

Date

22-11-1961

Call No.

954.023/Ch

Just Publish'd,

THE History of *Genghis* the Great, first Emperor of the ancient *Mongols* and *Tartars*; in four Books: Containing his

History of his Successors to the Manners, Customs and Laws of the ancient *Mongols* and *Tartars*; and the Geography of the Countries of *Mongolia*, *Turkey*, *Thibet*, and the Eastern *Indies*. Collected from several Oriental Authors, and European Travellers; whose Names, with an Abridgement of their Lives, are added to this Book. By the late M. *Paris de la Chapelle* Secretary and Interpreter to the King in French and Italian Languages. And now translated into *English*.

THE

French editor's

PREFACE.

OF ALL the oriental pieces which the late M. Petis de la Croix the son has translated, there is not one which more deserves to see the light, than this we now present to the public, for which the learned world hath expressed so much impatience. The remarks he hath left behind him to instruct the reader in several obscure passages, will serve for the ground-work of this edition, in which we shall often make use of his own words.

M. DE LA CROIX having found a manuscript of the history of Genesiz Car, the most illustrious of the Emperors of Timur-Bec, extracted from the best authors by his late father, and considering it might give much insight into the history of Timur-Bec, the subject was to an author so nearly ally'd to him, and the connection between the two histories, so great, as to publish them together. The two histories are so interwoven, that the same events, and transactions of the thirteenth century, in Timur-Bec is one of the principal characters of the two following. The conformity of the subject, and the

The French editor's preface.

greatness of the events, will render the reading of this history very agreeable to those particularly, who are acquainted with that of Genghiz-Can. Here they will find, among the most remarkable particulars, an exact description of the roads of the empire of the Moguls, and vast light into the geography of the greatest part of Asia, with a continuation of the history of the Mogul and Tartar emperors. And tho from the death of Genghiz-Can, to the birth of Timur-Bec, there is an interval of one hundred and ten years, during which twenty-one emperors reigned, who descended from Zagatai-Can the son of Genghiz-Can, of whose history the Europeans are ignorant; yet this defect is amply supplied, and the reader conversant with the time of Timur-Bec, for M. de la Croix has added to the history of Genghiz-Can a list of these emperors, with an abridgement of the principal points of their history.

* 1226.

† 1336.

I. Who the author is of whom we publish the translation.

It is a author of the history, of which we now publish a translation, is a writer universally applauded by the Orientals, and even by those who have written on the same subject; which is indeed uncommon. They agree that he is the most valuable of those who have written the history of Timur-Bec. Condemir, among the rest, prefers him before all the writers of the history of the Moguls and Tartars; as well for the delicacy of the Persian language, as for the

An historian, named Tachikoun, has written upon this subject; but M. de la Croix doubts if this work has yet appeared in Europe.

This list is extracted out of the chronological history called Labaric, and from those of Condemir and Esfendi.

force of his expression, and the beauty of his style.

H. A. C. C. C. a modern Turk, in his Ori-
 ental library, says that his name is Moultaf-
 reza bin Ali Yezdi, native of Yezd, a city of Per-
 sia: that he died in the year of the Hegira 850: An. Dom.
 that he call'd his book, *Zafar Name Emir Timur* 1456.
Gourkan, that is, to say, The history of the con-
 quists of prince Timur, son-in-law of the Can:
 that this book was publish'd at Chiraz, the lan-
 guage of the author, by order of Ibrahim
 Sultan, son of Can, son of Timur Beg: and
 that he finish'd it in the year of Christ 1405.
 that the conquest of the south of Timur
 happened in the year of Christ 1405.
 He adds, that this book has been since transla-
 ted into the Turkish language, by Hafiz Meho-
 med Bin Ahmed Alagemi. He also says, that
 our author had before compos'd a first vo-
 lume, under the title of *Muhammadan Zafar*
Name, that is, Preliminarys of the history of
 conquests: which book of preliminarys properly
 contains the history of the Chingiz, or Mongol
 houses, and families, who follow'd Gengiz-
 Khan, and Gengiz-Can, in the conquest of the
 East: and design'd him, as his first conquest, for
 that reason have ever since been nam'd *Za-
 fars*. These books, being distributed into a
 great number of Tolumes, and secured by

circle spread out of the north-western corner of the Moguls, form'd the empire which bore the name of Zahirat Coz, of which Persia was both the fear and centre. (1731) 1731-1732

1. Is the history had been deliver'd down since it would have serv'd very well to commemorate the toyes of Genghis, Can and Timur-Lex, but the life of the Mongol emperors, which he joyn'd to the history, may supply that defect.

II.

**True ori-
gins of Ti-
mor-Bec.**

A GLOSSARY OF THE WORDS AND PHRASES
 WHICH ARE USED IN THE HISTORY OF THE
 UNITED STATES, FROM THE FIRST SETTLEMENTS
 TO THE PRESENT TIME. BY J. H. HARRIS.
 NEW YORK: PUBLISHED BY J. H. HARRIS, 10 N. 3RD ST.
 1858.

They said the prince's name was Becc, which signifies white, and they said his fortune was ruined by robbing on the highway. They have disguised his name, so that no one would give us a hint and discover him of this prince: so which people they have said that he was taken by a highwayman, which he was not by a certain knight, whose name he was Becc. Thus they have alter'd the name of Becc, which signifies white, for it is an easy change in the writing and pronunciation of the Orientals, so my friend hath said.

Now, then, carry the 11 a little higher, and it will be
 the Bag we read Low.

The Preface, p. xiv.

plains several passages of it to Mr. Colbert. This minister conceived so great an idea of it, and judged of its worth so well, by the account which M. de la Croix gave him, that he ordered him to translate it into French. He accordingly began it, but was interrupted by the war, and negotiations, which the king ordered him to pursue, and in which he was employed for several years. Therefore not being able to finish his translation before the death of Mr. Colbert, he presented it to the minister of the treasury. This minister, whose penitential and religious are known to all the world, found the account of this history so delightful, that he judged it

M. de la Croix made a literal version of his author, which he plac'd over against the Persian text: but however prejudic'd he was in favor of a language which was in a manner natural to him (as he us'd to say) and which he extremely lov'd: yet he perceiv'd the French reader could never digest the figurative and magnificent poetic expressions of the Persian style, with which this work is every where intermix'd. The truth of the history, and the most important thoughts, we find writ in a plain and metaphorical style, which our manner and idiom of the language can bear. This style

we us'd to the boldest hyperboles and metaphors: besides that he wrote for people of the same taste and humor, and his subject was susceptible of all the most rich and beautiful ornaments of the Persian language and poetry, we may say that he hath display'd in this work all the resources which the Orientals affect in their expressions. But all this is so foreign to our genius, that tho' M. de la Croix paid a great regard to exactness of translation, he has not been able to convey even those with something like plainness and simplicity: yet he would not tire the reader's patience with those continual "Tahs" and "Tahs" which are so common in the Persian style.

It is therefore thought, it best to make his version truly French, that is, rather to give the sense and thoughts of his author, than his words and expressions, always retrenching what is not conformable to the taste of our nation, and in doing so, to be consistent with the approbation of several learned men.

It is also thought, it best to give the law to place the name of God at the beginning of all their works, to give praise to God, and after-

afterwards to bless M. de la Harpe, whom they usually call the seal of the prophets, believing none other will come after him. M. de la Harpe would not translate this form, with which the author begins his discourse, or his introduction to the history; and he has also suppressed the elegiac which he makes on the death of Perseus, after having said some in prose; and another elegiac on M. de la Harpe, to whom he gives very pompous titles, and a great number of figures, and of a very great length. In fine, in this part of the work, which is a sort of preface of the historian, M. de la Harpe has what appeared too allegorical, and too poetical, in the original.

There are the reasons which have induced the translator to follow in his version the original, which reasons are all taken out of his own papers. It is not to be thought that they who are fond of the literal translation, would have done otherwise. They had had a like piece to translate.

IV.
The Mogul epocha.

In the first paper, we have some more of the same species of the Mogul epocha, which is the subject of the second paper. The life of Timur-Bec, we have in the third paper, according to the original of M. de la Harpe. The fourth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec, and the fifth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The sixth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The seventh paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The eighth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The ninth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The tenth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The eleventh paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The twelfth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The thirteenth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The fourteenth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The fifteenth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The sixteenth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The seventeenth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The eighteenth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The nineteenth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The twentieth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The twenty-first paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The twenty-second paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The twenty-third paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The twenty-fourth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The twenty-fifth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The twenty-sixth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The twenty-seventh paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The twenty-eighth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The twenty-ninth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The thirtieth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The thirty-first paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The thirty-second paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The thirty-third paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The thirty-fourth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The thirty-fifth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The thirty-sixth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The thirty-seventh paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The thirty-eighth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The thirty-ninth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The fortieth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The forty-first paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The forty-second paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The forty-third paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The forty-fourth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The forty-fifth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The forty-sixth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The forty-seventh paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The forty-eighth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The forty-ninth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The fiftieth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The fifty-first paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The fifty-second paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The fifty-third paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The fifty-fourth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The fifty-fifth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The fifty-sixth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The fifty-seventh paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The fifty-eighth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The fifty-ninth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The sixtieth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The sixty-first paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The sixty-second paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The sixty-third paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The sixty-fourth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The sixty-fifth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The sixty-sixth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The sixty-seventh paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The sixty-eighth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The sixty-ninth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The seventieth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The seventy-first paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The seventy-second paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The seventy-third paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The seventy-fourth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The seventy-fifth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The seventy-sixth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The seventy-seventh paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The seventy-eighth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The seventy-ninth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The eightieth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The eighty-first paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The eighty-second paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The eighty-third paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The eighty-fourth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The eighty-fifth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The eighty-sixth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The eighty-seventh paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The eighty-eighth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The eighty-ninth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The ninetieth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The ninety-first paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The ninety-second paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The ninety-third paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The ninety-fourth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The ninety-fifth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The ninety-sixth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The ninety-seventh paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The ninety-eighth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The ninety-ninth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec. The hundredth paper is a continuation of the life of Timur-Bec.

The French never's perfect.

—

These Magnis divide their time by thirds of two months, the first of which year they give the third of the harvest, the second beginning the count and now the third of the year comes in and the estate becomes the property of the first year.

10-10-1964

Model year 1991 Christian C. Mahon (1991)

* * * * *

...and the fact that the ...

113

What could be the reason for this?

10-10-68

13/4 770
Horse 133 133012

the Sheep

The Monkey

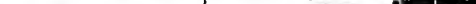
ALL INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN IS UNCLASSIFIED
DATE 08-11-2010 BY 60322 UCBAW

... ..



... ..





... ..

... ..

Figure 1. The study area, showing the location of the study area in the north-east of Iran, and the location of the study area in the north-east of Iran.

Encuesta de la Opinión Pública sobre el Tratamiento de los Indígenas

are

[illegible]

The French king's preference.

John an Hungarian prince, and niece to the king of Hungary, named Dona Angelina de Goria; and the other was a Greek named Dona Maria. These two were selected at the court of Castile, and sent with a fortune suitable to their quality: Dona Angelina married Diego Gomez de Contreras, register of Segovia; and Dona Maria espoused Payo Gomez de Sotomayor, one of the ambassadors. The tomb of the former is yet to be seen in the principal chapel of St. John of Segovia; the other is raised in a monastery three leagues from Burgos.

When of his commission, the king of Castile sent a second embassy to Timur, the chief of which was this Ruy Gonzalez de Clavijo, a gentleman of his bed-chamber, author of the Spanish book, we have mentioned, and from whom all these facts are taken.

He departed from Madrid, accompanied by two colleagues and the Tartarian interpreter, and arrived at Samarkand, the capital of Timur, in the month of March, 1406. He remained there for some time, and then departed, and returned to Spain in the month of August, 1406. He brought back with him a number of Tartarian captives, and a great quantity of goods.

He also brought back a number of Tartarian captives, and a great quantity of goods. He also brought back a number of Tartarian captives, and a great quantity of goods. He also brought back a number of Tartarian captives, and a great quantity of goods.

He also brought back a number of Tartarian captives, and a great quantity of goods. He also brought back a number of Tartarian captives, and a great quantity of goods.

feasts and banquets, which Timur-Bec gave on the marriage of his children, and to which the ambassadors were invited: which is exactly conformable to what the Persian historian says on that matter. The single point, in which the French relation varies from the Persian history, is on the subject of the business of the ambassador. The ambassador claims to have been sent on, because Timur-Bec, true to his word, and at that time about this time: when according to our author, the ambassadors of Spain and Portugal were their audience of leave, and were sent back with a great many rich presents; and after Timur-Bec let out himself for Samarkand.

months after Timur-Bec, on the road to China, met the ambassador of a great king, and then returned to Samarkand. The ambassador, according to the French history, was sent from the king, his father, and he is said to have been sent on, because Timur-Bec, true to his word, and at that time about this time: when according to our author, the ambassadors of Spain and Portugal were their audience of leave, and were sent back with a great many rich presents; and after Timur-Bec let out himself for Samarkand.

VI.

The study and negotiations of M. Petis de la Croix, in the king's service.

It is in the former part of the history, that I shall follow the study and negotiations of M. Petis de la Croix, who was employed in the king's service. We will begin with his voyage to the Levant, which he undertook in the year 1699. The history of that voyage has been already published, and is to be found in the French history. The study and negotiations of M. Petis de la Croix, in the king's service, are to be found in the French history. The study and negotiations of M. Petis de la Croix, in the king's service, are to be found in the French history.

made seven copies. He sent three in this negotiation for peace in 1763, and translated the treaty into the Turkish language, which he read in a public place. He raised the title of President, which signifies emperor, to be inserted in the title of the King of Algiers, instead of Emir, which signifies a petty prince, the title they had given to the French King till that time. One of the conditions of the treaty was, that the Republic of Algiers should send a solemn embassy to beg pardon. It has been printed in many parts of Europe, and been the subject of a medal which was struck upon it, with this motto, *Africa supplicat*. In 1765 he accompanied another envoy of Algiers, named Boudarba, into France, and presented him to the King, where he was received with great honors. He was then sent to the King of Sicily, and then to the King of Naples, and then to the King of Portugal, and then to the King of Spain, and then to the King of Prussia, and then to the King of Austria, and then to the King of Sweden, and then to the King of Denmark, and then to the King of Norway, and then to the King of the Netherlands, and then to the King of the Romans, and then to the King of the Holy Roman Empire, and then to the King of the French Republic.

In 1765 he accompanied another envoy of Algiers, named Boudarba, into France, and presented him to the King, where he was received with great honors. He was then sent to the King of Sicily, and then to the King of Naples, and then to the King of Portugal, and then to the King of Spain, and then to the King of Prussia, and then to the King of Austria, and then to the King of Sweden, and then to the King of Denmark, and then to the King of Norway, and then to the King of the Netherlands, and then to the King of the Romans, and then to the King of the Holy Roman Empire, and then to the King of the French Republic.

In 1765 he accompanied another envoy of Algiers, named Boudarba, into France, and presented him to the King, where he was received with great honors. He was then sent to the King of Sicily, and then to the King of Naples, and then to the King of Portugal, and then to the King of Spain, and then to the King of Prussia, and then to the King of Austria, and then to the King of Sweden, and then to the King of Denmark, and then to the King of Norway, and then to the King of the Netherlands, and then to the King of the Romans, and then to the King of the Holy Roman Empire, and then to the King of the French Republic.

In 1765 he accompanied another envoy of Algiers, named Boudarba, into France, and presented him to the King, where he was received with great honors. He was then sent to the King of Sicily, and then to the King of Naples, and then to the King of Portugal, and then to the King of Spain, and then to the King of Prussia, and then to the King of Austria, and then to the King of Sweden, and then to the King of Denmark, and then to the King of Norway, and then to the King of the Netherlands, and then to the King of the Romans, and then to the King of the Holy Roman Empire, and then to the King of the French Republic.

In 1765 he accompanied another envoy of Algiers, named Boudarba, into France, and presented him to the King, where he was received with great honors. He was then sent to the King of Sicily, and then to the King of Naples, and then to the King of Portugal, and then to the King of Spain, and then to the King of Prussia, and then to the King of Austria, and then to the King of Sweden, and then to the King of Denmark, and then to the King of Norway, and then to the King of the Netherlands, and then to the King of the Romans, and then to the King of the Holy Roman Empire, and then to the King of the French Republic.

In 1765 he accompanied another envoy of Algiers, named Boudarba, into France, and presented him to the King, where he was received with great honors. He was then sent to the King of Sicily, and then to the King of Naples, and then to the King of Portugal, and then to the King of Spain, and then to the King of Prussia, and then to the King of Austria, and then to the King of Sweden, and then to the King of Denmark, and then to the King of Norway, and then to the King of the Netherlands, and then to the King of the Romans, and then to the King of the Holy Roman Empire, and then to the King of the French Republic.

In 1765 he accompanied another envoy of Algiers, named Boudarba, into France, and presented him to the King, where he was received with great honors. He was then sent to the King of Sicily, and then to the King of Naples, and then to the King of Portugal, and then to the King of Spain, and then to the King of Prussia, and then to the King of Austria, and then to the King of Sweden, and then to the King of Denmark, and then to the King of Norway, and then to the King of the Netherlands, and then to the King of the Romans, and then to the King of the Holy Roman Empire, and then to the King of the French Republic.

rain, it is to be seen in the following fact: he
negotiated it, he translated it, and published
the articles in the *Journal de Trévoux*. By this
treaty we obtained a remission of five hun-
dred thousand livres. On this occasion, then
many others, he gave account of his fidelity.
He was offered a considerable reward, but
he, to put in the treaty, and to be known,
instead of crowns of France, and a re-
ward have been known. The difference of five
thousand livres. The marshal of France gave
an account of it to the king at his command.
The marquis de Seignelai did of a secret

poli, to join their forces. At the first
signal, if his majesty would have it so,
that day to be taken.

He was then a treaty of alliance
between France and the Emperor, which should
be a good reason for many other things.
He was then named by the unanimous or-
ders of the ministers and secretaries of state,
the affairs of the ambassadors and envoys of
Venice, Constantinople, Algiers, Tunis, and
Mogul, who were sent into France, and de-
clared to the king that his majesty should
except in some particular, which he should
perform the ordinary business of his majesty
his majesty's business.

It is remarkable that the king's business
before the king's business, which should
sweeps out of France into Asia, the
Barbarians, in a style esteemed in the
Africa, and suitable to the dignity of

much. That he thought exceeding difficult, and always said he never could have acquit'd it without very great study.

In 1707, the king having obtain'd for him of the king the Arabic professorship in the royal college, and at the same time the reversion of the ancient post of interpreter to the king in Arabic, Turkish, and Persian, which his father enjoy'd; he did not leave France any more, but entirely apply'd himself to the translation of oriental authors. He has left some volumes translated, the most considerable of which we shall mention in a list of his works.

His greatest applianc, is the key of the king's medals, which he had orders to translate from French into Persian, and which was presented in 1708 to the king of Persia, by Monsieur Michel, envoy extraordinary from the king to that monarch, who shew'd the great esteem for the translation which so fine a

work he had to his knowledge. He was also of the Académie des Sciences, and learned on occasion of a journey to the East, his manner of writing the Arabic.

He was also the Armenian, in which he perfect'd himself, but with prejudice to his health;

and he was also of the Académie des Sciences, and learned on occasion of a journey to the East, his manner of writing the Arabic.

THE list of his most valuable books is as follows.

1. The oriental library of **Mustafâ Galla**, Cadî of Constantinople, composed in Arabic in two volumes in folio; with two tables, one of the matters, and the other of the authors, which likewise make two volumes.

2. The history of all the **Mahometan** monarchs, by **Husein Efendi Mezaret**, of **Constantinople**.

3. The history of the conquest of **Syria** by the **Arabians** in the seventh century: the author

the seventh to the fourteenth century.

5. The history of **Morocco**, from the seventh to the fifteenth century.

6. The history of **Tunis**, from the eleventh to the fifteenth century.

7. A description of the city of **Aleppo**, translated from the Arabic.

8. A treatise of the religion of the **Druses**, translated from the Arabic, in two tomes.

9. The geography of **Babylon** in Arabic.

This piece contains a very full and complete list of the books of the library, and is a very valuable work. It is a true body of all the arts and sciences in use among the Orientals.

The French editor's preface.

xviii

10. The geography of Bir Kabya an Arabian.
11. The voyage of Mir Sidy Aly, admiral of the Ottoman fleet in the East-Indian seas, under the great Solyman; and his return by land to Constantinople; in Turkish and Tartarian.
12. A history of the animals of Demiri, in Arabic.
13. A description of the city of Constantinople, in Turkish.
14. The history of Algiers, in Turkish and French.
15. The history of Tripoli in Barbary, in Turkish.

17. A French and Arabic dictionary.
18. A French and Turkish dictionary.
19. A French and Persian dictionary.
20. A French and Armenian dictionary; and another Armenian and French.
21. The history of Armenia, translated from Armenian into French.

It is our design to present the public with a continuation of the voyages of the late M. de la Croix, the translator of this history, to which will be added a relation of those of M. de la Croix his son, who has been six years in the Levant by the king's order, and is at present secretary and interpreter to his majesty.

There have indeed been several other relations of the same sort, but it is to be regretted that they have not been so well translated, and that the present one is more important.

THE Author's Preface.

IN THE name of God, whose bounty and
grace,

grants victory to those
most fit to accomplish his eternal
designs, and continually supports
the progress of his glory: I declare that
a power aided by his hand is omnipotent, and
easily overcomes all the difficulties which stand
in its way.

SUCH was the fortune of the great and invinc-
ible Ilium, whose history we undertake. This
reader will not be surpris'd at the heroic actions
which render him in the opinion of many an em-
pire of fables, and invaded all Asia, from
the frontiers of China to those of Greece;
that is, the country as far as the Nile, the
Tiber, and Rhodanus, and the whole of Europe
with the immense islands with which
was encircled. The great and powerful
gigantic observer of the human race
was so modest, that he always pre-
ferred himself, without having recourse to
philosophy; and he succeeded in all his enterprises.

The author's preface.

wherein he had no other end than the glory of God, the increase of religion, and the good of the people. He was exceeding liberal and courteous to every man, excepting those who refused to obey him, whom he punish'd with the utmost rigor. He was a great lover of justice, and none under his government ever exercised violence and tyranny unpunish'd. He esteem'd learning and learned men: and 'twas his constant endeavour to render the arts flourishing in his kingdom. He was one of the greatest benefactors to many persons, that were in want of help.

He was also a great lover of his subjects, who were all kings or princes: and this history contains a series of incontestable proofs of it. He was fearless and courageous, equally capable of forming a great design with wisdom, and of executing it with vigor. He was very kind to his subjects; erecting charitable hospitals, and doing a great number of good works. He was also a great lover of his country, and may justly be said to have been the author of the peace which God was pleas'd to send upon the world.

He was a great lover of his wife and children, and was very careful to bring up his children in the fear of God, and to make them acquainted with the duties of religion.

He was also a great lover of his subjects, and was very careful to make them acquainted with the duties of religion. He was also a great lover of his country, and was very careful to make them acquainted with the duties of religion.

He was also a great lover of his subjects, and was very careful to make them acquainted with the duties of religion. He was also a great lover of his country, and was very careful to make them acquainted with the duties of religion.

He was also a great lover of his subjects, and was very careful to make them acquainted with the duties of religion. He was also a great lover of his country, and was very careful to make them acquainted with the duties of religion.

city of Tatta, capital of the province of
Dumnonia. On Tuesday night the first of Chaitra
of the year of the Hegira 738, which answers
to that of the Moule in the Mogul calendar,
under the reign of the Sultan Cazah, King of
Transoxiana and Farkhand.

THE prince's birth had been predicted to Cachoum Benader, one of his ancestors, in a dream, wherein eight stars seemed to shoot out of him, and the eighth star was a white star, that it enlightened the four quarters of the world; which Tournemé Can, Cachoum's name, interpreted, that a prince of his race should be born to the eighth generation who should fill the

the moment of his nativity, predicted to
and with all manner of prodigies.

France from his childhood, often
harratching his hands to the accompaniment
of the vibrations of his horoscope, for as
as he attained to the age of reason, some-
times he seen in all his actions, which the
law of sovereignty: he would talk of abdicating
thrones and crowns, his favorite diversion
presented the military art, in which
word of the youth was terrible, and
prize trophies of his exploits, finding
when danger came, and when it was
ing, and giving to others the first true
diers: he made figures of castles, and repren-
army of an enemy, and then attacked and

1. A group of Translators, long 22 22 1/2 in. x 11 in.

give the best advice of counsel to any of his
subjects. But he never admitted himself
to play and pleasure, with which he was con-
stantly surrounded. His only employment was
to take care of the affairs of state, and to ren-
der justice to his people: and if he was ob-
liged to recreate himself, he did so, the
employment of his time in conversation, and read-
ing useful books; so that he was never be-
hind the most industrious. He was from
an unbounded charity, and the
benefits of a court.

A detail of all the virtues of the great man,
and of his for the incredible benefits he had

done to his country, and the world, and the
human race, would be a task of no small
magnitude. In this work, where I have endeavored
to give a short account of his life, and his

actions, I have endeavored to give a short
account of his life, and his actions, and his

actions, and his actions, and his actions, and his
actions, and his actions, and his actions, and his

actions, and his actions, and his actions, and his
actions, and his actions, and his actions, and his

actions, and his actions, and his actions, and his
actions, and his actions, and his actions, and his

actions, and his actions, and his actions, and his
actions, and his actions, and his actions, and his

actions, and his actions, and his actions, and his
actions, and his actions, and his actions, and his

actions, and his actions, and his actions, and his
actions, and his actions, and his actions, and his

actions, and his actions, and his actions, and his
actions, and his actions, and his actions, and his

actions, and his actions, and his actions, and his
actions, and his actions, and his actions, and his

maker of it, exposed the dangers to which
 it was subject. In this work we see Timur
 the conqueror, the monarch, which
 the eyes of the
 his subjects. Sometimes we see him
 seeking his fortune as a private sol-
 dier, at other times commanding armies and
 conquering kings: sometimes he is obliged
 to quit his conquests, and wander about aban-
 don'd by every one. Sometimes he departs
 emperor of their crown.

the world became
 to his laws. And after these noble
 actions we see him quit terrestrial crowns for
 immortality, which was his principal aim, and
 the glorious end to which all these enterprises
 tended, leaving his empire in a happy and pro-
 sperous state. We see him also, which may be
 his greatest glory, that he was able to
 conquer all his enemies, and to
 subvert all his kingdoms, and to
 make all his subjects happy.

this,

in compiling it. He had always a
tas and Persian secretaries to attend him
who were some of the most learned men of his
empire, whom he order'd to write down all his
actions and discourses, with every circumstance
which might any way relate either to religion,
the public, or his subjects; and all this without
the least addition, either to embellish the style,
or to set off the glory of any of his soldiers or
generals; by lessening that of the enemy. And
thus this history, as well as that of the Turkish wars,
has been compiled.

As I have said, at several officers and persons
of the court had I seen some particular parts of the
manuscript, which themselves were
then; this prince order'd that
be collected, and had the patience to read them
in order himself, after which he caus'd them to
be transcribed and arranged in the following man-
ner. A person read over one of these papers,
and when he was come to some remarkable
passage, the witnesses verify'd the circumstances
of it relating exactly as they had seen them.
Then the emperor himself examin'd the truth
of the fact, and having confirm'd what the
witnesses said, wrote the contents of the memoirs,
he deliver'd to the secretaries the manner in
which they should insert the facts in the body of
his work; and then order'd it to be read
and read again, to see if nothing might be
add'd or taken from it.

Thus a reader will find by what I have said
that this history has been drawn up with a
great fidelity; I add that the scope of it is
position ought to be ascribed to. I have him
since he took the trouble of collecting and
paring all the parts of it. The author has

The author's preface.

XXIII

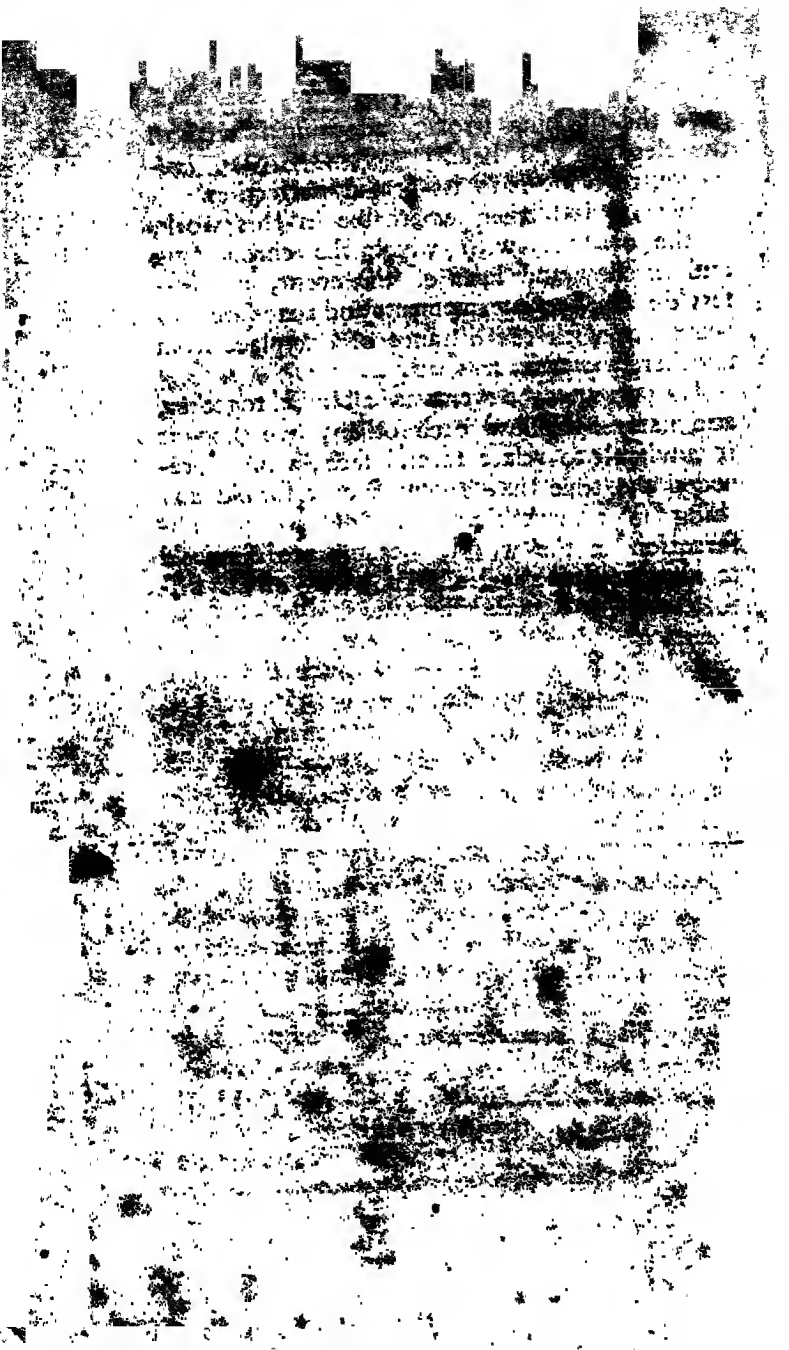
gave the finishing stroke, adorning it with all the elegance and beautys of the Persian language, to bring it to its utmost perfection.

What is further remarkable in this work, is the exactness with which the chronology, and the day and hour of the event, are observ'd: all the encampments and roads are also remark'd, with the distance of one place from another.

LASTLY, as the events are all link'd together, and naturally follow each other, we thought it advisable to relate several facts, which preceded the time, but which we perceived they

would be necessary to a perfect knowledge of his history.

THE



A MAP OF
CAPCHAC,
Part of the Kingdom
of GEORGIA,
TRANSOXIANA,
MOSCOWY &c



THE
HISTORY
OF
TIMUR-BEC.
BOOK I.

*Several events which preceded Timur-Bec's
ascending the throne of Zagatai.*

CHAP. I.
Of Sultan Baidar, Grand Can of Zagatai;
his defeat and death. Mir-Casagan, a
Turkish Prince, takes upon him the govern-
ment of the empire, and establishes a Grand
Can. The war of Mir-Casagan against Ma-
lek Hussain, Prince of Ilkhan.

IN the year of the Hegira 637, Sultan Ca-
zan*, the son of Hour-Agha, who sprang
from Genghis Can, ascended the throne of
the Cans of Zagatai, (that is, of the coun-
try that was given to Zagatai Can, the son of Genghis).

Chap. I.
An. Dom.
1237.
Heg. 11
Han.

* Mir is a contraction of Emir, which among the Eastern nations signifies a chief prince or commander.

* He was the 21st of the successors of Zagatai Can.

Book I. *ghiz Can, as his share*.) But this Prince being naturally inclin'd to tyranny, carry'd his violence and injustice to so great a pitch, that the people were reduc'd to despair.

His tyranny had so far intimidated every one, that when he sent his orders to the Princes his dependents to come to any place, and particularly to the assemblies of the states, which he held, they had so little thoughts of returning with their lives, that they commonly made their wills before they went.

This general discontent was at length the cause that Mir Cazagan, who was one of the most considerable princes of his time, and of the tribe of Tabi, revolted and join'd some other princes of the country to make war on the grand Can; they rais'd troops in Samarra, and brought a great army into the field.

The Can had no sooner receiv'd advice of their march, than he prepar'd to resist them; and when he had got thro' a narrow passage nam'd Colnga, or the iron gate, the two armies met, and fought in a plain of the village call'd Derry Zenghi, in the year of the Hegira 746.

An. Dom.
1345.
Mog. The
Dog.

The battle was unfortunate to the confederate princes; for Mir Cazagan their leader was wounded by an arrow in his right eye, by Cazan himself; and he not only lost that eye, but was a long time wholly blind.

The country given to Zaganai Can, was Transoxiana, the country of the Tugides, the great city of Calchigar near Teber, the kingdom of Bedakchan, and the city of Balch, which in the opinion of learned men, was the ancient Bactra.

A town situate on the river Gihon, that is the Oxus.

After

After this expedition Cazan return'd to Carlschi*, at which place it was so very cold this winter, that the greatest part of the cattel and horses of the army perish'd. Mir Cazagan, when he heard of it, lost no time, but got together his best troops, and march'd to attack him even in Carlschi; and was no sooner arriv'd in the plain belonging to this city, than Cazan began the fight: the grand Can was unfortunately conquer'd, and dy'd in the field of battel, in the year of the Hegira 747¹, after he had reign'd in Transoxiana and Turkestan fourteen solar years.

Chap. I.
~~~~~

An. Dom.  
1346.  
Mog. The  
Hog.

After his death, Mir Cazagan, the chief of the confederates, dispos'd of the kingdom, and set upon the throne a prince of the race of Ostai Caan, son of Genghiz Can, call'd Dachmendge Aglen<sup>2</sup>; but soon after he put him to death, and at last advanced to the dignity of grand Can, Beyan Couli Aglen, the son of Sorgadou son of Daya

\* A city of Transoxiana, long. 99. lat. 39. whose ancient name was Nefes, and also Nacseeb. The name of Carlschi was given it because of the palace which Kepek built there, Carlschi in the Mogul language signifying palace. In this place was a well, wherein one might see a moon, which the country people believed to be perform'd by magic; tho it was only a porringer of quick-silver, which the cunning Ibnel Macassa had plac'd at the bottom of the well.

We must not confound this Cazan Can, who descended from Zagara, with the great Gazan Can, the son of Abaca, who sprang from Hulacou Can, second son of Tuli, son of Genghis Can; which Gazan was King of Persia, and died An. Dom. 1303. Heg. 703.

<sup>1</sup> The Persians reckon by solar years as well as lunar.

<sup>2</sup> Hezarfen, a modern Turkish author, calls him Daneschmendge Can, the son of Hour Aglen.

Book I. Can\*, who was also of the race of Genghiz Can.

This new Can render'd himself so much the more agreeable to all the people, by his justice and liberality, during the six years he reign'd, in that they had not yet forgot the tyranny of Sultan Cazan, and had great expectations from the conduct of Mir Cazagan, who had taken upon him the government of the kingdom; which he acquitted with so much prudence and equity, in remedying the public disorders, that his name deserves to be immortaliz'd in history.

Battle of  
Nerat.

The most remarkable things which happen'd in his time, are, that having brought his army into the field at Arhenk-Serai, he came even unto the gates of Herat. But the better to understand the reason of this expedition, it is requisite one shou'd know, that from the death of the emperor Aboufaid\*, there had not sat upon the throne of the empire of Persia any absolute prince of the race of Genghiz Can; and that the princes of the Turks, Moguls and Tartars, had no longer the sovereign authority in Corassana; besides that in the country of Zagatai, at that time, Sultan Cazan, thro the excess of his tyranny, had drawn upon him the aversion of the people, as before mention'd.

During this time Malek Hussein, firnam'd Moazeddin, the son of Malek Cayaseddin then

\* Dava Can was the ninth successor of Zagatai, and was the son of Berrac Can, who died An. Dom. 1271.

\* A city of the province of Tocrestan, upon the river Gihon, long. 102. lat. 37.

\* Capital city of Corassana, long. 94. lat. 34.

\* Aboufaid Can was the eighth successor of Halacou Can, second son of Tuli the son of Genghiz Can, who reign'd in Persia, and died An. Dom. 1335.

prince of Herat, whose genealogy we have given at length in our *book of preliminaries*, daily so far increas'd his authority, that he oblig'd Cheik Hassan Yonry, and the prince Massoud, surnam'd Vedgidin, king of the Serbedals\*, to march from the fortrefs of Sebzuar with forces to attack him. He prepar'd to give him a warm reception, insomuch that on the thirteenth of the month Sefer, in the year 743, the two armys met in the territory of Zave†, where they had a furious battel, in which the army of Malek Hussein was defeated, and a great number of his soldiers kill'd. But this prince got upon a horse, and made a sign for the standard to be display'd, and the drum to be beat: at which order only three hundred horse got together near his person. He renew'd their courage by his speeches, and perswaded 'em to attack the enemys, who were busy'd in plundering. They obey'd him, and Massoud, who descry'd 'em, fell presently upon 'em; Cheik Hassan follow'd him, but he was kill'd by an arrow shot into his side by one of his own men, of which he dy'd upon the spot. He was an old captain, in whom the young prince Massoud very much confided, and had order'd him to retire, lest by chance he shou'd be kill'd in the fight; which misfortune accordingly happen'd. Massoud fled, and so the army of Malek became victorious, after having been conquer'd; they put all the Serbedals to the sword, and made a total plunder of their camp. This victory render'd Malek Hussein so proud, that

\* The Serbedals were petty kings of Sebzuar in Corassana, who had revolted at the death of Sultan Abousaid, and had form'd a small kingdom.

† A Town in Corassana between Herat and Sebzuar.

Book I. tho he knew his ancestors had never enjoy'd any thing in Herat but by the particular favour and protection of the kings and printes of the race of Genghiz Can, yet he acted the part of a sovereign, and affected those distinctions which belong to kings, such as having the kettle-drums beat five times a day, and setting up the imperial standard upon his tent. Nay, he further shew'd his rashness; for he many times brought his troops into the field, and made incursions as far as the frontiers of Andecoud and Cheburgan.

These outrages oblig'd even his relations, who were very much discontented with him, to complain to the prince Mir Cazagan, who by his good conduct, moderation and virtue, restored the empire of Zagatai to its former splendor. The princes of Erlat and Apher, with whom Malek Hussein had made war, did not to join their complaints with the others; they in a lively manner represented to Cazagan the pride of this prince. "What! said they, is the race of Genghiz Can extinguish'd? is there no further notice taken of the royal majesty? This upstart of Gour does not know himself, and believes there is no one above him."

Mir Cazagan gave attention to these complaints, and enquir'd into the truth of 'em; he then spake to 'em in these terms: "Shall a private man set himself up for king; and throw off the allegiance due to emperors? We will dispute with the sword the pride of this au-

\* Citys of Corassana near Balc, long. 100  $\frac{1}{2}$ ; lat. 36  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

\* A little kingdom, N. of Sistan, S. of Raver, E. of Herat, and W. of Bamian. Its capital is Zouf, long. 99, lat. 37.

“dacious person; and after having ruin’d his Chap. 1.  
“towns and fortresses, we will make a river  
“as big as the Gihon, with the blood of his  
“scoundrel soldiers.”

For this purpose he sent orders into all the provinces for the troops to cross over the river Gihon, and march to the appointed rendezvous; after which he went to join the grand Can Beyan Couli and the princes of the empire; at the head of whom he march’d towards Herat.

This news coming to the ears of Malek Husein, he sent an Emir with three hundred horse to view the army; ordering him to advance as far as he cou’d for that purpose, but to return immediately if he found the army of Zagatai had pass’d the river Gihon. This Emir had no sooner cross’d over the river Morgab, than he found that the Tartar army had pass’d the Gihon; for which reason he soon return’d to give notice of it to Malek, and thus address’d himself to him: “Cazagan the general of the Turks”, is upon his arrival; “he hath brought his army from Tartary into Persia; the vast number of arms and the instruments of war he has with him, have rais’d the dust up to heaven; and the people say, when they see the glittering of his soldiers’ armour, that he has used all his power to furnish the empire of Tartary with iron.” On this ad-

---

\* The names of the chief princes of the empire of Zagatai are, Emir Beyan Selduz, Mehemmed Coja Apsedi, Serimich, Gladja Ispas Apsedi, Abdalla son of Taisou, and the kings of Bedakchan.

\* The names of the Turks, Tartars, Moguls and Zagatians, are here used promiscuously.



## The History of Timour Bee.

Book I. **vice: Malek** having summon'd his council, which consisted of the princes, the generals of the army, and the principal lords of his kingdom, made this speech: "There hath march'd from the country of the Tartars into Persia so numerous an army, that even the sun is obscur'd by the dust they have rais'd; it is compos'd of men who in an assault are as firm as rocks, and when they see their enemies give way, they resemble the torrents which swiftly fall from the tops of mountains; These undaunted persons put not on their helmets, before they have resolv'd to sacrifice their lives to the honor of a victory."

Hereupon each person deliver'd his sentiments; and because the Tartar army was not only more numerous than that of Herat, which consisted of only four thousand horse, with about fifteen thousand foot, but also more accusom'd to war, and more dextrous at fighting a pitch'd battel; Malek Hussein thought it not advisable that his army shou'd remain in the city, nor under covert of the citadel, nor in the streets and gardens of the suburbs, lest they should discover fear. The more to surprize their enemies, it was resolv'd to bring 'em into the field, to meet the Tartars, and first engage with 'em, if possible; and that in the mean time they shou'd build a wall to the east of the city, which shou'd be fortify'd with large ditches from Raymore to Keddistan. Immediately every one prepar'd himself to execute these resolutions, and the arms and all things necessary for the battel were remov'd out of the city.

The army got ready; and Malek Hussein fail'd not to harangue his soldiers, and exhort them to fight like brave men, when they shou'd be call'd to it. He told them it was not the great

great number of soldiers which render'd ar- Chap. 1.  
mys victorious, but courage and conduct; and if they were posses of those two qualitis, they might assure themselves that their enemys would soon find the world it self too little for their security.

In the mean time Mir Cazagan pass'd the narrow passage of Pachuan, and came down to Kedeftan with his army, which consisted of valiant soldiers; and the next morning he took horse with the Can, and the princes Oladgia Itou, Serilnich, and others: they went near the army of the enemy, and upon a rising ground, they view'd the army of Malek Hussein. After that Mir Cazagan said, "This novice understands not the rules of military art; and the place which he hath chosen to encamp in, will soon be the cause of the defeat of his army, for two reasons: one is, that in the battel his men will be oblig'd to ascend to meet us, while we shall descend: and the other is, that when the sun shall appear, they will have the rays in their eyes, and will not be able to see those who come against em." Mir Cazagan, and the other lords, came down from the eminence, almost assur'd of the victory. The next day they rang'd their army in form of a half-moon; and after the prince had harangu'd his soldiers, they march'd towards the city, and at length arriv'd in the field of battel which Malek Hussein had pitch'd on. Then Mir Cazagan ascended another eminence, from whence he openly saw the two armys, and immediately order'd his soldiers to advance towards the enemy.

The Tartars instantly fell upon the army of Malek Hussein; but the attack was sustained  
vigo-

Book I. vigorously, and the fight was bloody: they cry'd out, *Sela!* in both the armies; that is, let no quarter be given. Every one shew'd his valor and strength, and the field was soon cover'd with blood, bucklers, helmets, and lances, mix'd with the dead, who every moment fell from their horses. At length the army of Malek Hussein, after a long and vain defence, was put to flight: and as that prince had drawn together a large quantity of water behind his camp, to hinder his men from running away, a great many perish'd in the mist, and the rest were pursu'd by the Tartars, who made a horrible slaughter of 'em.

Malek Hussein retreated with great difficulty into the city of Herat, attended only by his guards, who made themselves masters of the by-streets and gardens which join'd the city; while Mir Cazagan, flush'd with the victory he had obtain'd, return'd to his camp with the Tartar princes.

From this time the army of Herat did not once sally out of the city; and the next day Mir Cazagan approach'd it, and began to besiege it in form: his brave soldiers had skirmishes every day with the besieg'd; and even in the night they assaulted it on all sides by the light of fires.

The siege lasted forty days; the place was briskly attack'd, and vigorously defended: but at length Malek Hussein, weary with delaying, and considering the city as his prison, assembled the princes and lords of his council, to consult about obtaining a peace. He told 'em he did it to serve 'em; and for that reason he wou'd go the following year to cast himself with confidence at the feet of the grand Can and Mir Cazagan, to ask pardon of them for what he had done. All

All the lords approv'd his proposal: he then sent presents of horses sumptuously harness'd, curious stuffs, and rich carpets, with a great quantity of silver-money; and promised, that when Mir Cazagan shou'd return to the place of his residence, he wou'd not fail to go there in person to pay him his respects, and make all the submission he shou'd require. His promise was accompany'd, according to custom, with a solemn oath.

Mir Cazagan, who was an equitable prince, and of a sweet and merciful temper, granted whatever Malek Hussien desir'd, in consideration of the troubles and hardships the country suffer'd from that war; for he doubted not but the country wou'd be entirely ruin'd if they continu'd the siege.

He then consented to the peace, on the conditions Malek himself had offer'd; for which reason he took the road of Transoxiana, with the grand Can, at the head of his army, in the year of the Hegira 731.

From this time the affairs of Malek Hussien were daily upon the decline, and the esteem conceiv'd of his person began to diminish: this caus'd the captains of his army, who, for the most part, were of the country of Gour, to become so proud and insolent, that they conspir'd together to depose him, and to settle Malek Baker, his brother, in his place.

Malek Hussien had advice of it, but he was not in a condition to prevent it: all he could do, was to be upon his guard. The captains of Gour had resolv'd to seize him as he took horse: and one day as he came out of a pleasure-house, he discover'd, when he was about to get on horseback, that these men had some design against him, and were in a readiness to fall

An. Dom.  
1351.  
Mog. The  
Harc.

**Book I.** fell on him: for which reason, as he perceiv'd a company of jockeys, who came from the city of Balghiz, and were then employ'd in selling horses which they had brought with 'em; Malek Hussein cry'd out to the Gouris, "Children, do you see those fine horses of Badghiz? I give 'em you if you can take 'em." The greedy Gouris rush'd on 'em, and while they were busy'd at the pillage, Hussein fled away full speed into the fortress of Esfidge, which his ancestors had built in the meadow of the town of Herat, between the south and west, and which was full of treasure and ammunition of all sorts.

As. Dom.  
1352.  
Mog. The  
Crocodile.

In the year of the Hegira 733, Malek Hussein, according to promise, went from Esfidge to Transoxiana, to pay his homage and respects to Mir Cazagan and the Can. Mir Cazagan order'd him a magnificent entry, and not only gave him a favorable reception, but was also servicable to him in regaining Herat, which the Gouris had put into the hands of his Brother, Malek Baker; the property of which he resign'd to him.

Notwithstanding the caresses of Mir Cazagan, the princes of the empire form'd designs against Malek Hussein; for which reason they besought Mir Cazagan to order him to be seiz'd; but they could not obtain their desires, whatever instances they made: for which reason they resolv'd on the assassination of Malek Hussein, on condition, that after his death, none among 'em shou'd demand vengeance for his blood.

Mir Cazagan no sooner heard of this design, than he call'd Malek Hussein, to tell him what these princes had contriv'd against him; and he advis'd him to depart that very evening for

for Herat, since he cou'd not answer for the consequences of his stay.

Malek, having return'd his thanks to the prince for such great favors, took his leave of him: he departed as soon as night approach'd, and made such haste, that he arriv'd at Herat before any one knew of it, which he enter'd with his troops without resistance. He got possession of the throne in the citadel; and at the same time sent guards to seize on Malek Baker, and to put him in prison.

During these transactions, Mirza Abdalla, son of Mir Cazagan, departed from Samarcand with a great army for the conquest of Caranver; of which he made himself master.

In the mean while Mir Cazagan, who commonly had his winter-quarters in the camp of Saliferai, pass'd the spring at Caranver, because that country was agreeable, and very full of flowers at that season; and in the summer and autumn he dwelt in the city of Mounec, situate in a country proper for hunting, which was an exercise this prince delighted in.

One day he took horn to follow this diversion, and parted unarm'd from Saliferai, attended by fifteen persons only, not fearing any surprize: he cross'd the Gihon, with a design to hunt in the country of Arheek; and while he was at the chase, he was surpriz'd by Cotinc Timur, his son-in-law, the son of Bourouldai, of the tribe of Ournat, who had resolv'd to revenge himself of this prince for an affront he

---

\* A Kingdom situate on the shore of the Caspian sea, near the mouth of the Gihon, whose capital was Gecanga, otherwise call'd Jorjana.

**Book I.** had receiv'd from him. He fell upon him with a company of robbers, who immediately wound-  
 ed him with an arrow; and at length these vil-  
 lains assassinated this great prince, so famous for  
 his virtue and justice. Some officers of Mir Caza-  
 gan pursu'd the assassins with so much speed, that  
 they over-took Coch Timur near Condoz: they shew'd the affection they bore their master; for they bath'd their swords in the assassins blood. After this revenge, they carry'd the body of Mir Cazagan to Saliserai, where they bury'd him in the year of the Hegira 759.

An. Dom.

1357.

Mog. The

Dog.

## C H A P. II.

*Of the government of the Mirza Abdalla, the son of Cazagan; and of the difference which happen'd between the princes of Lagatai.*

**A**FTER the unfortunate death of Mir Cazagan, his son, the Mirza Abdalla, succeeded him; for which reason he departed from Samarcand, and came to Saliserai, where all the princes unanimously paid him that homage which declar'd a perfect obedience.

As soon as he had the sovereign authority in his hands, he confirm'd Beyan Couli upon the throne of the Cans, with the same authority as before. But having, during the life of Mir Cazagan, his father, dwelt some time at

## The history of Timur-Bec.

15

Chap. 2

Samarcand, he was so taken with the pleasures of that country, that he could not keep from it: for which reason he would make it the capital of his kingdom, and the place of his residence; and accordingly he return'd to Samar-  
cand with the grand Can, Beyan Court.

The Emir Courtou, the other princes, and the lords of his father's court, merely from their affection to him, represented, that it was false policy thus to abandon Saliserat, the antient and ordinary residence of the Cans; but all their advices had no effect upon the mind of Abdalla: the poet says, *He who won't hear the counsel of his friends, will one day bite his fingers in token of repentance.*

The same year this young prince became in love with the empress, wife of the grand Can; and his passion carry'd him so far, that he got the Can assassinated in the city of Samarcand: he afterwards plac'd upon the throne Timur Chah Aglen, son of Bisut Timur Can: then he order'd the body of Beyan Court to be carry'd to Bocara, where he was bury'd near the venerable doctor Chah Sefeddin Bakrely, to the great regret of all the People.

The death of the grand Can was unfortunate to Abdalla; for the prince Beyan Selduz rais'd an army to revenge it, with which he departed from the fortress of Chaduman for Samar-  
cand: when he was arriv'd on the frontiers of Kech, the prince Hadgi Berlas\*, who was prince Timur's uncle, join'd him with all his troops; and they came in a body to attack Abdalla, who after having defended himself

Army brought into the field by Beyan Selduz.

\* The son of Bourlak, son of Nemouk, son of Houtmouk, son of Caratchar Nevjan.



Book I.

The defeat  
of Abdalla.

some time was routed, and fled; and they put his brothers to death, as also Timur Chah Agha, whom he had rais'd to the dignity of grand Can of Zagatai.

Thus Mirza Abdalla was soon punish'd for his crime, and oblig'd to abandon the country: he cross'd the river Gihon, took the road above Bacalan, and went to Anderab, a city of the little kingdom of Bedakchan, where he spent the remainder of his days.

All the friends of the late prince, Mir Cazagan, were dispers'd; and the princes Beyan Selduz and Hadgi Berlas, who at that time had great reputation and authority, made themselves masters of the country, and took upon 'em the government.

The prince Beyan Selduz was of a good-natur'd pleasant disposition, and never inclin'd to mischief; but he extremely lov'd wine, and scarce pass'd eight days without some debauch of that kind, which caus'd great confusion in his kingdom; for each prince attempted to make himself sovereign, and even those who wou'd otherwise never have had such a design, seeing the empire, in a manner, without a chief, thought themselves oblig'd, for their own safety, to do as others did.

The city of Kech, with its dependences, remain'd in the possession of the princes Timur and Hadgi Berlas, as it had always belong'd to their ancestors, till the time of Caratchar Nevian; no one having made any opposition to it: the country of Cogende was possess'd by prince Bajazet Gelair; and Mir Hussein, the son of Mufella, son of Mir Cazagan, made himself master of Cabul, and several other lordships, and maintain'd himself as long as he was able in the dignity of his grandfather, with

the officers of his court: Oladgia Bogai Sel-  
dus with his party, made himself sovereign of  
Balc; and Mehemed Coja Aperdi, prince of  
the tribe of the Naimans, took possession of Che-  
burgan; the kings of Bedakchan had fortify'd  
themselves in their mountains, that they might  
be independent; and Kei Cosru, and Oladgia  
Itou Aperdi, made themselves masters of Cat-  
tan and Arhenk; and Keder Jesouri, prince of  
the tribes of Serpol and Tacun, caus'd himself  
to be declar'd king thro his own power.

All these princes, who were at enmity with  
one another, were continually at war; some  
of ~~em were slain in battle~~, and among the rest  
Mehemed Coja Aperdi, in the following manner.

Prince Setilmich, lord of Couhestan, fatigu'd  
with the war he had carry'd on against Malek  
Hussein, prince of Herat, which we have al-  
ready mention'd, had join'd himself with Me-  
hemed Coja after his return from Transoxiana,  
and contracted a strong friendship with him.

They took up a resolution vigorously to attack  
Hussein, and for that end rais'd an army, with  
which they went to assault Herat: Hussein also  
brought his army into the field to withstand em.

Mehemed and Setilmich, having a great opini-  
on of their own valor, swore they wou'd not turn  
back befor they had cut off Hussein's head.

Malek Hussein cross'd the river Morgab, and  
the two armys met on the plain of Yapaghon:  
as soon as the two princes, animated by the  
sight of their enemy, had put themselves in a  
condition to execute their resolutions, they  
went from the army, and advanc'd full speed  
with sword in hand against Malek; but, thro  
a fatal destiny, they were shot by two arrows  
from the army of the enemy; so that they fell  
from their horses, and expir'd that very hour.

Book I.

This accident put the army of the princes in confusion; and notwithstanding it was so numerous and formidable, it fled, and left the field of battle to the conquerors.

All these disorders, and the wars of the princes of the empire of Zagatai, serv'd to augment the misery of the country; tumult and sedition spread themselves every where; and nothing was heard and seen among the people but groans and marks of despair.

## C H A P. III.

*Toglac Timur Can, king of the Getes, marches into Transoxiana. The flight of Hadgi Berlas.*

**A**S the country of Transoxiana was in confusion, and almost entirely ruin'd, Toglac Timur, king of Gete, the son of Aimel Coja, son of Dava Can, who descended from Zagatai Can, to whom the crown of this country belong'd, had a design to make himself master of it; and after having call'd his officers and courtiers to him, he rais'd an army, and in the month of March, in the year of the Hegira 761, march'd to the conquest of Transoxiana. It is remarkable, that in the space of thirty three years, from the death of Turmeshchirin Can, there reign'd eight Cans in the empire of Zagatai.

An. Dom.  
1359.  
Mog. The  
Mouse.

\* The 25th successor to the crown of Zagatai: he was the son of Aimel Coja, son of Dava Can; he dy'd in 1372.

† The 16th successor of Zagatai Can: he dy'd in 1386.

## The history of Timur-Bec.

19

Chap. 3.

As soon as Togluc Timur arriv'd at the fountain Chapiak Boulak, near the Sihon, in the fields of Tachkunt, formerly call'd Alchafsch, he sent Oluc Tocatmur, prince of the hord of Kerait, Hadgi Bei of the hord of Arkenut, and Bikidgek of the hord of Cangouli, for his scouts. These three princes us'd all possible diligence; and when they had cross'd the Sihon at Cogode, Bayazid Gelair, a very prudent prince, thinking it wou'd be for his advantage to keep a correspondence with 'em, join'd his troops with theirs, and march'd towards the city of Sebz.

Prince Hadgi Berlas, uncle of Timur, rais'd as many troops as he was able in the citys of Kech and Carschi, and other neighbouring provinces, to withstand 'em; but he at last chang'd his resolution, and before the two armys met, march'd to Corassana.

---

### C H A P. IV.

*The rise of Mir Haffers, grandson of Mir Cazan: he is assisted by Timur-Bec.*

The first mention of Timur-Bec.

**P**OLICY is preferable to valor; but when these two virtues are united in a general, they never fail to form a great man.

Good counsel defeats armys; with the arms of policy, a single man may destroy a hundred; and an arrow well aim'd, never fails to find a place in the heart of the enemy.

---

\* Otherwise the Jaxartes, which separates Transoxiana from the country of Sam.

\* These are the ancient Mogul hords, mention'd in the history of Genghiz Can.

## Book I.

Timur-Bec  
first shews  
his wisdom  
at the age  
of 25.

This is plainly to be seen in the affair we are going to relate: for when the prince Hadgi Berlas, on advice of the march of the troops of Gete, had abandon'd his own country, and all his effects, to retire into Corassana, and had cross'd the river Gihon; Timur-Bec, his nephew, who was a prince of a discerning spirit, well knew, that if he kept a long time from action, his country and principality wou'd not fail of being ravag'd and destroy'd, since his father Tragai dy'd the same year, and his uncle Hadgi Berlas was fled: he believ'd there was no other prince than himself who cou'd put a stop to the ruin or insult a foreign army was about to bring on his country; he had to do with a mighty enemy, who had already brought the empire into great danger; he saw the evil which was about to fall on his people, and that the storm was approaching. This young prince, who had scarce arriv'd at his 25th year, and by consequence had not yet obtain'd sufficient experience, fail'd not to undertake an affair so full of difficultys; he repair'd to the banks of the Gihon, and gave his advice to prince Hadgi Seifeddin Berlas, concerning the great dangers a country is expos'd to in the absence of a prince, and the violence the enemys were about to offer his people if he did not prevent 'em. " As a  
" kingdom without a leader, says he, resembles  
" a body without a soul, I think it proper, since  
" you design to go into Corassana, that I shou'd  
" return to Kech; and after I have given fresh  
" encouragement to the inhabitants of that  
" country, I shou'd go thence to throw my-self  
" at the feet of the grand Can, and offer him  
" my service: I will gain acquaintance with  
" the princes and lords of his court, and lastly  
" endeavor, by all ways imaginable, to divert  
" the

“ the tempest that threatens our country : by  
 “ which means I will save from inevitable ruin  
 “ the poor people whom God hath put under  
 “ our care , an account of which he will one  
 “ day require of us.”

Hadgi Berlas was persuaded, that Timur in these discourses was inspir'd from heaven ; wherefore he approv'd his advice, and this young prince departed. When he was arriv'd at Cuzar, he met Hadgi Mahmud Chah Yefouri, who was order'd to conduct the scouts of the army of Gete, and in hopes of a large booty had made great haste, having a design to spare nothing. He betray'd himself so handsomly towards this general, that he promis'd to commit no hostility against him before he had had a conference with the princes, and made a truce with 'em : the soldiers, notwithstanding the desire they had to commit disorders, stay'd at this place. Timur-Bec departed for Kech, where he found the three princes of Gete already arriv'd ; he had a conference with 'em after a handsom reception. They shew'd the pleasure they had in his submitting to the grand Can of Gete, and gave him the command of ten thousand men, who were formerly under prince Caratchar Nevian, his grandfather's great grandfather ; as likewise the principality of Kech, with all its dependences. Thus, by the good conduct of this prince, the torrent of misfortunes, which were about to over-run this country, was stopp'd, and the people again enjoy'd peace, of which they had utterly despair'd ; for which reason, it was said, that at the sight of him alone, sorrow was chang'd into joy, and mortality into immortality. Those who had the least insight into things, imagin'd that this good success, how small soever, wou'd be of conse-

Timur  
made  
prince of  
Kech.

Book 1. quence to Timur-Bec; but they did not foresee that this was nothing in comparison of the vast grandeur which he must attain to.

Timur-Bec, after this conference with the princes of Gete, took his leave of 'em, and apply'd himself in a particular manner to the care of his country: he gave orders for troops to be rais'd between the country of Sebz and the river Gihon, and got together a good army, with which he march'd to join Kefer Yefouri. In the mean time there arose a dissension between the princes of Gete, for which reason they caus'd all their troops to march out of this country to attend Toglug Timur Can; and at that time Bayazid Gelair join'd our prince with all his friends.

## C H A P. V.

*Several intrigues between Timur and Hadgi Berlas; as also between the other princes.*

THE Emir Hussein, grandson of Mir Cazagan, at that time departed from Cabul, with intention to make war on Beyan Selduz; for which reason he sent an ambassador to Timur-Bec, Bayazid, and Kefer Yefouri, to beg their assistance, whilst he rais'd an army. Our princes held a council, wherein it was resolv'd, that Timur-Bec and Kefer shou'd go in person to assist the Emir Hussein, and that Bayazid shou'd repair to Toglug Timur Can, to remove all occasions of blaming 'em from the princes of the court of Gete, and to be present and able to answer the objections made against the assistance given to Hussein.

Bayazid

Bayazid immediately departed to execute this design: But when he learnt at his arrival at Cogende that Toghtai Timur-Cao was return'd with his army, he waited till his men were join'd on the bank of the Sihon; after which he chang'd his resolution, and went no farther. On the other hand, the princes Timur-Bec and Keler march'd with their troops in order of battle; for the soldiers were so well instructed in the military art, that they never broke their ranks either upon their march or during action.

When they had pass'd the iron gate, which we have already mention'd, they join'd the Emir Hussein, and march'd with him towards the frontiers of Chadduman, where Beyan Selduz was: but this prince, who did not think himself in a condition to resist 'em, resolv'd to retire to Bedakchan, whither they pursu'd him; so that Chah Behaddin, who was king of that country, was also oblig'd to fly, and to abandon that city, which caus'd the whole country to fall into the hands of the Emir Hussein, who there made laws at his pleasure, and assur'd himself of the government of it: after which he put to death Kei Cobad, brother of Kei Golsu, prince of Catlan. When the Emir Hussein, contented with what had been done, by the assistance of Timur-Bec and Keler Yelousi, saw himself in possession of the greatest honors, he thank'd 'em; and they immediately departed for their own country. And as it was requisite, to arrive at that of the Emir Keler, for 'em to pass over the territories of Timur-Bec, this prince, who was generous, and lov'd to appear magnificent, fail'd not to give him a good reception on this occasion; for when the Emir was arriv'd at Kachem, on the frontiers of Bedakchan, Timur went before him with so much haste, that in four days



Book I. and four nights he arriv'd at the city of Sebz, fifteen days journey on horseback from thence; and at nine in the morning at Oluc Meidan, a pleasure-house belonging to Kech, where he generally pass'd the summer. He presently gave orders for a magnificent feast; and when Kefer was near the place, Timur-Bec went to meet him, and receiv'd him with all the respect due to his birth and quality. The most delicious meats, the most excellent liquors, and the choicest fruits and perfumes, were at this banquet. The guests were no less pleas'd with the ball which follow'd, and the consorts of musick with which they were entertain'd.

After the feast prince Kefer departed for his own country, but the noble Timur stay'd in his usual place of residence. His clemency extend-ed equally to the poor as well as the rich; all the country felt the effects of his justice; the people enjoy'd a constant pleasure under his happy government; and the state became more flourishing than it had ever been.

Mir Hus-  
sein begs  
assistance  
of Timur  
a second  
time.

Soon after, Toglug Selduz committed several acts of hostility against Mir Hussein, who having been formerly protected by Timur-Bec, sent an express to let him know that prince Toglug had violated the peace: he also sent the like advice to Bayazid and Kefer Yefouri.

Timur, according to his wonted generosity, caus'd troops to be levy'd, to assist Mir Hussein a second time: he march'd at their head; and having met Emir Kefer at the iron gate, who came to join his troops with him, they went together to the Emir Hussein, who was at His-far, otherwise call'd the fortress of Chaduman.

The enemy no sooner had advice of their approach than he fled. The Emir Hussein, who was thus deliver'd from him without drawing a sword,  
sail'd

fail'd not to go and meet his protectors: he acknowledged his obligations; and having magnificently treated 'em, he waited on each of 'em back. Chap. 5.

When Timur had pass'd the iron gate, he learnt, that Hadgi Berlas, his uncle, who, whilst the troops of Gete came to attack his country, was retir'd into Corassana, was now upon his return to Kech; that he had had a conference with Mir Bayazid; that they had both resolv'd to join their troops to make war on prince Keser Yefouri; and that Hadgi Berlas had already began to put the army in order which he was to command. This news being soon confirm'd, Timur pass'd with his troops by the frontiers of the province of Kech, and join'd prince Keser, with whom he departed for the city of Kech.

Hadgi Berlas no sooner had advice of their march, than he put himself in a posture of defence; and when he was near Kech, the two armys came in view at a place call'd Akjar. They gave the signal for battel by the sound of kettle-drums, and presently there were heard on all sides the cries of soldiers who were encourag'd to smite their enemys: there was so great a dust, that one cou'd not see a person at four paces distance; yet the soldiers of both armys did not mix together: blood flow'd from all sides, and every one gave the best proofs of his valor. The fight was so bloody, that the authors, who have mention'd the battels of Roustern and Esfendar, have describ'd them less terrible than these. At length the victory fell on Timur's side of the brave Timur, by the death of the principal officers of the army of Berlas, who was oblig'd to fly to Samarcand to join Mir Bayazid. victory over his uncle.

**Book I.** Timur, with the army of Sebz, and Kefer with his, resolv'd to pursue him as far as Samarcand; but fate had otherwise order'd it: all the troops of Kech, I know not by what motive, abandon'd Timur in the midst of his march, and came over to Hadgi Berlas, inso-much that there remain'd with Timur only prince Fakar\*.

This desertion of the troops of Kech had so sad an effect on the mind of Kefer Yelouri, that he began to grow jealous of Timur; and had so bad an opinion of him, that he could not forbear giving marks of it both by his words and actions; for this reason Timur at length resolv'd to return'd to his own country with prince Fakar, who was willing to accompany him.

Hadgi Berlas gave Timur a friendly reception, and conducted him to Mir Bayazid; they shew'd abundance of joy at his return, and in appearance entertain'd him as handsomely as he could expect.

The rupture of the friendship between Timur and Kefer Yelouri.

Timur the more resent'd this action of Kefer, in that he had always behav'd himself in a friendly manner towards him; and had never omitted shewing marks of his sincerity and perfect friendship; he was so sensible of the affront, that he thought himself oblig'd in honor to resent the injustice done him, for which cause he willingly consented to the resolution that Mir Bayazid and Hadgi Berlas had taken to make war on Kefer; whereupon they got together an army, and march'd towards his country. Timur, animated

\* Timur-Bec is sometimes call'd Timur only, because Timur is his name, Bec being a title that signifies lord of a province.

\* The son of Mobarek, son of Dogan, son of Gahan, son of Caratchar Nevian.

by his desire of revenging himself on Keler, Chap. 5.  
march'd at the head of the vanguard. After  
having pass'd the mountain of Kesh, they met the  
enemy's army in a place nam'd Sarguch. Keler  
then reflected, but too late, on the fault he had  
committed: he thought repentance wou'd be  
useless, and thereupon gaining fresh vigor,  
he with great difficulty ranged his army in  
order for battle; the soldiers mix'd together  
with frightful cries, and the field of battle was  
in a moment red with their blood. Prince  
Keler, after a long and vain resistance, was ob-  
liged to yield to the valor of the enemy, and  
fly.

His victory secur'd prince Bayazid in the  
throne, and put Hadgi Berlas in peaceable pos-  
session of his own country; but the unlucky star  
of Bayazid did not permit him to forsake in what  
manner he ought to behave himself to preserve  
his good fortune; the next day he had an in-  
trigue with Hadgi Berlas to the disadvantage of  
Timur: this prince, thro' his foresight, disco-  
ver'd it in the council, and being then persua-  
ded that he did not act sincerely with him, pre-  
tended that his nose bled, and went out, and  
as soon as he got home, took his quiver and o-  
ther arms, mounted his horse and went into the  
field, confiding in the assistance of heaven,  
which had never abandon'd him: and so he sav'd  
himself from the snare prepar'd for him.

As soon as Hadgi Berlas knew of the de-  
parture of Timur, he sent after him to let him  
know, that he had just receiv'd advice that Ab-  
dalla the son of Taisou, and Zende Hacham son  
of Mehemed Aperi, had rais'd troops to make  
war on them; for which reason he desir'd him  
not to pass the River, but to get together the  
troops of the desert; that for his part he would  
send

Book I. send forces under the conduct of prince Chougam, to oppose them, and to hinder the sad accidents that might happen. As soon as Timur was advertis'd of what was past, he assembled the troops of the desert, and without waiting the arrival of Chougam, he march'd back, and Mir Bayazid departed at the same time from Kech to return to Cogende. Timur was no sooner arriv'd near Termed, than doctor Ali Gurguri, leaving the study of the sciences, took on him a command in the army; he came to meet this prince with his troops to give him battel in a place named Encar. The meeting and defeat of the warlike doctor were the same thing to Timur, since he routed him at the first charge; and pushing him as far as the old city of Termed, he dispers'd his troops, did what he thought fit in the country, and even encamp'd in that city.

## CHAP. VI.

*The king of the Geses returns to Transoxiana with a great army. The death of Hadgi Berlas. The Can confirms Timur in the possession of his country of Kech, and of a Toman of ten thousand men.*

An. Dom.  
1360.  
Heg. 762.  
Mog. The  
Ox.

THE ambition of governing in Transoxiana was rekindled in the mind of Togluc Timur Can, which caus'd his bringing into the field a great army, with which he fell upon that kingdom. As soon as he was arriv'd at Cogende, Mir Bayazid, who was prince of that place, paid him his respects according to custom. Beyan Selduz went to meet this Can with abundance

dance of ceremony as far as Samarcand; and Hadgi Berlas, far from opposing him as he had before done, trusted in providence, and went likewise to meet him. Chap. 6.

During these transactions, the Can seiz'd on Mir Bayazid, and put him to death, which made Hadgi Berlas afraid lest he shou'd be serv'd so too; he therefore fled into his country of Kech, whence he brought some troops, with which he cross'd over the river Gihon: they were overtaken by the regiment of Cachmir belonging to the army of Gete, who follow'd their track. The Cachmirians immediately attack'd him, and there was a bloody battel, in which Chougam Berlas was kill'd. Hadgi Berlas retir'd into Corassana; when being at one of the villages of Jouvin named Corache, which is dependent of Sebzuar, he was surpriz'd by a company of robbers, who assassinated him and his brother Idekou. Corassana was soon after conquer'd by the army of Gete; and one may truly say, that Timur was wholly reveng'd by the hands of the Getes for all the unjust and traiterous actions of the princes of that country: for after he had slain the assassins of his uncle, he join'd by the Can's permission the village of Corache to the hereditary countrys of Hadgi Berlas; the soil of which is fruitful thro the industry of the people.

Death of  
Hadgi Ber-  
las, uncle  
of Timur.

Justice  
done by  
Toghuc  
Timur  
Can to  
Hadgi Ber-  
las.

There was at that time at the court of Gete a prince whose name was Mir Hamid, of the tribe of Kurlukut, who highly distinguish'd himself among the other lords of the court by his fine genius, prudence, and policy, which obtain'd him the favor of the grand Can; in-  
much that whatever he propos'd was approv'd of, and he was never refus'd any thing he request-  
ed. As he was a friend to Timur, he had held

**Book I.** on every opportunity to represent to the Can the good qualitys and extraordinary valor of that prince, in so enticing a manner, that the Can took pleasure in hearing him: he begg'd of him the countrys which belong'd to Timur by right of succession; the Can granted em, and at the same time sent an express to our prince to come before him: He gave him the handsomest reception imaginable, and confirm'd him in the sovereignty of all the province of Kech, and of a Toman, which descend'd to him by the death of Hadgi Berlas, with all its dependences.

A body of  
ten thou-  
sand men.

In the winter of this year the Can resolv'd to make war on Mir Hussein; and he brought an army into the field to that purpose: Mir Hussein also rais'd troops, and march'd as far as the river Vakech, where he encamp'd to wait the army of the Can, which arriv'd there after having pass'd the iron gate of Coluga.

When the two armies came in view, they were rang'd in order of battel. Kei Cosru prince of Catlan, whose brother, Kei Kobad, Mir Hussein had put to death, abandon'd with his troops Mir Hussein, and came over to the army of Gero: This desertion oblig'd Mir Hussein to fly; the victorious Can pursu'd him, cross'd the Gihon, and came as far as Condoz. His troops plunder'd all the people of that country even to the mountain of Hendoukech, and the army encamp'd the following spring and summer in those parts.

Return of  
Togluc  
Timur to  
Samar-  
cand.

At the beginning of autumn the Can return'd to Samarcand, and in his way put to death the prince Beyan Selduz and others, who he suspected were inclin'd to revolt from him: at the same time he behav'd himself obligingly to those who, as he was assur'd, remain'd firm

in

in his interest : and having made the empire of Chap, 7.  
 Tranfoxiana submit to his authority, and constrain'd all the princes, some by his sweet temper, others by force, to take an oath of fidelity to him : he gave the government of the conquer'd country to his own son Elias Coja Aglen, and order'd several lords and captains of his court to attend on the person of the prince under the command of Bikidgek. Prince Timur had in charge the principal administration of affairs of state under that prince, becaufe of his wisdom. At length the Can departed for the place of his ordinary residence.

C H A P. VII.

*Timur-Bec marches in search of Emir Hussein.*

WE always find that adyerfity succeeds prosperity ; Joseph did not arrive to the highest pitch of grandeur, till he had suffer'd the utmost disgrace : the same happen'd in a manner to prince Timur ; for after Togluo Timur Can had departed from Tranfoxiana to return to Gete, Bikidgek, to whom he had given the fupremacy over all the lords of Gete, of whom confifted the court of his son Elias, was not obedient to the orders of the Can ; for besides his not rendering juftice to others, he was even inclin'd as to commit acts of hoftility againft the Can himfelf. Timur, who forefaw the great disorders this contempt of the Can's commands would caufe in the kingdom, thought it not advifable to ftay there, and therefore went to feek Emir Hussein ; he underwent many difficultys, to join this prince, who he knew was



**Book I.** was in the deserts, because they had receiv'd no intelligence of him: but at last he met him in the deserts of Kivac, near the well of Sag-hedg.

These two malecontent princes went to find out Tekil governor of Kivac; but he had a villainous design to seize 'em: his malice was discover'd, and they parted from him, accompany'd by no more than sixty men, and went towards Layab. Tekil pursu'd them with a thousand horse well arm'd, and overtook them: they immediately prepar'd themselves to give him battel, notwithstanding their small number: the fight was bloody, and it was carry'd on with an admirable intrepidity and prudence. Tagi-Bonga Berlas, and Saif-ul-Din, distinguish'd themselves among the rest; the first did so, that kill'd, they fail'd not to fight on foot in the field, as did Eitchi Bohader, who had his horse shot under him, yet nevertheless fought with extreme valor, with his bow in his hand. Timur, who was willing to partake of the glory, and had a particular regard to the safety of so great a man, snatch'd the bow out of his hand, and broke the string, lest his intrepidity shou'd cause his death. They fought with so much vigor, that there remain'd only fifty horse of the thousand which Tekil had brought into the field, who were not kill'd or wounded; and of the sixty whom our princes had with 'em, there remain'd but seven. Hussein, if one may so say, collected all his strength into his arm, and rush'd full speed upon Tekil; he split in two the enemy's standard, and struck terror into the most courageous. In the mean time Tekil's men surrounded Hussein, and had slain him, if Timur with sword in hand had not made his way thro the midst of 'em, and dispers'd

pers'd 'em, to facilitate the means for Mir Hussein to disengage himself. They presently rally'd, and return'd to the charge; Hussein's horse being wounded with an arrow, fell under him, and this Prince had continu'd fighting on foot, if the princess Dilchadaga his wife had not got off her horse to give it him. Timur, whose valor and good fortune had never let him miss an opportunity of acquiring glory, turn'd about in the perilous condition he found himself in, and with an invincible courage rush'd into the midst of the enemy's troops, with his sword in one hand, and his bow in the other. He aim'd so true so successfully, that he shot the general of this unfortunate army in the face; who fell from his horse, and Timur with a half-pike, which he took from off the ground, gave him so violent a blow, that he join'd his body to the earth. And thus ended the battel with the ambition of the perfidious Tekil.

Timur made Hussein mount his horse; they re-entered the desert, tho they had but seven soldiers, and at last were abandon'd by three of this small number, who were of Corassana. Timur was not more surpriz'd at this misfortune than at any other; for this prince had as much resolution in adversity, as he had moderation in prosperity: he comforted the companions of his troubles, and encourag'd 'em by his discourse. At last it was resolv'd, they shou'd separate, that they might not be known in the desert; he went before with the princess Tekel Aga his wife, the sister of Hussein, accompany'd only by one faithful servant. He pass'd the desert, and arriv'd at Jourfei, where he met a herd of Turcomans; these brutish men gave the alarm to their com-

## The History of Timur Beis

**Book I.** panions, and they surrounded him. Timur hid his princess in a sort of pit, recommended himself to God, and then march'd towards 'em sword in hand; but a Turcoman nam'd Hadgi Mehemed knew him, and prevented their attacking him: the Turcomans made him satisfaction, and endeavour'd by their services, such an entertainment which lasted all night, to make reparation for the want of respect which they had shewn to his person. The next day prince Timur gave 'em marks of his liberality; presenting 'em with a ruby of great price, and two embroider'd suits of armor cover'd with pearls of inestimable value. Hadgi Mehemed made choice of three horses, which he presented to Timur, with all things necessary for his journey, and gave him a servant nam'd Sargi Cohlak, to follow him as a guide: in this condition he went to join Emir Hussein, who had taken shelter there; and after their meeting they came to a place call'd Mahmoudi, and got off their horses near a well in the desert, where they staid about twelve days.

Mir Hussein and Timur betray'd by Ali Bei,

In the mean while, Ali Bei the son of Argon-chah had advice of their arrival at Mahmoudi: his ill fortune prompted him to march against them with sixty arm'd horse: our princes were surpris'd, and led to Macan, where Ali Bei for their prisoners order'd 'em a dark chamber, the furniture of which was very mean; and it was so very nasty, that there was no living there.

Mehemed the brother of Ali Bei, having advice of the injurious manner in which his brother treated these lords, foresaw that this affair wou'd one day be of ill consequence to him: he therefore sent from the frontiers of Tous presents to Timur and Mir Hussein; and wrote to his

his brother in terms which reproach'd his indiscretion, and expressly advis'd him to give the princes their liberty, and to ask pardon of em for the ill treatment he had us'd towards em, and to comfort them as much as possible. But the malice of Ali Bei wou'd not let him take this advice. He seiz'd on his brother's presents, and did not free them from their prison till the end of fixty two days : and he was of so ungenerous a temper, that when he granted them their liberty, he gave them but one poor lean horse, and an old camel. They were in this distress, when Mobarekchan prince of Samarkand, and a friend to Timur, had advice of their misfortune ; he went to seek them with his children, and having testify'd his sorrow for their affliction, presented Timur with several fine horses, and gave him all the assistance he was able. Timur receiv'd them with joy, and, according to his wonted generosity, gave the horses to Mir Hussein.

Then these two princes consulted what they shou'd do in their present condition : and they came to a resolution that Mir Hussein shou'd go to Hirmen, a place proper to pass the winter in ; and that Timur shou'd return into his own country, that he might be able at length to rejoin Mir Hussein at Hirmen, with Tomen, prince of the tribe of Mikouzeri.

They departed according to this resolution ; Timur Hussein towards Hirmen, and Timur towards Kech. After he had cross'd the river, and arriv'd at Bocar-Zendan, a village of Bocarra, he there left the princess Olagiat Turcan one of his wives, because his affairs oblig'd him to that preparation, that he might not be discover'd in his journey : he departed secretly and pass'd without being discover'd thro his

Book I.



Timur  
swims o-  
ver the  
Gihon.

own country of Kech. In the mean while Temouke Courtchin knew of his arrival, and came to meet him with about fifteen men. Timur order'd him to follow him, and they went to the mountain Cuzar, which they pass'd over next morning; and in the evening arriv'd at Aconbi, where they cross'd the Gihon, and enter'd the desert: but because the weather was exceeding hot, they were oblig'd to stay a whole month on the bank of the river, under the shade of a little wood, during which time the litter\* of the princess Turcan, which was departed from Bocar-Zendan, and mov'd but slowly, arriv'd there. And perceiving at some distance a dust rais'd by a great number of horsemen, they thought it convenient to cross the river: Timur went on horseback into the water, whilst the horse that carry'd the princess's litter follow'd him: this oblig'd all the company to do the same, notwithstanding the rapidness of the great river, which they all safely cross'd. From thence they enter'd into the desert, where they staid some days, during which time Timur learnt that the people were gone out of their Ilak, that is, a place proper to pass the summer in: And this news made him desirous to go thither, and enjoy the cool season; he repair'd thither with his company, and having pass'd a month there, they march'd towards Samareand. Timur went down to the princess Cothie Turcan, his eldest sister, and staid with her forty eight days; but as soon as he learnt that the people knew him, he took horse and went to the meadow of

\* By the word litter is to be understood a four-corner'd rich, adorn'd with brocade within, and cover'd on the outside with red Indian linen, in which the ladies in the Levant are carry'd. This nich is convey'd by a horse, camel, or mule.

Kech, where he lodg'd in a village call'd Achighi forty eight days longer: after this he departed along the banks of the Gihon, where he met Timur Coe Aglen, and Behram Gelair, with whom he went to Candahar, as he had promis'd Mir Hussein. God favor'd their design; when they were arriv'd at Hirmen, which was the place of rendezvous, they found Mir Hussein with Toomen: and here Behram Gelair parted from them, and fled into India.

CHAP. VIII.

*Several warlike exploits of Timur and Hussein.*

**A**Bout this time the prince of Sistan was engag'd in war; but being too weak to defend himself against his enemy, he was oblig'd to beg assistance of our princes, to whom he made known the danger he was in. Upon this they match'd to join him with a thousand good soldiers well equip'd: the prince went to receive them with great ceremony, and promis'd that if thro their assistance he shou'd be deliver'd from his enemy, and regain his former prosperity, he wou'd in return present them with a great many precious stones, and acknowledge the obligation as long as he liv'd. These princes forthwith march'd against his enemy, attack'd and defeated him; but the prince of Sistan, not being in a condition to perform his promises, only return'd 'em thanks for what they had done. When our princes were departed from Sistan, they met a great company of Segh-

Mir Hussein and Timur part for Sistan.

# The history of Timur-Beg.

Book I. **ians**, who waited their coming, with design to fight 'em. The arrows and darts flew from both sides, and particularly from Timur's, who being got into the midst of his enemys, let fly his arrows against 'em, and also rush'd with sword in hand upon the most valiant men, several of whom he slew outright; his war-cloth and lance also render'd him as formidable to all those whom fortune plac'd in his way. The slaughter which he soon made, oblig'd the enemys to employ all their strength against him alone; they oppress'd him with their arrows, and tho' he always made a vigorous defence, he was dangerously wounded in the hand: nevertheless the Seghziens being over-power'd by our brave men, were put to the rout, and were entirely defeated.

Timur wounded in the hand: Hezarfen says that he became paralytic, and lame by this wound.

After this victory, our princes return'd to Kieblac. Timur said at the camp of Tuzgen to be heal'd of his wound, and Hussein march'd towards Bactian with twenty men: he met Ajoini younger brother of Bkidgek, who oppos'd his passage with his troops. Hussein was necessitated to fight; but his soldiers, over-power'd by the great number of the enemys, were vanquish'd; and Hussein troubled at this disgrace, fled to Cheberte, accompanied by twelve men only.

Timur recovers of his wound, and marches towards Arsef.

Timur was no sooner heal'd of his wound, than he march'd towards Arsef with Timur Coja Aglen, and twenty four others. When he was arriv'd at Kehmerdi, he learnt news of the defeat and flight of Hussein; and sent one of his

\* A people inhabiting the country of Seghze, near Segshan or Sistan.

\* Winter-quarters.

† Sadik Berlas, descended from Ulder, son of Candar Novian.

men to let him know of his recovery, and to invite him to come to Arsel. Timur continued his road, and met Saddle-Bekas\*, who with a design to serve under him, had pass'd the desert with fifteen of his domesticks to seek him. Timur receiv'd him handsomely, and immediately sent to Hassoia, to let him know that the sooner he came to join him the better. In the mean time, Timur on the road perceiving a hundred horse, sent a foot-soldier to know who they were; who brought him word that their chief was Camochi the son of Hassoia, who upon the news of Timur's arrival in the country of Hassoia, came to seek him. In short, Timur found these men were friends, because their leader had wheel'd his horse about on an eminence in token of joy: he then join'd them, and they went together towards Arsel, from whence he sent spys, who brought him word the next day that they perceiv'd at some distance a body of horse. Timur immediately mounted, and went to join them: he ask'd them who they were; they answer'd, we are officers of the invincible Timur. He spread his horse into the middle of them, and found Fochas Coja Bekas, prince Seifeddin, Aiche and Takt, accompany'd by seventy chosen soldiers. These brave men, from the esteem they had for the valor of Timur, had voluntarily engag'd in his service: when they had found what they sought for, they alighted off their horses, and kiss'd the ground on which he stood, a custom us'd towards the greatest princes. Timur return'd home, and the next day they

\* Saddle Bekas, descended from Bek, son of Camochi Meyian.



Book I. deserv'd another body of horse who came from Kehmerdi; they found that it was Chir Behram, who after having staid at the camp of Toumen, whilst Timur departed thence, came to find him, repenting of what he had done. He learnt that Mir Hussein was also coming to meet Timur, being informed of his cure by Sadtic and his servant Sevendge.

Ouloun Couli with a hundred and thirty horse, and Mamut Keli with a hundred and fifty foot, also offer'd their service to our prince in Arsef: he receiv'd 'em willingly, and they had the satisfaction to learn from his own mouth the adventures which had happen'd to him during his absence.

They also having advice that Mengheli Donga Selduz, their sworn enemy, had fortify'd himself in Olatchou, immediately march'd towards this citadel to force it: but Chir Behram, Mengheli's friend, warded off this blow by telling Timur to let him go to him, under pretence of persuading him to relent by his remonstrances, and even to bring him before him. The prince consented to it, but Mengheli prefer'd flight to all other advice.

About the same time three hundred men of Doulan Jaoun, dependent of Culin, who formerly were in the service of Timur's relations, came to offer him their service.

These troops very much strengthen'd the two princes; they departed from Arsef for Souf, which is a defile of mountains where Amies son of Toumen was at the head of two hundred men, to favor the march of the cavalry of Balc: and this captain, being inform'd of the good condition Timur and Hussein were in, join'd those princes.

In the mean while Temouke was sent with Chap. 8.  
three persons to the iron gate to gain intelligence; he arriv'd there after having pass'd the river Termed, and learnt that the army of Gete was retir'd from thence, having first ravag'd all the country. Temouke at this place met his relations, who, after a thousand caresses, told him that his wife and children were encamp'd in the neighbourhood, and they besought him very much to go and see them: but the generous Temouke refus'd to do so, and bravely answer'd, that when the master was driven from his house, he could not think that the servant

and Hussein departed from Souf with their little army, pass'd the straits of Ghez, and came into the plain of Oliai Bonga. They there learnt that the princes Soliman Berlas, Emir Moufa, Yaken Berlas, Hendouke Berlas, and many others with their troops, hearing of the success of their affairs, had broke the agreement with the Geres, in order to join them, and march'd towards the river Termed; and when they were near the river, they hasten'd from Oliai Bonga towards the Gihon, with order to march all night, and even to cross the river, to learn news, and to return forthwith. For their part, they departed from Oliai Bonga, and enter'd into the country of Balc: here these princes their enemys, viz. Aboufaid, son of Balcon; Mengheli Bonga Selduz, who had taken the citadel of Olatchon to Aboufaid his father-in-law; and Haider Andkondi, were united, and having got together six thousand men, with whom they design'd to attack our princes. But when they no sooner heard of the arrival of the two princes, than excited by hate and ambition, they march'd with their troops

**Book I** troops towards their camp, stopp'd on the banks of the river Abyssah, which separated the two camps, and laid ambuscades in all the passages of that river.

Timur, who was well skill'd in the art of conquering, came to the bank of the river to put a stop to the first onset of the enemy, and to wait the arrival of his friends: he inferibly gain'd what time he had need of; and behav'd himself so circumspectly, with regard to the march of each, that the enemy's army was oblig'd a great while to move along the bank of the river near the straits of Ghez to find a place fordable, with design to come to blows; which, thro Timur's prudence, they were not able to do till they came in sight of the city of Bala.

Then the two parties rang'd their troops in such manner, that the main body was between the right and left wings, and the horse lord Abdalla lay between the two armies. During these preparations, the princes, who we said before were near Termed, join'd our party: Temouke arriv'd also, and gave advice of every thing he had observ'd beyond the Gihon, as well in relation to the army of the Getae, as concerning other particulars.

The combat began about noon, and lasted all night: Temouke was dangerously wounded; guards and centinels were fix'd in all places convenient for 'em. As soon as day-light appear'd, the foldiers of both armies, on the sound of the kettle-drums, gave a great shout, excited by a desire for fighting. Timur, with his wonted intrepidity, pass'd the bridge, and fell upon the enemy, tho their army was much more numerous than his, and wholly compos'd of valiant foldiers. This boldness struck fear into all the enemy,

Mir Husein and Timur fight Aboufaid, Mengheli Bouga, and Haider.

enemys, who cou'd not withstand the bravery of our prince, but fled with great confusion. Chap. 3

After this victory Hussein and Timur review'd their soldiers, and found only two thousand horse: Timur reserv'd one part to himself, and with 'em went before towards the Gihon, which he cross'd at Termed in a bark; and after having encamp'd on the bank of the river, he sent scouts to the iron gate of Coluga, who being fatigu'd, fell asleep, insomuch that Ajouni, younger brother of Bikedgi, unexpectedly came upon 'em with his troops. Timur, who rely'd on his scouts, was surpris'd at seeing; and his soldiers were resting themselves in their tents, when a sudden both the scouts and enemy arriv'd at their camp.

Our men had not time to rally, nor fix themselves in order of bartel to oppose the enemy: all they cou'd do, after abandoning their tents, was to embark for repassing the river; whilst our hero maintain'd his ground with a handful of brave men, and held in an life, where he sustained the enemy's attack with more than human valor. In that dangerous time to his troops to cross the river, and he himself soon follow'd.

The two parties remain'd a whole month in sight of each other, on each side the river; and Timur having caus'd the barks to be burnt, departed at length for Culm, on the frontiers of Balk, where he join'd Hussein with the rest of the army.

The two princes march'd to Condoz, where they got together the troops of the tribe of Boroldai, from which they turn'd towards Bedakchan. At their arrival at Taikan, they made peace with the kings of Bedakchan. They then return'd to Arhent, and after having cross'd the river near Saliserai, went to Caslan, pass'd the desert,

Hussein and Timur make peace with the kings of Taikan and Bedakchan.

**Book I.** art, and encamp'd in a place nam'd Ghulec. Here Hussein openly complain'd of Chir Behram, even before his face, and before Poulad Bouga, in that he wou'd return to his province: he told him he did not act with honor, in abandoning them when they were near the enemy, and had so great occasion for soldiers. Timur gave him his advice, and us'd him very kindly, that he might oblige him to stay with 'em; but he wou'd not: and tho' his humorfom temper was enough to provoke Hussein, yet he dissembled his resentment; and Chir Behram parted for Belgevan\*.

## CHAP. IX.

*The rencounter of the army of Gete, and its defeat, caus'd by the policy of Timur, with the reduction of the city of Keih.*

**I**N the mean while the news was confirm'd, that Toclug Selduz, Kei Cofru, and several other princes of Gete, were come at the head of an army of that kingdom; and that moreover Timur, son of Bubezan Satic, Chir Behram, Toclug Coja Berlas, Hadgi Bel, Coja Berlas, son of Blkidgek, and other princes of the same, with their troops, had encamp'd with twenty thousand men between Giala and the bridge Senghin; and besides all this, above six thousand men had deserted our princes, so that their forces were much inferior in number to those of the Getes: but Timur, who trusted in God, and

\* A town in the province of Calan, long 1041. lat 39.

incessantly besought his assistance, frequently repeated this passage of the Alcoran; *How often has a small number of troops, by the permission of God, conquer'd an infinite number of soldiers?* And he was not ignorant, that if God was for him he had nothing to fear. In this disposition of mind, he march'd with two thousand men towards this great army; and meeting 'em at the foot of the bridge of Senghin, he boldly disputed their passage; he fought with extraordinary courage from nine in the morning till night, which gave his Soldiers an opportunity of taking rest. In the mean time Timur reflect'd on the great inequality of the forces, and he could not be able to succeed in his designs if his valor was not seconded by policy; he therefore had recourse to this stratagem: he order'd the princes Mousa, Muvaïd, Erlat, and Ouscar Behader, to post themselves at the foot of the bridge with five hundred of the bravest soldiers, whom he wou'd leave with 'em, whilst he swam over the Gibon with the rest between the plain of Issan and Rassin Kech, and posted himself on the mountains.

Timur crosses the river at the bridge of Senghin.

The next day the enemys scouts knew, by the marks of the horses feet, that troops had pass'd the river in the night. This report made the leaders of the enemys army look about 'em, and hinder'd their fighting that day. When night came, Timur order'd his men to approach 'em, and to light fires on the tops of the hills round their army. This cast fear into the soldiers of Geta, who imagin'd they were surrounded by a numerous army; they therefore fled that night in disorder, without fighting: they dar'd not fly towards the bridge because of the five hundred men posted there, and whom they believ'd to be a much greater number, altho the Geta were

Flight of the army of the Geta.

more

**Book I.** more than ten to one. It may be truly said that the fires kindled on the mountains broke the general's measures, and put a stop to the soldiers valor, since the disorders began among 'em from that time. As soon as Timur perceiv'd the effect of his stratagem, he came down from the mountain like a torrent, and fell upon the enemy sword in hand; they slew so many of 'em, that there were nothing seen thro' out the field but dead bodys: he pursu'd 'em as far as the plain of Hedgerat; and Mir Hussain, who arriv'd with the rest of the army, continu'd to make a terrible slaughter of 'em. This defeat wonderfully encourag'd the soldiers of Timur and Hussain, who encamp'd in that plain, while the renown of this victory spread it self on every side, and gain'd Timur great reputation.

He then decamp'd, and march'd with two thousand men to the iron gate, where he met the inhabitants of Kech, and of the neighbouring places, who had fled from the army of the Ouzs, and came in multitudes to seek him, and implore his protection. Here Timur chose three hundred men to guard his person, and order'd the others to stay there. He then sent the Emirs Soliman Berlas, Yakou Berlas, Behram Gelair, Gela-leddin Berlas, Seifeddin and Yoltimur, with two hundred of his guards towards Kech; ordering 'em to form four squadrons, and to fasten on each side their horses two long branches of trees well furnish'd with leaves, that in drawing 'em along they might raise a great dust. They punctually executed that order, which had its desired effect; for the governor of Kech, who lay so much dust upon the plain, believ'd there was a great army; this struck a terror into him, and made him abandon the city; which Timur's men enter'd without opposition, and there establish'd officers

officers of justice, and all things necessary. Thus *Chap. 10.*  
fortune, which was always favorable to Timur, caus'd him to triumph over an army by fire, and to conquer a city by day.

CHAP. X.

*The death of Toglus Timur Can, king of the Geter, and the defeat of his army by the princes Timur-Bec and Hussein.*

As soon as the king of Can Toglus Ti-  
mur receiv'd the news of it, he was encamp'd at Tach Arighi, four leagues from Kech: he had with him the princes and lords of his court, with a numerous army of horse and foot. The princes who brought him this news, were Oluc Tocatur, and Mir Hamid, who came principally to conduct him into his country of Geter, where he was to take possession of the Imperial throne of his father.

Death of  
Toglus  
Timur  
Can, in  
1372.

Timur, with his hundred horse, march'd all night to arrive at Cuzar: a vast concourse of people came the next day to prostrate themselves before him: he rais'd some troops out of 'em, which he join'd to those of Kech, and order'd that Coja Selaberi shou'd command the rear of the army, with which he wou'd encamp at Chokedalic, to which place the Cheik Mehemet came to join Timur with seven regiments. They remain'd several days encamp'd at Chokedalic: during which time Mir Hussein arriv'd with his troops, and those Timur had left at the front gate. Chir Behram, who parted from him in the plain of Ghulec, and was gone to see his family,



Book I. family, return'd also to join 'em with his troops after forty three days absence. They march'd in a body towards Cuzar, under the command of Hussein and Timur; and when they were arriv'd there, they visited the tomb of the illustrious Coja Resmes. After having pray'd to this great Santon to intercede with God for the prosperity of their army, they embrac'd one another, contracted an indissoluble union, and confirm'd the alliance by solemn oaths, taking the Santon to witness the sincerity of their promises.

It is remarkable in history, that great men have often a sort of fore-knowledge of the events which will happen to 'em: the coming of Joseph's father and brothers was reveal'd to him: as was the conquest of Mecca to Mahomet.

Timur's dream, which he imagin'd a good omen; and on it undertakes the battle against Elias Coja.

As Timur was one day considering in what manner he shou'd attack the great army of Elias with the few troops he had, he fell asleep, and in a dream heard a voice, which said to him distinctly, *Fear nothing, for the most high God will graciously give thee the victory.* He awak'd on this, and the more to confirm himself that the revelation was true, he ask'd if any one had spoken while he slept: they answer'd him in the negative: he therefore no longer doubted that the voice came from heaven. This inspir'd him with so much vigor and resolution, that he immediately went to seek Hussein; he told his dream to him, and afterwards to all the army, who were very much encourag'd by this omen, and only sought an opportunity to fight. This happy news chang'd the prince's inquietude into pleasauntty and good humor; and the soldiers, whom the present danger had render'd fearful, grew dauntless as soon as it was made known to 'em.

The princes pray'd to God for the prosperity of their arms, and at length took horse, and made all necessary preparations for the battel; ranging their army in order, and dividing it into two bodies: Emir Hussein put himself at the head of the right wing, and Timur commanded the left: and in this order they march'd against Elias.

This new emperor, being encamp'd at Tach-Khight, also divided his army into two bodies: he commanded in person the left wing, and made Mit-Hamish his lieutenant-general: and the Emir-Sultan, and the Prince-Baldach, were appointed to command the right. When the two armies were in fight, they rang'd themselves in form of a half-moon; and the soldiers, animated by their general's speeches, were even mad to engage: a great cry was immediately heard in both armies, and the combatants creted their lances in token of resolution.

The battel began in a place call'd Cabamir-tan, by the enemy's standards, who trusted in the great number of their leaders, which far surpass'd that of the army of Timur: but these men did not long continue in this disposition; for Timur, without stirring from his post, let fly his arrows against the enemys with such skill, that there was not one who advanc'd that return'd.

Fight at  
Cabamir-  
tan.

Timur's horse at length began the general charge with such a terrible cloud of arrows, that they darken'd the sky, and flew the most of the enemys.

Timur then follow'd by his soldiers sword in hand, broke thro' the opposite wing of the enemy with such vigour, that he did not give them time to make the first discharge of their arrows; the fury with which he rush'd into the

**Book I** middle of the squadrons, struck such a terror into 'em, that they were soon put into disorder: and as on the other hand Hussein was fighting at the head of his men with Bikidgek, never was a battel fought with so much fury, nor so bravely sustain'd. The slaughter of so many men exceedingly fatigu'd our warriors, but at the same time very much heighten'd their courage in exciting their revenge. If Timur charg'd the enemys with so much fury at the beginning of the fight, in the end he behav'd himself with greater bravery; for being seconded by his soldiers, who were animated by his example, he rush'd on the enemys on each side, bearing down all before him: he at length drove the first rank upon the second, which cou'd not sustain the strength of our men, encourag'd by the indefatigable valor of Timur.

At the same time this prince made a great cry to excite his soldiers against those who fled; they pursu'd 'em with their lances, destroying all who fell into their hands: they wou'd never have been weary of slaughter, if Timur had not commanded 'em to desist, and to advance to the right, to charge the rear of the troops commanded by Bikidgek and Toczumir: these princes fought with extraordinary intrepidity, and by their valor render'd the issue of the battel doubtful; but when they were attack'd on both sides, how bravely suffer they behav'd themselves, and notwithstanding the number of their troops, they cou'd not withstand the courage of Timur, their soldiers being constrain'd to give way to his strength, and follow the example of their companions, especially when they saw the bravest of their leaders expire: as Dounsfa, colonel of the regiment of Behro; Tchampo,

Tchanpo, a favorite of the grand Can, whom the soldiers regarded as the only support of their valor. The general Tocatmar caus'd no less consternation in the army by his death; as well as Biki, brother of the great general Bikidgek. Doleful Chah, and two other princes of the blood, increas'd by their death the affliction of the soldiers. Thus at length this army, so formidable for its number, was entirely defeated by a handful of men, if compar'd with the great number of the enemy.

The emperor Hiran Can, the princes Bikidgek, and Chah, Mir Hamid, Josef and Chah, were made prisoners: but the generosity of the Turks was of service to the emperor of the Getes; for he was known by some soldiers of Timur's army who had taken him; they got off their horses, and without acquainting their commanders with it, set Elias and Bikidgek on 'em, who fled, and alone sav'd themselves.

Timur march'd all night thro' by-ways to the river Ganges, and order'd his soldiers to build a number of dams, that the water of the river was red with their blood; and in the mean time he sent the Emirs Yakou and Seifeddin towards Benarand, to make themselves masters of it, which they did without any resistance. This bloody battel happen'd in the year of the Hegira 765.

An. Dom.  
1363.  
Mog. The  
Crocodile.

Timur immediately held a council with Mir Hamid and Chir Behran; after which they departed with all haste to overtake the rest of the enemys that were fled, and especially the grand Can and Bikidgek: they pass'd the Sihon at Cogende, and went to encamp before the city of Tash-

Book I. Tachkent. Here God mix'd bitterness with their prosperity: these princes fell sick, but their sickness did not endure long, for they were cur'd at the arrival of the illustrious prince Olijai Turcan, who came from a Kichlac, or winter-quarters.

Timur then resolv'd to return home, and repass the river at Cogende. Having a desire to hunt, he had a vast tract of land compass'd by men; the Emir Hussein did the same in the plain of Dizac: they follow'd this diversion for many days, and then return'd to Samarcand, which they enter'd in a magnificent manner; which was very agreeable to the people, who expected from these princes a milder government than they had enjoy'd under the former.

---

### C H A P. XL.

*The assembly of the princes convened by Timur and the Emir Hussein, in which they elevated Cabulchah Aglen to the dignity of grand Can.*

**A**FTER the famous victory over the Genghis, Transoxiana and Turkestan were deliver'd from tyranny: but our princes were in great danger from the small deference the lords paid 'em; for all those who had had any hand in the defeat of the Gengis, would have set themselves up for sovereigns, and been independent in their provinces: and they flatter'd themselves

---

\* The same as Alchah, a town upon the Sihon. lat. 39. lat. 42.

the more in this design, in that they imagin'd they had sufficient strength to do it. This disorder oblig'd Timur and Hussein, who had the greatest authority, to convene a general assembly, to consider thorowly of the affairs of state; and what appear'd of most consequence, was the choise of a grand Can. The two princes represented to 'em the indispensable necessity of an empire's having a head; and shew'd, that without one it wou'd be impossible to protect themselves against their enemys, and to preserve peace; because if many princes had an absolute command, every one wou'd strive to get the better of the others, and by this means there wou'd be continual wars, which wou'd entirely ruin the people who were under their protection. And that no one might refuse to submit to this chief, they resolv'd to chuse one of the race of Genghiz Can, to preserve the anrient custom of the kingdom: they therefore propos'd Cabulchah Agien, who, that he might not incur the disorders which commonly happen to princes in great situations, had chosen a solitary life, and when on horseback, a life of a hermit, which they imagin'd him of, and put on him the royal mantle. Publick rejoicings were then order'd to be made thro'out all the city of Samarcand; the people were feasted at the expence of the court, the grandees endeavor'd to appear magnificent by distributing gold and silver; every one dress'd himself in his best clothes; and the most precious furniture, and richest stuffs, were hang out; consorts of musick were heard every where, and nothing was spar'd to make the day magnificent.

## Book I.

The princes made Cabulchah Aglem ascend the throne, and presented him with the royal cup, according to the custom of the Turkish kings: at length all the princes in their turns bow'd nine times before him, as the chief of each tribe is oblig'd to do to the Can.

After this ceremony they committed Haider prince of Andoud, who was in irons, into the hands of Zende-Hacham, to put him to death; which was accordingly executed the same night, to punish him for the hostilities he had committed against our princes.

Timur continu'd the feast by a noble banquet, with which he entertain'd Mir Hussein; and he thought himself the more oblig'd, in that the place of the assembly was in his own country, and that of his ancestors, and the other lords were strangers.

After this banquet Timur made considerable presents to Hussein, as horses, swords, helmets, and the finest belts; and to render the joy compleat, Timur, to whom was given the surname of great, and Saheb-Caran, that is, the hero of the age, propos'd to Mir Hussein, and prince Oladgia Itou Aperdi, an old man of great experience, to deliver out of prison Emir Hamid, the lieutenant-general of the army, whose father had always been his friend; and also prince Eskender his companion, who had been taken in the war. Hussein consented to it in complaisance to Timur, against the proverb, which says, *When the enemy falls into your hands, put it out of his power to hurt you another time, lest you repent of it.* When Mir Hussein had departed for his herd and ancient residence at Saliserai, Timur sent the Emirs David and Seifeddin to release Hamid and Eskender again from their confinement, with order to pay

Title of  
Saheb-Ca-  
ran, i. e.  
Hero of  
the age,  
given to  
Timur.

'em all the civiltys imaginable, and to bring them back; but Bayazid and Aimen, in whose hands the prisoners were, had no sooner perceiv'd the two messengers at a distance, than they imagin'd that they came with orders to put Hamid to death; but to save them the trouble, one gave him a great blow with a club on his head, and the other cut it off: thus died the Emir Hamid lieutenant-general of the Getes. When the Emir Hussein had advice of it, he said that the action of the servant was greater than that of the master; and sent an ambassador to demand Iskender Aglen his private enemy, who was sent to him, and put to death.

Our princes staid at their respective habitations all the winter: their affairs were in so good a condition, that they could not at that time desire more prosperity than they enjoy'd.

## CHAP. XII

### The battle of Lad. or of the sloughs.

**T**HIS prosperity did not continue long; for at the beginning of the spring news was brought that the Getes had rais'd another army, and that they were marching towards Mesopotamia. Timur sent advice of it to the Sultan Hussein, who order'd Poulad-Begs, Zoultan-Begs, and Malek Behader, to put themselves at the head of their troops, and to march forthwith to Timur, who had already rais'd an army. Immediately after their arrival, he departed, and when they were got to the plain of Ahlar, they renew'd the troops, and



Book I. *W*aited some time to refresh the cavalry. They then departed to meet the enemy, and after having pass'd the Sihon at Cogende, they encamp'd on its banks between Tachkunt and Tchinaz. Timur commanded his captains to fortify their quarters; and the enemy's scouts advanc'd when the Emir Hussein arriv'd with his army. He pass'd the Sihon, and encamp'd in a place which was mark'd out for his troops.

The enemy's army encamp'd also on the bank of the river at Ezam, for which reason our princes quitted their camp, and advanc'd towards the Getes. The scouts of the two armys were no sooner in sight, than they rang'd themselves in order of battel. The

Each wing  
had its  
vanguard  
and rear.

Aglen was  
of the roy-  
al house of  
Genghiz  
Can.

Emir Hussein commanded the right wing; his rear being led by Petlandgi Ertas, and his vanguard by Oladgia Irou Aperdi, and other brave men. Timur, who was the soul of the army, put himself at the head of the left wing; he gave the command of the rear to prince Sar Bouga, with the troops of Capchac, and of the vanguard to Timur Coja Aglen; he kept the princes Yakou, Seifeddin, Mourad Berlas, and many other valiant men near his person. They march'd in this posture to attack the enemy's army, commanded by the emperor Elias Coja Can. Timur's soldiers were full of presumption and vanity, because they had not only once before conquer'd this very enemy, tho he was superior to 'em, and better provided, but because they themselves were now possess'd of those advantages. But for this their pride they were punish'd, that the observation might be verify'd. *The day will be unfortunate to the army which depends upon the multitude of its soldiers.* God permitted the Getes, who in the battel of Cabanistan were defeated, notwithstanding their great number,

number, to get the advantage in this, tho they Chap. 12.  
had by far the fewer troops. They us'd for  
this purpose a stratagem which is said to have  
been taught 'em by a famous magician.

It is commonly believ'd, that the stone call'd Virtue of  
Gedi steep'd in water at a certain hour, has the stone  
a power to change the air, to produce wind, Gedi.  
rain and thunder, and terrible hurricanes; to  
which stone the Gotes, being satisfy'd of their  
weakness, had recourse. However that be, so  
great a tempest was rais'd, that the world  
seem'd ready to fall into its original chaos: it  
rain'd so fast, that it look'd like the de-  
luge; the noise of the thunder astonish'd the most  
brave; the earth cou'd no longer be distin-  
guish'd from the sea; horses and oxen swam in  
the water; the feet of the horses of our army,  
which were the best in Asia, were stuck so far  
in the mire, that the skin of their bellies was  
peel'd off: this excessive moisture caus'd at  
length an Ectema, a cruel distemper, which  
affects the horses, renders the limbs paralytic,  
and corrupting the flesh, soon brings 'em in a  
manner nothing appears but the bones and  
nerves.

Ectema, a  
disease be-  
longing to  
horses.

The enemys, to prevent the ill effects their  
flood wou'd produce, had provided themselves  
with good felts, with which they cover'd their  
camp, persons and horses; and they had prepar'd  
canals to carry the water off: whilst ours  
were reduc'd to a miserable condition; their  
armor becoming extremely heavy, and the horse  
being more burthen'd than the feet.

When the rain was over, their bad condition  
did not hinder their advancing, and they at-  
tack'd the enemy with an heroic valor; but  
the Gotes, whom the rain and tempest had so  
disor-

## The History of Timur-Beg.

**Book I.** disorder'd, mounted on fresh horses, and well-arm'd, receiv'd our army with a briskness so much greater than that of our men, that our soldiers were oblig'd to fly; and there were terrible cries in both armys. Then Timur, who saw he must either die shamefully or fight, turn'd himself about, and crying out to his soldiers to come to him, found himself insensibly in the middle of the enemy's right wing. As his men were surrounded by 'em, there was the most terrible slaughter that was ever known; blood flow'd in little rivers, and the dead bodies of both sides fell promiscuously over one another, both friends and enemys, without knowing who were conquerors. The rules of war were not observ'd; every thing was in confusion, and every one of the soldiers had been slain in the heat of the battel, if by an unexpected accident, Chem Cunn Nevian, brother of the Emir Mamid, who commanded the right wing of the enemy, had not been slain: for Timur being about to give him a blow with his ax, this prince, who was one of the most valiant of the Getes, fenc'd off the blow with his buckler; but as he was rising up to strike Timur with his sabre, he was pierc'd with lance by prince Yakou Bertas.

The empeter Elias Coja Can had no sooner heard of the misfortune which happen'd to his general, than he retreated; and his soldiers who saw him fly, despairing of the victory, fled after him: but Timur and his men pursu'd them, and did not cease the slaughter till their horses fell under them; not able any longer to bear the fatigue; whilst the enemy's horses, which had not suffer'd thro the tempest and slough, were swifter and fled. But if we had the victory on one side, we were beaten on the other; for the  
left

left wing of the enemy fell so briskly on Petland-  
gi and Zendebarhem who commanded the van  
of our right wing, that they approached the  
Emir Hussein, whose guards being surpriz'd, fled  
in disorder, notwithstanding the courage of Chir-  
Behram and Boud Bouga, who on this occa-  
sion gave marks of the greatest valor. Hadgi  
Bei lost no ground, but briskly attack'd the  
captains Fernad and Oronc Timur with their  
regiments, who began to give way; but prince  
Chamseddin unexpectedly came to their assistance  
with a great squadron, which not only pre-  
vented their flight, but beat back Hadgi Bei:  
the fight was bloody, and the enemys were  
slain, when Timur, who perceiv'd the  
disorder, arriv'd with seventeen companys, and  
fell upon Chamseddin, who was not able to  
sustain the attack, but lost ground and fled.  
These advantages gave the Emir Hussein an  
opportunity to rally his guards. Timur sent  
Behader his aide-de-camp to him, to desire him  
to advance; and to tell him that if they brisk-  
ly attack'd the enemy, he wou'd no longer be  
able to resist; but this prince, either thro' in-  
sult of the great actions of our hero, or thro  
presumption, resented the message of Behader,  
aband' him, and beat him off his horse. Ti-  
mur who perceiv'd they had so good an oppor-  
tunity of overcoming, dissembled his resentment,  
and sent to him a second time Hamdi and Malek  
who belong'd to him; but he treated them as  
traitors. Behader. "Have I said," said he to  
them, "why then doth he press me to ad-  
vance? Whatsoever happens, whether we  
conquer or are conquer'd, none of you shall  
"have harm from my hand." Malek and  
Hamdi returned with great passion, and Timur  
vex'd that the most favorable opportunity shou'd  
be

**Book I** be lost thro the caprice of the Emir Hussein, resolv'd to be reveng'd: he ceas'd from attacking the enemy; and as the two wings of both armies had been reciprocally routed, and had taken each others place, they encamp'd where they were at that time, with design to give some refreshment to the soldiers during the night, after the excessive fatigue of the day. In the mean while the Emir Hussein recover'd from his ill humor, sent several messages to Timur, to intreat him to come and see him; but this prince, weary with his manner of acting, refus'd to go.

The sound of the trumpet Kerrena<sup>\*</sup> waking the soldiers before morning, every one prepar'd himself to continue the fight. The two parties fell upon one another with great cries, mix'd with a confus'd noise of drums and trumpets, and the victory was not long in suspense: the army of the Getes fled, and Timur and his men pursu'd 'em, and in the pursuit perceiv'd the standard of prince Chamseddin, who was separated from the rest, and came with a great number; so our men abandon'd the fugitives, and turn'd towards the white standard: but the enemys, as soon as they perceiv'd the ensign, rally'd and return'd to the charge. The combat was bloody, and at length our men were vanquish'd; the Getes had the victory, and oblig'd us to turn our backs. Fear caus'd a great number of our men to perish in the sloughs and marshes. The enemys in the pursuit of the rest kill'd a great many, and there remain'd slain in the field of battel more than

---

<sup>\*</sup> Kerrena is a large trumpet of brass, eight foot long, which serves to wake the soldiers, and sound a retreat.

ten thousand of our men. This famous battel Chap. 13.  
of Lai, that is to say, of the sloughs, happen'd  
on the first of Ramadan, in the year of the An. Dom.  
Hegira 766. Astronomers remark, that the 1364  
zenith of the great celestial conjunction, was in Mog. The  
Scorpio, about the time of this fatal defeat. Serpent.  
I mention this circumstance only for the per-  
fection of this history, and not to infer that ac-  
cidents are caus'd by the influences of the hea-  
venly bodies: on the contrary, I believe there  
are no influences, nor accidents in nature, of  
which God is not the disposer and primary  
author.

## CHAP. XIII.

### *The Retreat of Timur-Bec. and Hussain. Samarcand. besieg'd by the Getes.*

Ever this great defeat, the princes arriv'd  
at Samarcand, they did not think them-  
selves sufficient to resist the Getes, who  
pursu'd them; they therefore resolv'd  
to pass the Gihon, every one with the troops  
of his hord: the Emir Hussain told Timur that  
it was proper he should do the same with his  
family and troops; but this prince answer'd  
that the other princes might do what they  
pleas'd, but that he was not of that mind, and  
that his temper would not suffer him to aban-  
don his country to the tyranny of barbarians;  
that he would rally as many troops as he was able,  
and march against the enemys; and if fortune  
oppos'd him, he should nevertheless have the  
glory of dying in defence of his subjects.

The

**Book I.** The Emir Hussein went to Saliserai, where he made his men cross the Gihon, and retired with 'em by by-ways to Cheberto; from whence he sent spys to the places round about to learn news of the Getes, that he might fly into India on the first advice of their approach.

As soon as the Emir Hussein was departed from Kiech, Timur neglected no opportunity of levying troops; his good conduct, and the affection of the people towards him, was the reason that he rais'd seventeen companys: he sent Timur Coja Aglen to command the half of these troops, and order'd Chaourchi and Abbas Behader to carry forage to Samarcand, and raise other troops there. But Chaourchi staid in the way to drink hard of some of the best wines: this liquor, which makes many men courageous and generous, dispirited him even to excess; he told David Coja and Hindoucha, that Timur had a design to seize 'em, and to send 'em to the Emir Hussein to be put to death. Upon this these two captains were afraid, and fled in haste to the Getes, which was a great loss to Timur; the others continu'd their road, and met at Kukung a party of the army of the Getes, commanded by Keket Timur, son of Oluk Totatmur, and by the captains Chirazon and Imhirsac son of Hadsa Bei; ours were surpriz'd and entirely defeated, with the four or five companys who remain'd with 'em.

Timur soon receiv'd advice of this fresh loss; he well knew that his prosperity must be at a stand for some time, and that there was no more likelihood of defending his country, to whatsoever hazard he expos'd his life: for this reason he cross'd the Gihon, and went for Har, where he rally'd the troops of his Toman, and the

## The history of Timur-Bec.

63

the other troops of his country who had fled thither. He also got together the Tomans of Kepec Can and Ogha Baga Selduz, part of whom he sent to the river Oghon to guard the passages, and to get information of what happen'd there. Timur Coja Aglen arriv'd at this time, and he was punish'd for his bad conduct by a fine impos'd on him.

Chap. 14.

Siege of Samarcand by the Getes.

In the mean while the army of the Getes arriv'd at Samarcand, which at that time was without a citadel. Moulana Zade Samarcandi, Moulana Cardoc Imam of Bokara, and Aboubekir Keltzi, men whose probity and knowledge had assur'd them an authority and power over the people, and who imagin'd the tyrannick government of the Getes wou'd cause an entire desolation of this city, undertook to defend it against these barbarians. They represented to the inhabitants by their pathetic speeches the miseries which this insupportable tyranny had brought on them; that what was to come wou'd be much worse, because of the present situation of the city; that they ought to take arms to defend themselves from the cruelty of these tyrants, till it should please God to grant the princes sufficient strength to resist them. The inhabitants of Samarcand, who had a great veneration for their Imams, and love for their prince, being desirous to take arms, were easily persuaded to do so: and without the princes at their head, they undertook to dispute with the Getes their conquests into the city: they fix'd chains cross each man, and every one arm'd himself, even from children of twelve years of age, to the oldest men. The enemy's drove several times to surprize the city; they enter'd into the



Book I.

the suburbs; but they were always repuls'd with loss; and even the citizens made such vigorous sallies, that they beat back the Getes into their tents, chas'd them entirely out of the suburbs, and kill'd a great number of them. But as this city was well peopled; and the inhabitants were not accusom'd to the fatigues of war, victuals became very dear; the artisan work'd no longer, and every one began to be tir'd with the siege; infomuch that being reduc'd to the last extremity, they had been constrain'd to surrender, if God had not deliver'd them on a sudden from the evil which threaten'd them. There was a mortality among the horses of the Getes, of which there perish'd three fourths, so that they were at a loss to get horses for the couriers. This misfortune ruin'd their army, and disabled them from continuing the siege, so that they were oblig'd to return home in a miserable condition, almost all of 'em on foot, with their quivers tied to their backs, and their swords on their shoulders. The principal men of the city were fill'd with pride, because the Getes were retir'd; and attributed to themselves the glory of sustaining the attack of so great an army, and even of having repuls'd it. Moreover, they wou'd have respect paid 'em, and claim'd a sort of superiority over the rest: they at length form'd great partys, spilt the people's blood, and caus'd strange disorders in the city, to maintain themselves in their usurpation.

On the other hand, Abbas Behader, whom Timur had sent to the iron gate, to observe the motions of the army of the Getes, return'd in all haste to that prince. He gave him an account of the miserable condition the enemys were in, and represented to him at the same time

time the state of the inhabitants of Samarcand, who suffer'd a great deal under the tyranny of the usurpers. When Timur was inform'd of these things, he sent in haste to the Emir Hussein, to give him advice of them, and to invite him at the same time to march thither with his troops. Hussein was extremely well pleas'd with the news, and departed forthwith from Cheberto to Saliserai. Timur order'd all his family to cross the Gihon, and sent 'em to Kech, his ancient residence.

This prince then took horse to meet Hussein, where he did at the entry of the meadow of Buzhan. They embrac'd each other, and having renew'd their friendship, they promis'd to be more closely united than ever. They had a long conference on what had already pass'd, and what they had to do; and they concluded to be at Samarcand the beginning of the spring: Timur return'd, cross'd the Gihon, and arriv'd at Carichi. The name of Carichi was given to this city because of the palace Roper built two years, and a half from Nakhch. In the mogul language Carichi, signifying a palace. Timur pass'd the winter there; during which time he built the citadel, which was finish'd before the end of that season.

---

Nakhch, Nefes, and Carichi, are the same place.

## C H A P. XIV.

*Departure of the princes for Samarcand, and the dissension which happen'd between 'em.*

**T**HE princes departed in the spring for Samarcand; and as soon as they were arriv'd at this capital of Transoxiana, they agreed on what was of most importance; to wit, the punishment of the insolence of the Serbedals, who pretended to take upon 'em the highest power, and had entirely confounded both the state and religion by the violence they had exercis'd. It was resolv'd that they should deliver up all those petty tyrants; which was accordingly done. The Emir Hussein, after having reproach'd 'em for the horrid crimes they had committed, order'd their heads to be cut off, after their trial at Canighul, where the army encamp'd: insomuch, that there remain'd only Moulana Zade, whom Timur sav'd thro' a motive of piety.

After the princes had regulated the civil government of this city, restor'd the laws and the ordinary course of justice among the inhabitants whom the Serbedals had seduc'd, Hussein made known his reigning passions. He saw himself at the height of his desires; and at the same time discover'd an insatiable avarice and meanness of spirit, which did not in the least shew him to be the grandson of the great Emir Cazagan. He employ'd all his care and authority to heap up riches; and avarice had so full a possession of his soul, that he had no regard to honor or equity: and without considering that Timur had as much or a greater share in the good

good or ill success of the wars they had been engag'd in, he even ventur'd to tax the domesticks of Timur: he exacted immense sums from the princes Yakub, Baskara, Ashkanga, Eltchi, Behader, and Ismael Can Bakti. The barrel of the sloughs, where these princes lost their treasure, and most part of their baggage, had put 'em out of a condition to satisfy him immediately. All they could recover thro' their industry, was not sufficient to assuage his thirst after riches: but Timur furnished 'em with enough to make up the great sum they were rais'd at; and as this money had not a sufficient quantity of ready money, he gave 'em even the merchants and carriers of the prince Olajai Turcan his wife. Hussein receiv'd all they brought him; he saw, among the rest, his sister's jewels; and he had a soul base enough to forget the duty of a brother, and not to refuse 'em. After having fix'd a price on 'em, he examin'd whether they had intirely paid the tax, and found there yet remain'd three thousand ducats unpaid: this ungenerous prince exacted 'em, and Timur gave his own treasure to satisfy him. Hussein would not accept 'em; but he said he would go to Samarkand, from whence he must send a sum of money to Gazarem, there to demand in marriage the daughter of Hussein Solt, and that he would wait for the remainder of what was due. He was no sooner departed, than Timur rais'd the flag at Keck, which he sent him. These actions gave the Emir Hussein a bad reputation; but the fear the people were in, because of the union between him and Timur, made 'em dissimble it: nevertheless, the aver-

---

\* A ducat of gold, or a sequin.

Book I. For which the principal lords bore to him was so great, that they resolv'd to use all their efforts to disunite 'em; and after having humbled the haughtiness of Hussein, they propos'd to themselves to give the absolute power to Timur, who was of a sweet temper, had a generous soul, noble passions, and, in fine, every virtue that was necessary to the forming of a great prince. But as the sun never shews itself till the stars have disappear'd, Timur cou'd not arrive at that pitch of greatness destin'd for him, without the ruin of Hussein. The Emir Moussa Ali Dervis, son of Bajazet Gelair, who was his wife's brother, and Ferhad, to break the union of the princes, made use of an artifice; but thought it best to employ a third prince, belonging to the reign of the Emir Chirin Can, whose daughter, the mother of Ali Dervis, was ally'd to the Emir Hussein. They wrote a letter to him full of falsehoods, the particulars of which were, that Timur, Chirin Can's grand Can and him, had sought means to revenge himself by an open war; and that he was so far resolv'd on it, that he had already began to make preparations, which wou'd no sooner be finish'd, than he will make known his designs by divers hostilities. This letter was given to Hussein, who read it, and at the same time shew'd it to Can Cabutchah Aglen. They immediately sent men to Timur to be inform'd of the truth from himself; and to desire him to come to Samarcand to Ourda Catoun, with those who had given him advice of it, that being brought face to face the truth of the things asserted might more easily be brought to light. Timur, who not so much as thought of what he was accus'd of, took horse without fear, or using any precautions, and went to Samarcand; but

but the Emir Moussa and Ali Dervis having notice of his arrival, abandon'd the intrigue, and fled to Cogende, for fear of coming to dishonour. This was enough to persuade Hussein, and the rest, that Timur had no hand in the conspiracy: but it had a very different effect with regard to Hussein. Timur, who by his long familiarity with him, knew what his heart was capable of, and how jealous he was, since he believ'd what was contain'd in this false letter, did not doubt his having a constant suspicion of him, and that there would be continual quarrels between 'em: he therefore thought it prudent for him also to be mistrustful of the Emir Hussein, to avoid the dangers which might happen. He seriously consider'd how he shou'd for the future deal with a prince whose proceedings were so unaccountable, and who had shewn so much baseness and avarice. The Emirs on the other hand were extremely discontented with Hussein, because of the tax he had imposed on 'em, and were continually endeavouring to deliver themselves from slavery.

One day, in a conference with 'em, this prince open'd his heart to 'em; and after having testify'd his resentment of the tyrannical actions of Hussein, he declar'd his intention to remedy this evil. Chir Behram and Behram Gelair, who, for fear of displeasing Timur, never dar'd to discover the mortal hatred they bore to Hussein, because of the firm alliance between these two princes, then took off the mask, and acquainted Timur with the unanimous design of all the princes; which was founded on their assurance that Hussein did not act faithfully with any of 'em. They declar'd to him they were all resolv'd to break off with him, and to treat him for the future as an enemy; that he had



## The history of Timur-Bec.

71

Chap. 14.



ram got together the hord of Gelair, and establish'd himself in his principality.

After this expedition, Timur being apprehensive how difficult it was to extricate himself out of this troublesome affair of attacking the Can and the Emir Hussein at the same time, took horse with those who were of his side; and after having put to death the men belonging to Ali Dervis, he march'd with his household and troops towards Gata.

Whilst Timur was gone to Samarcand to raise troops, the Emir Sultan and Chansur, who were engaged in the discord between the two princes, came over from Hussein to him; and since Kefer Yelouri being dead, Ali his brother, Elias, and Hadgi Mamut Chah, came with the troops of the hord of Yelouri to submit themselves to Timur. This prince made Cara Hendouke Berlas governor of Samarcand during his absence; after which he took horse to return. But Hendouke prov'd faithless to him, and went over to Hussein, whilst Cara Jout, who had been put in a capacity to govern, seem'd to have lost all his courage.

Whilst Timur was gone from his palace to recruit his troops, the princess Otajai Turcan Aga, his wife, dy'd. He was very much afflicted at this loss, and on this occasion distributed great alms among the poor of the country. The Emir Hussein was the more touch'd at this misfortune, in that it was doubly fatal to him, first, in losing his sister, Timur was disengag'd from his alliance, and the regard and friendship which the princess had kept up betwixt 'em, was now destroy'd.

Death of  
Timur's  
wife.



## C H A P. XV.

*Timur-Bec. brings an army into the field  
against Emir Hussein.*

An. Dom.  
1365.  
Mog. The  
Horse.

**I**N the autumn of the year of the Hegira 767, Timur having rais'd an army, consisting of the most valiant men of the empire, in order to oppose the Emir Hussein, gave the command of the vanguard to prince Seifeddin, and directed him to march without interruption. Hussein, whose artifices had succeeded so well with regard to Calil Behram, as to bring him over to his obedience, imagin'd he could do the same by Timur; on which account he sent to Emir Malek Behader and Abdalla Piran with a treaty ready drawn up, after the most enticing manner. He put Timur in mind that he had always desir'd to cultivate a good understanding with him; that they had been concern'd together in the most dangerous affairs of the empire; that their union had been the cause of their success; that they were now lifted up above their equals; and that it was time they shou'd both enjoy their grandeur: in fine, he besought him entirely to confide in this treaty, and not to suffer jealousy to take possession of his heart. Malek and Abdalla arriv'd at Isoun, where the army of Timur was encamp'd, after having pass'd the iron gate; who having first paid their respects to him, they presented him with the treaty of the Emir Hussein, and then su'd for peace. But Timur, whose fortune seem'd to be in the disposal of providence, told 'em he ought to give no more credit to the words of Hussein than to the east-wind,


wind, and he won'd not regard what his ambaf-  
sadors laid. However, this overture of peace  
was of ill consequence to Timur; for the Yefour-  
rians had fo little thoughts of fucceeding, that  
their uneafinefs made them refolve to defert  
Timur.

At this time the princes Abbas and Yakou  
went to Cogende with Behram Gelair. Be-  
ing arriv'd, a council was held upon the affair  
of the Yefourians; and it was unanimoufly re-  
folv'd to fecure the chiefs of that people, who had  
enter'd into a confpiracy to change their matter:  
but Timur oppos'd it, and told em, that in fo  
happy a conjuncture violence and indignation  
fhould have no part in his actions, and that it  
would be an injury to his glory and reputation;  
becaufe when the reft of the people fhall hear  
of the ill treatment us'd towards thefe men; they  
wou'd no longer continue under his protection;  
that it was neceffary that moderation fhould be  
the bafis of a rifing monarchy, and that his  
throne fhould be eftablifh'd on the pillars of  
juftice and moderation.

At this difcuffion, which gain'd the hearts  
of all the captains, he order'd that they fhould  
behave themfelves courteoufly towards the Ye-  
fourians; whom having permitted to return  
home, he went to encamp at Carfchi.

Huffein, who had rais'd the beft troops he was  
able, march'd with Chir Behram, and brought  
with him the princes Mobarekchah and Mehe-  
med Beyan Selduz, who had a great friendship  
for Timur: but as the army of Huffein had  
join'd him, they were oblig'd to go with him.

Huffein, not being content with having a  
great army, wou'd again make ufe of artifice  
and impofture to bring over Timur. He fent  
to him his treafurer Kefer with an alcoran, and  
by a trick leads to beg peace  
of Timur.

Book I.  wherein he told him he had taken an error on that book to give him a full account of the truth in his letter; the contents whereof were as follow.

"The misunderstanding between us will infallibly end in the ruin of the state, and the misery of the people. I know you are a prince of a sweet temper; that you have excellent dispositions; that you love the multitudes; shew a great deal of goodness to your subjects; and by consequence ought not to approve of what is doing. For my part, I think it advisable that my army shou'd stay at Gegana, and yours at Cazana; and that we have a conference together, accompanied by a hundred men only, in Chekitchec, where we will renew our friendship, and confirm our former union by solemn oaths; so that hereafter secondarys shall not be able to kindle seeds of sowing dissension among us: for the nation can never enjoy rest till there is a hearty agreement between us."

When Timur had read the letter, he presently knew it was a trick of Hussein, and look'd upon his promise only as an artifice: but as all the princes thought it better to have peace than war, provided Hussein acted with sincerity, he consented to what was propos'd; and leaving the army at Cuzar, he took only three hundred men for his guard, who were the bravest he cou'd chuse, and who had always shewn themselves faithful to him, designing to leave two hundred of 'em at Dehno for fear of a surprize, and then to march with one hundred only to Chekitchec, the place of interview.

In the mean while the Emir Hussein put to death Chir Behram in Nevendac, according to the

## The history of Timur-Bec.

75

the prediction of Timur; for the words of great men are often the oracles of fate. Chap. 10

The Emir Hussain did not fail in preparing to put his artifices in execution; and without regard to his oath, or the veneration due to the altar, on which he had sworn, he dispatch'd with great expedition three thousand chosen men to surprise Timur. A peasant, who had formerly been a domestic of this prince, fled from the rest of the troops, and came with all haste to give Timur advice of it, whom he found already arriv'd at the place. An officer call'd Bakhram, who had been sent to the gate of the palace, to whom the peasant immediately address'd himself; but this silly fellow wou'd give no credit to what he said, and imagin'd this news wou'd displease the prince, because a peace was actually on the anvil: he even beat the peasant, and sent him away without mentioning to Timur what had been told him. In the mean while Hussain's horse, who came great haste, arriv'd at the place, and Timur had already taken horse with his household to go to the place of rendezvous. He was very near it, when he had advice of the treachery of Hussain, and the arrival of this troop: nevertheless he advanc'd; and when he had got into the middle of the straits of Haram, he plac'd his men in ambuscade, to render the passage the more difficult to the enemy, and to oppose 'em with advantage. The enemy arriv'd, and there was soon a cry on both sides; the arrows fell like hail, and the fight was bloody. Hussain's men finding themselves in a place which was narrow, and dispos'd for fighting, stop'd, to give Timur an opportunity to draw off; then they pursu'd him, and all he cou'd do was to retreat fighting.

## The History of Timur Beek

Book I. fighting as far as to Catlich, they not being able to pursue him any farther, where the two branches of the river of Chekedalic join.

In the mean while the news of Hussein's artifice was brought to Cuzar; and the army, who imagin'd all hopes were lost, dispers'd themselves. Timur, with the few men he had left, went to Cuzar, where he learnt this sad news; at which turn of fortune he was not daunted. But having return'd thanks to God, he came to Carschi, where he held a council with the princes, in which it was resolv'd to send the ladys to Macan, and thence to the confines of the country of Scoger, the people whereof had always been faithful to Timur; to their care he trusted the princesses, and was very well contented they shou'd be sent away, that he might the better carry on the war. The princes also resolv'd that they shou'd rendezvous with their troops at Isaac's well, in the neighbourhood of Bontdalic. Every one departed at the same time for his own country, where he levy'd troops, and made all necessary preparations, while the ladys went to Macan.

The next day the army of Hussein arriv'd at Carschi, and the Emirs Moussa and Hindouchah made themselves masters of the fortress which Timur had built there. Timur came to Isaac's well, where he waited for his friends and officers, who arriv'd there one after another; and when they were all got together, they departed for Macan, cross'd the Gihon, and enter'd the desert. Timur sent to all the lords of Herat, and to Mehemed Youn Garbani, to know the state of their affairs. He encamp'd near the well of Chourab till the return of these messengers, which was two months after their setting out: he also stop'd all the caravans which came from Corassa-

na to Tranfoxiana. When all the envoys were Chap. 16.  
return'd, by his orders it was rumour'd that the  
people of Herat had sent for him, and that these  
envoys were ambassadors of that country: upon  
which he gave leave to the caravans to depart.  
He then took the road to Herat in their presence  
with all his men. The merchants arriv'd at  
Carachi, and said not to give out that they had  
seen Timur depart for Herat; which news the  
Bait Moulta believ'd, it being told by persons  
disinterested, and who had seen him depart: for  
which reason he went out of the borders of  
Carachi, and after having got together his  
troops he march'd with forty thousand horse  
to Samarcand, with design to go to Uz-  
bek. Malek Behader, who commanded the  
five thousand horse Hussein had sent, went to  
Euzar, and stop'd at the hill of Carachun, and  
at Gonbedlusi.

---

## C H A P. XVI.

*Several exploits of Timur, and intrigues of the  
princes. The march of Timur to Carachi.*

**W**HEN Timur knew that the caravans were  
at some distance, he return'd immediately  
to the place he came from, where he staid as long  
as was needful for the caravans to get to Carachi;  
and then he resolv'd to revenge himself on his  
enemies, tho he had not above two hundred men.  
With this small number he took the road to Car-  
achi, in the neighbourhood of which city were  
12000 horse, with many princes and lords, whom  
the desire of fighting had brought thither: which  
renders the action of Timur the more remarkable,  
who

**Timur-Bec.** who expos'd himself to so great a danger with an intention of intemperity. These are events which men can no ways comprehend, and which are only known to the divine being.

Rash action of Timur, which prov'd successful.

Timur march'd all night; and when he was come to the bank of the Gihon, he first made his own horse go into the water, and then was follow'd by many more, who swam over. They lost the village Kuzlar; that no one might give notice of their arrival; and that prevent'd banks, which they sent to the other side of the river, that the rest of the troops might cross over.

Princes who accompany'd Timur.

The prince Siorgatmich-Aglen, the prince Daend, chief of the herd of Bauglat, and husband of Cozing Turcan-Aga, eldest sister of Timur; the Emir Ismael-Bek, the Emir Muzid-Erlac, who expos'd himself in Timur's army; the Emir Ser Bouga Gelaiz; the Emir Behader; the Emir Seifeddin Nekur; the valiant Alim Capchat; Achonga Behader of the country of the Naimans; and Mamutchar of Boora; were of the number of those men who accompany'd Timur.

All those lords departed together, and arriv'd at Bourdalic; at which place were the ambassadors of the Emir Moussa, whom they sent: they enter'd into Bourdalic, where they stay'd all the next evening; when they continu'd their march, and in the night went down to old Fezed. The next day they block'd up the passages, and lay in ambuscade: they stop'd all those who came to draw water, but soon after let 'em go. In the night they took horse for Chirchik. The Emir Ismael-Bek could be thought it advisable to fall upon the Emir Moussa during the night; believing that if they could seize his person, they might make themselves masters of the rest, and do whatever they pleas'd. But Ti-

mur

then answer'd him, "We are but a small num-  
 ber; and if unhappily any accident befall us,  
 "we shall be reduc'd to great extremitys: it is  
 "better therefore to do nothing inconsiderately.  
 "Let every one stay here, whilst I alone go to  
 "Carsohi, where I will use such precautions  
 "that I may not be surpris'd to I shall be there  
 "before you can enter the city, and  
 "before what machines will be necessary to  
 "make our selves masters of a town of this  
 "importance." Thus Timur would do every  
 thing himself, without depending on the con-  
 duct of his generals. He immediately, with  
 Moubachon and Agha, took horse for Carsohi;  
 and went down to the bank of the ditch sur-  
 rounding the citadel. As this ditch had much  
 water, he gave the horses to Moubachon to take  
 care of, and enter'd up to the knee in the aqua-  
 duct Ternavi, which passes over the ditch, and  
 conveys water into the citadel. He cross'd this  
 current with Agha, who follow'd him every  
 step, and when they were arriv'd at the gate  
 which looks towards the town, Timur knock'd at  
 it, but soon found it was shut. He then went  
 round the wall with great precautions, for fear  
 of being discover'd, and in order to find out  
 a part lower than the rest. Timur perceiv'd a  
 place, which he shew'd Agha, and which he  
 thought proper to fix the ladder against. After  
 this discovery Timur return'd by the same aqua-  
 duct took horse, and rode with all speed to the  
 citadel, with whom he march'd immediately for  
 the taking of Carsohi. He left forty three men  
 to guard the horses, and sent a hundred to the  
 walls with six ladders, which they had brought  
 from Herat. He also pass'd by the aqua-  
 duct we mention'd, being conducted by Agha  
 whilst Timur remain'd with a hundred soldiers



## Chapter V. Timur Bet.

**Secret** make just, to watch the time when it shou'd be open'd in the morning, that he might enter the city.

**Timur** fur-  
prizes  
**Carfchi**.

These brave men who, according to Timur's order, went to the foot of the walls, fix'd their ladders at the place agreed on; and scaling the walls, ran if need in hand to the gate, where finding the guards drunk and asleep in their mis-  
trifery, they put 'em all to the sword. The Dervise Baks broke the lock of the gate with his batel-ax, and made way for Timur and his company to enter; who order'd the trumpets to sound, and the soldiers at the same time to run to the castle, which they did with great crys. This spark terror into every one; and the inhabitants, who had been sleeping, being awak'd by the noise of the trumpets, thought there was an earthquake, or that the day of judgement was come. Timur, by his good conduct, made him- self master of the city, while the troops seiz'd on the castle where they took the son of the Emir Moussa prisoner with all his domesticks; whom they bound, and cast into prisons and pits. Mehemed Bei, son of the Emir Moussa, who afterwards was a confederate with Timur, be- ing then very young, directions were given for concealing him, in order to his escape; that when he shou'd get to his father, his army might be intimidated, and disperse. He went that same night to his father; but the army did not disperse, as was expected, because the Emir Moussa sent immediately to Malek Behader, to give him notice of the city's being surpriz'd. These two princes join'd their troops, and about noon besieg'd the city with 12000 horse. The Emir Moussa, who was of the house of Taidgut, posted himself before the gate of the city, and Malek Behader encamp'd with the troops of the

the Coronas over against the gate which looks towards Cuzar. Timur himself resolv'd to guard the gate of the city, and had for his lieutenant the Emir Moulla Bouga, he order'd the Emirs David and Muaid to defend the gate of Cuzar; and assign'd to the Emirs Siorgarmich Aglen, Abbas, Hussein Behader, Acbouga and others, the care of the towers and walls.

The Emir Muaid Erlat made a sally, in which he was the thirtieth man, and fell furiously upon the besiegers sword in hand. In this rencounter he fought with so great valor, that, in a manner, he eclips'd the great exploits of Ronsem and Esfendiar. He took forty horses from the enemy, after having kill'd the riders, and brought em into the city, fighting all his way back.

In the mean while Durke Behader, who left the enemy, following the example of fortune, who had turn'd her back upon em, came into the city, and submitted to Timur.

This prince had resolv'd the same day to sally out, and to make his enemies feel the strength of his arms. But the Emir Scitadin, who was a great and experienced soldier, and was chosen by the council, represented to him that it was not advisable to undertake any thing that day, because the hour of rising the next morning would be more fortunate: his advice was taken, and the sally was put off till next morning. On the besiegers side Tizektchi Behader approach'd the gate with two hundred men, who expos'd their lances and bucklers in token of defiance, for which reason they kept watch all night in that post. In the morning Eltchi Bouga and Akirmir set down the bridge, sally'd out with fifty men, and sword in hand fell upon the besiegers, of whom they made a terrible slaughter.

Two famous heroes in the Persian romances, in whom are attributed actions altogether incredible.

## The history of Timur-Bec.

### Book I.

Timur order'd Alichah and Dervichec Bergeget, with twenty horse, to relieve these foot, who then oppos'd as many horse. They went accordingly, and gave great proofs of their valor and good fortune.

On the enemys side Tagi Bouga came to the attack with sword in hand; but Akimur stop'd his passage, and unhors'd him.

Among the cavalry of the Emir Moussa there was a young Uzbek, exceedingly courageous, or rather rash, who already imagin'd himself a considerable person: he prepar'd for the battle, took in his hand a great war-club, and advanc'd to signalize himself by some eminent action. Cazan Bouga boldly oppos'd him, and fell so dexterously upon the young man, that he was not able to defend himself: what Bouga cut him cross the body with his sword.

The Emir Sar Bouga and Eltchi Behader fought briskly near the gate: they mutually let fly a shower of arrows on the enemys, and so terribly gain'd em, that victory declar'd herself for the besieg'd. Fear got possession of the enemys hearts, who, to escape the more expeditiously, flung away their large bucklers, call'd Toura; and covering their heads with their little shields, retir'd into the retrenchments they had made: but our men pursu'd em, and drove em beyond their standards, that they could not save themselves; and so they fled as well as they were able into the suburbs.

A body of a hundred men of the enemy, commanded by Foukel, assailed the city on the other side; and their foot ply'd their arrows with so much dexterity, that they constrain'd our soldiers to retire: but Timur sally'd out with fifteen horse only, and inspir'd fresh courage into his men. Eltchi Bouga and Behram

return'd

return'd to attack Toukel, who was fix'd behind a skirt of the wall, where he fought: Eltehi Bouga got upon the wall, and struck at him with his sword; but he avoided the blow, and fled.

Chap. 16.

It happen'd about this time that one of our soldiers of the regiment of Corassana with his sword wounded Schah Behram, of which he died some time after. The good fortune of Timur, join'd with the fear of the enemys, caus'd the Emir Moussa, who was the principal author of this war, entirely to forsake his reputation by flying with the seven thousand horse he commanded, tho he was resist'd only by an handful of men, but who were the most valiant in all Asia.

Death of Schah Behram.

The soldiers who were left behind dispers'd, so that there remain'd only Malek Behader, who stood his ground before the gate of Cazar with five thousand men of the militia of the Coronas. Wherefore Timur march'd against him; but Malek no sooner perceiv'd him than being seiz'd with fear, he cast away his buckler, and fled into the camp at Gombedulih.

Timur pursu'd him, and Malek laboured at a distance the death of his horse, so that he was forc'd to fight on foot, while his troops dispers'd. One can scarcely believe a man capable of such intrepidity as to attack twelve thousand horse, inured to war, and excited by a desire of revenge, with only two hundred forty three soldiers: it is true indeed, the latter fought only to attain glory. Thus Timur, thro the assistance of heaven, took a city and a fortress in two days and two nights only; made slaves of part of his enemys, pillag'd their goods, and utterly defeated 'em.

The soldiers of Timur enrich'd themselves with the spoils of the enemys, whom they pursu'd to a great distance. Timur order'd the prisoners to be put to death.

The soldiers of Timur enrich'd themselves with the spoils of the enemys, whom they pursu'd to a great distance. Timur order'd the prisoners to be put to death.

eny, Tahan and Seifeddin to follow 'em as far as the defile in the mountain of Chikidgek, and to seize all the fugitives they should overtake. Then this prince, concern'd at seeing his orders so remissly executed, pursu'd 'em himself, the Emir Daoud marching before him. A hundred of the enemy's horse, who belong'd to the rear of the army, perceiving 'em, divided themselves into two bodies. The left fell upon Ertchi Bouge, and made him turn his back, whilst the right attack'd Timur, who not only sustain'd the first onset, but even rush'd on 'em with so much vigor, that they gave way, and fled to the body on the left, which had fallen upon Bouge, seeing the defeat of the other, fled also; and there were many who were join'd to the other upon the situation. Soldiers had taken from the enemy's.

Timur then perceiv'd a woman, sister of Bayizid Gelais, and wife of the Emir Mandak, who fled with black Beladors. He pursu'd her, and call'd to Malek to abandon her, and told him he wou'd save his life, tho he deserv'd to lose it. Malek laid hold on the promise of the prince, abandon'd the lady, and fled before; nevertheless the lady fled full speed, and Timur, who alone pursu'd 'em, had overtaken, and a valent nam'd Ashistan, who had a bow and arrows in his hand, had not hinder'd him, feigning as if he wou'd bestir at him as soon as he shou'd see him advance. This man was an ill archer; but Timur, who had neither buckler nor arrows, took him for a good one, and was not willing to be blam'd for having expos'd his life for a woman; so he took care of himself, while his horse, thro a caprice, stopt short, which accident gave time to Doletchah Bacchi to join him, who holding his buckler before his head,

head, pursu'd the ladys, and the valet was oblig'd to let fly at him: but he shew'd his unskilfulness, ceas'd defending himself, and fled as fast as the ladys: so that Domschah was not able to come up with 'em.

Arzon-Mule had then gone with child nine months, and was soon after deliver'd of a princess, who was nam'd Tooman-Aga. Without doubt the good fortune of this child was the only cause that her enemys cou'd not overtake her: the person design'd for happiness, is happy even from its mother's womb. Tooman-Aga had afterwards the honor to enter the marriage-bed of Timur.

This prince return'd from Acoubi, which is near Kezilcac, which occasion'd joy thro the whole camp; but the Emirs Yakou and Seifeddin were ashamed, and repented for having shewn so much slackness in obeying Timur's orders: his displeasure encourag'd 'em; they immediately departed to make reparation for their fault, and persued their enemys: they march'd through the mountains, and came to the narrowest passage of the mountain, Cukidget, where they met the troops of Galais, and others who had fled; they brought 'em back, and by this means made amends for the fault they had committed.

Timur staid all the winter at Carschi, contented and glorying in his victorys; and gave the people of this country marks of his clemency and liberality, in relieving poor families, whose ruin the war had caus'd. His chief care was that the city shou'd flourish in this great city: and he order'd that the grounds round about shou'd be cultivated, that there might be plenty.

Book I.

He gave the government of Bocara to Mamutchah, and commanded him to reduce entirely to obedience the inhabitants of that city, to render the country flourishing, and to remit yearly the tribute and revenues to his treasury.

He sent orders to Nikepeichah, who was wandering about Corassiam, to come to him; and he gave him the government of Amouye and its dependences, of which he had formerly been the natural prince. Ali-Yefour, who was without any employment at the head of the Yefourians, went to Bocara to find Mamutchah his son-in-law, and with his Yefourians submitted to Timur, whom they had formerly refus'd to obey; tho he had several times summon'd 'em so to do. The Emir Muaid sent Chirin-Bai Aga his wife to Macan, and the secretary Temmegi's wife accompany'd her; but they miss'd their way, which caus'd the loss of many horses and beasts of carriage; but a guide was sent 'em, who conducted 'em to Macan, where Timur kept a seraglio.

## C H A P. XVII.

*Mir Hussein brings an army into the field to oppose Timur.*

WHEN the Emir Moussa had sav'd himself from the fury of our soldiers, he fled with the ruins of his troops to the Emir Hussein, who, on the recital of what had pass'd, was very much astonish'd. But the fear and inquietude which seiz'd him did not hinder his recruiting his army, and parting immediately

diately from Saliserai, with design to give Timur battel. He sent before him the Emirs Oladgia Itou Aperdi, Gebancha, son of Taifou, and Poulad Bouga, with ten thousand men of the Coronas, under the conduct of the Emir Moussa. They pass'd the iron gate, and encamp'd in the narrowest place of the mountain of Chekidgek, where they prepar'd for battel.

Timur, on advice of these motions, departed with resolution to attack 'em at night. He took the road to Ilgonz Bagh, a mountain situate in the plain of Vartagh; and that he might not be surpris'd by the enemys, he went thro the deepest snow. He sent some men by the road which leads to the top of the mountain to get intelligence. They there seiz'd on twenty of the enemys, who inform'd 'em of the state of their army; and told 'em they had pass'd, during the night, by the narrowest part of the mountain Chekidgek, and were encamp'd at Chekedalic. Timur, for the greater security, sent spys there, who confirm'd this advice, and assur'd him that the Emirs Moussa, Oladgia Itou, and others, had ten thousand horse, and that they were rang'd by squadrons on the mountain Arcaya, where they were encamp'd. Timur had then but two hundred men, whom he put in order, and march'd against the enemys, alway securing the advantage of the ground.

When the two armys were in view, they rais'd hideous cries; but Timur being assur'd of the great inequality of their forces, thought it proper to delay the time, that he might not expose himself to an apparent defeat, which would have tarnish'd the glory of the famous victory he had already gain'd.

He thought himself the rather necessitated to do thus, in that it was the beginning of his  
G 4 rise;



rise; and that in losing this battel, he should lose all hopes.

The enemy well knew our army was not numerous enough to attack them during the night; but Timur, who was better satisfy'd of it, press'd his retreat to so rash an enterprize; and returning by the way of Courdene, without being pursu'd by the enemy, he got to Carschi, and then to Bocara, whence Ali Yefouri and Mamutchka came to meet him, and pay him their respects: and afterwards he made his entry into the city.

The Emir Yakou had formerly been ill used by Mamutchka; this governor had caus'd him to be ty'd to a horse's tail, beaten with a stick both before and behind, and made to run in that condition: but as he was always jealous of him, and hated him, he counsell'd Timur to go into Corassana on pretence that his affairs requir'd it; nevertheless Timur would not consent to it; whatsoever instances he made him. The Emir went thither without taking leave of him, accompany'd with Seifeddin and Abbas Behader, and they arriv'd at Macan. Some days after, the news was brought to Bocara, that Moussa and Oladgia Itou, the scouts of the Emir Hussein, were approaching with a great army. Timur told Ali Yefouri and Mamutchka, that there needed only resolution and valor to preserve the country, and that they shou'd lead the troops out of the city, and attack the enemy by night. But these captains, who had not courage enough to undertake so rash an action, refus'd to do it; and made appeal to Timur, that it was better to defend the place, and stand firm against the attacks of the enemy, than to expose themselves to the loss of a battel.

As Timur perceiv'd their cowardice by their discourses, he doubted their resolution to defend the place; and as his affairs requir'd his presence in Corallana, he went thither. When he was arriv'd at the Gihon, he met ten barks going down; he order'd 'em to be stopp'd, and they serv'd him and his men to cross the river; thence entering into the desert, he march'd to Merou, and went to join his illustrious family at Macan, a town of Corallana.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*The siege and taking of Bocara by the army of Hussein. Timur defeats the army of the Coronas.*

**T**H E Emir Hussein besieg'd Bocara, which was at first vigorously defended by Ali and Mamutchta; who, after having rang'd the troops that were in the suburbs to enter the city, gave marks of their valor in a sally from the gate of Kelabad, where they briskly repuls'd the besiegers, who, that they might surprize 'em, pretended to fly as far as the tomb of the Sainton Seifeddin Bacrezi. These men not being skill'd in the art of war, and imagining the enemy fled in earnest, pursu'd 'em with their spears, axes, and other arms; but as they advanced, Hussein rally'd his troops, who drove them back as far as the gates of the city, killing a great number, whilst the rest with difficulty escap'd, and flinging away their bows and arrows, hid themselves in holes and cavernaries. Ali and Mamutchta wou'd have rally'd

†

some

some soldiers to defend the city; but they could not do it. Wherefore being oblig'd to fly during the night, they took the road to Macan, very much troubled at their not being able to obey Timur's orders, which wou'd have been much more to their credit.

The Emir Hussein sent men in pursuit of 'em, as far as the Gihon, who slew almost all of 'em, and took possession of their baggage. With great difficulty Ali and Mamutchah safely pass'd the Gihon with some of their servants: they went thro the desert to Merou, and at length had the honor to see Timur at Macan, of whom they begg'd pardon for their fault. Timur gave them horses and furniture, and took 'em again into his service.

Thus the Emir Hussein made himself master of Bocara, where he staid some time, then leaving the Emir Calil with some other Emirs and good troops to guard the city, he return'd to Saliseraï.

Timur  
passes the  
Gihon,  
and seizes  
Nikepei-  
cha.

In the mean while, Timur learnt that Nikepeicha, to whom he had given the government of Amouye with its dependences, had behav'd himself as an enemy, and not only ungratefully seiz'd all the soldiers who wou'd have list'd themselves in his service, but had even seiz'd his domesticks. This news put Timur in a passion; wherefore he departed that night by the road of Tourtghul with six hundred men, and arriv'd at the Gihon, when the river was overflown and extremely rapid. He himself look'd out for a passage, and at length chose that which is at the foot of the mountain of Bourdalie, and order'd the Emirs to go down lower on the banks of the river with four hundred horse. This prince, follow'd by twenty men, enter'd into the river at nine a-clock in the

## The history of Timur-Bec.

91

Chapter 21

the morning, and swam till half an hour past twelve before they got to the other bank; they then march'd all night, and next morning found themselves at the town of Amdaye, where Nikepeicha was. This governor being valiant, a good horseman, and dexterous at the bow, put himself in a posture of defence: but his ingratitude was fatal to him, for on his shooting his first arrow, the string of his bow broke, and the arrow stuck in the buckler of Calil Behader, who, with Durke, fell immediately on him, and bound his hands behind his back: wherefore one may well say, that his treason had spun the cord with which he was bound. Timur order'd barks to be brought from the other side the river, in which the princes cross'd with the four hundred men.

About the same time Timur had advice that the army of the Coronas was encamp'd in the neighbourhood of Bocara: whereupon this prince being resolv'd to attack them, departed thence, march'd all night, and met them in a place call'd Birnat: the two armies fought with extreme vigor: till at last the advantage fell on our side; for the Emir Calil general of the Coronas was at length vanquish'd.

After this expedition the victorious Timur pass'd the Gihon, and encamp'd a whole month in a place nam'd the hill of Carazoul, where wells and cisterns; from thence he went to Mian, where, soon after his arrival, he punish'd Nikepeicha for his ingratitude.

C H A P. XIX.

*Timur sends an ambassador to Malek Hussein at Herat.*

**T**IMUR at his arrival at Maan, sent the Emir Yakou in quality of ambassador to Malek Hussein prince of Herat, who gave him a handsome reception, and spared nothing to convince him of the union he desir'd with his master, telling him he wou'd go express to Seracs, and if Timur wou'd give himself the trouble to come to that place, they wou'd enter into a strict alliance, which shou'd be confirm'd by solemn oaths. The Emir Yakou gave Timur an account of this negotiation; but our prince having been formerly in this country with Hadgi Berlas his uncle, he remember'd all the bad actions the race of Malek was accus'd of.

When the Emir Norouz son of Argoun Aga had all the power in the country of Corassana in the reign of Cazan Can, Malek Faceddin, uncle to Malek Hussein, had been shut up by his father Chamseddin Kert in the citadel of Kullar in the country of Gour. Norouz having obtain'd his freedom of his father, gave him in marriage the daughter of his own brother the Emir Hadgi, with the government of Herat; which was the cause of his rise. But when Cazan Can's inclination towards the Emir Norouz, was chang'd thro' the calumny of some slanderers, and the Can had put to death his brothers and relations in Media, and sent the Emirs Cotluccha and Manke-gut to take Norouz himself, this prince con-

ding

## The history of Timur-Bec.

93

Chap. 10

ding in the obligations Facreddin ow'd him, and the alliance they had contracted, fled to Herat for succor, where he found the more willingly, in that Facreddin gave him a handsom reception, and renew'd his protestations of friendship, which he confirm'd by an oath. Nevertheless the Emir Coteluchta was so soon arriv'd at the gates of Herat, than the traitor Facreddin committed the most vile action in delivering up his benefactor the Emir Norouz into the hands of his enemies, who presently put him to death. Cayasoddin, brother of Facreddin, and father of Malek Hussein, behaved himself in the same manner in the reign of the Sultan Aboufaid towards prince Chouban Selduz his benefactor, unjustly putting him and his son Chelaocan to death, who fled from Sultan Aboufaid to him for refuge, because he had promis'd and sworn to protect them. Tho the Emir Chouban had always blam'd the conduct of the Emir Norouz, in flying for refuge to such traitors, saying, I would give my life for the preservation of such a traitor, yet he did the same, and the like misfortune happen'd to him. As the fact is related at length in my *book of particulars*, I have but slightly mention'd it here, to shew that Timur's foresight did not permit him to rely on the prince's promises, tho on the other hand his generous temper pointed out to him that it was unhandsom, as in requital for the good entertainment Malek Hussein gave his ambassador, he should behave himself with incivility and scorn, wherefore he sent to him his own son prince Genghis, who was the eldest and dearest of his children, accompany'd by Moharekcha Sendgeri. And because we are oblig'd

to

# The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I. to return greater civility than we have receiv'd. Timur order'd him to tell him in answer to his obliging expressions, that for a proof that he confided entirely in him, he had sent his son, and left in his kingdom his family; and all that belong'd to him, because he design'd to return to his native country: he added, that he did not doubt but Malek Hussain wou'd follow the generous sentiments which kings ought to have, in being faithful for what is entrusted to them, and that he shou'd be well pleas'd with whatever they should do, because from great men ought to proceed only great actions.

## Timur defeats the army of the Emir Hussain in Transoxiana

**A**S Providence had design'd the crown for Timur, this prince was not permitted to taste the pleasures of Corassana, whilst he cou'd acquire glory; he was excited therefore to depart out of that country to seek laurels elsewhere, tho' the security he was in, and the good order of his affairs were powerful motives for him to stay there still. At this time almost all Transoxiana was in subjection to his enemys, who had every where troops in garison; yet he departed with six hundred men only for that country, cross'd the Gihon, and having march'd all night, arriv'd next morning at Neyestan, that is to say, the field of reeds; where he staid all that day in a garden to refresh his horses, and at length

pass'd by Jouibari; he march'd all night, and arriv'd at Carschi on that side of it which looks towards Cazar, and he invest'd it with his troops.

He met many of the domesticks of the Emir Monssa, whom he seiz'd and bound; the relations of Cader Anandgie, Coudec and Oordichah fled with their men; Donike and Ali Behader caught some merchants whom they took to be enemys; and after having us'd them ill, took from them some bales of brocade, which they brought to Timur; who order'd all to be restor'd to the merchants, without reserving the least part.

There were at this time five hundred men of the Coronas at Couzimondac, whom the Emir Saliman Yefouri join'd, as also Barat Coja and Hendoucha, with their troops: Anandgie and Coudec pass'd by Cazar, with a design also to join 'em.

Timur, ignorant of what had happen'd, departed from Carschi at sun-set, and arriv'd at midnight at Neugat, where he learnt news of the Coronas, and of the troops which had join'd them; this oblig'd him to be upon his guard, so that he went out of Neugat the sooner, and staid all night in the plain of that town.

The next day he decamp'd, and in their march Emir Yakou fell from his horse, and was so dangerously wounded that his health was very much impair'd: wherefore Timur sent him to be accompany'd by thirty men, and then march'd vigorously against the Coronas. All the brave men thought it best to give 'em battle; Ali Yefouri, whose relations told Timur of it, who compell'd him to take horse. Ali Behader and Acbouga were sent before with sixty troopers for the forlorn hope, and on the



Timur-Bec. Boudoucha was at the head of three hundred horse. These scouts soon came to blows; there ensu'd a bloody fight, in which the bravest warriors lost their lives. The Timur's soldiers were fewer than their enemies, yet they defeated 'em, and beat 'em back as far as the body of their army. After this expedition Timur gave time to the cavalry to rest, and did not take horse himself till noon; then he divided the soldiers into seven bodies; and because the enemys were by far more numerous than they, he made the following speech to encourage his men: "This day, brave soldiers, is a day of dancing for warriors; the dancing-room of the heroes is the field of battle; the cry of war are the long lung and danc'd to; and the wine which is drunk is the blood of the enemy."

Military discourse, according to the genius of the Tartars.

Timur left the Emirs Daoud, Saïf, Hussein Berlas, Seifeddin, Abbas, Achouga, Hindon, Elchir Houga, Douke, and Ali Behader, each in his own post; advanc'd himself to view the enemys, and at their approach divided his troops into two wings, commanding in person the main body.

When they were in view, the Chah Reddiss and his son fled, Ali Yelour and the two horsemen who accompany'd him did the same; but this did not hinder Timur's rushing upon the enemys like a lion. The battle did not last above an hour, victory declaring for Timur, who intirely routed this vast multitude. Our victorious soldiers pursu'd 'em, and drove 'em as far as Chokedalie; taking their principal officers prisoners, with much cattle and baggage, and enriching themselves with the booty. Among the prisoners, were Oladgia Ikon, Taycani and Poulad, who had once been

been of the number of Timur's best friends; wherefore our soldiers put them to the sword, and laid their heads at the feet of the great Timur, who cou'd not see these illustrious men lie dead without grief: he order'd that their bodies should be carry'd to the city of Kech, that the Imams might pray for 'em, and funeral obsequys might be perform'd in a sumptuous manner; tho they had us'd hostilities against him.

After this defeat he would not give the enemy's time to recover their loss, nor to levy fresh troops; but resolv'd to pursue 'em as far as the fortreſſes of Ghidnaman, and to put his army in order, to march directly against the Emir Husien; but the princes refus'd to follow him, representing to him, that their opinion was, that he ought to abandon this enterprize, and return to Samarcand; to which he consented.

Timur having got together the troops of Kech and the neighbouring places, departed for Samarcand, leaving Termagiuc Aigouri and Taghioluk at Kech, to take care of his revenues, without molesting the people. At his arrival in the neighbourhood of Samarcand, Ouchcar Behader, governor of that city, set out with the troops of the Emir Mouſſa, and stopp'd at the bank of the rivulet Rahmet. Timur divid'd his soldiers into two bodys, and at the first onset routed his enemys. Akir Behader pursu'd Ouchcara, and striking at him with his sword, broke his quiver and arrows; but Ouchcara turning himself upon his saddle, answer'd him with another blow of his sword, which he smote the head of Akir-mur's horse, which fell under him: so that Ouchcara fled, and enter'd into the city. Timur encamp'd in a place call'd Retin, while Ouchcara got together fifteen hundred men,

Timur returns to Samarcand.

**Book I.** whom he equipp'd to advantage, and made a second sally. The soldiers of Timur march'd against 'em like roaring lions, and so affrighted these new troops, that they fled without fighting; and re-entring the city, block'd up the streets to hinder the cavalry from passing. Their fears were so great, that they got in their horses all saddled with the greatest expedition, their saddles being much bruise'd, so that they were but badly equipp'd; the soldiers likewise being reduc'd to so great misery, that they hid themselves in the filthiest places.

Timur staid some days in the delicious country of Sogd, where he chose for his pleasure-houses Ferinkunt and Sagrauge, two very agreeable villages.

In the mean time he had advice that Oladgia Itou and Poulad Bonga were advancing with a great body of the Coronas. Taghish also arriv'd, and confirm'd this news, adding that a troop of soldiers had fallen upon Termagiuc unawares, and put him to death.

Timur departed from Sogd, to encamp with his army on the bank of the rivulet Yam; to which place Argounschah, native of Bourdalic, whom Timur had sent to gain intelligence, brought with him a soldier, who told Timur that Oladgia Itou and Poulad Bonga were encamp'd on the rivulet Toun, and that the Emir Hussein was arriv'd at Carschi with a great army. On this Timur imagin'd it best to wait a more favorable opportunity to revenge himself on his enemys.

He disbanded the army he had rais'd at Koch and the neighbouring places; and with the six hundred men who were with him before his passing the Gihon, march'd towards the lowermost part or basen of the river of Samarcand.

The Emir Hussein had already given orders *Chap. 10.* to the Emir Moussa and Ouchcarz Behader, to oppose Timur in his passage; for which reason they were marching to encamp with their troops at Kukelder Atchighi, to give him battle.

Timur arriv'd there, and attacking them first, they fled, and sav'd themselves with great difficulty in the city of Samarcand.

Timur came to Sagruga in the night, and having given time to his cavalry to rest themselves, he departed in the morning, and arriv'd in the evening at Caradgie: he set out next morning, and came down to a place call'd the camel's neck; he went thence in the evening, and marching all night, arriv'd at Kukenc; he cross'd the Sihon at Cogende, where he staid one night. And as Kei Cosru and Behram Gelair, who sided with the Can of Gete; had brought thence seven thousand Getes commanded by Coutchoun Timur and Chiraoul, and had stopp'd at Tachkunt, Timur went towards that part of the country, the Can having order'd that the army and the people of the country shou'd rendezvous under Behram Gelair, who by virtue of that order ought to be Emir or governor of that city. But Timur did not find in Behram that friendship he expected: for tho Behram had always pretended a great affection to him, after having sworn to join with him against the Emir Hussein, and by the assistance he had receiv'd from Timur's troops was establish'd in his own inheritance, and had got the advantage over his enemys; yet when this prince requested him to serve him in the condition he was in, he had no regard to his promises and treatys, but forgot all the obligations he ow'd him, and refus'd to render

BOOK I.

in the service he was able, tho he might have done it with ease, since he had the disposal of all the country, as collector of the revenues of the imperial treasury.

Timur boldly reproach'd him for his ingratitude : telling him that the union he had contracted with him was the first cause of his rupture with the Can and the Emir Hussein ; that this union had been preserv'd inviolably on his side ; that he had deliver'd him out of misery, and help'd him to recover the command of his Toman, which he cou'd never have done without his assistance ; that after he had been beaten by his enemys, he had been the cause of his gaining the victory over 'em ; and that when he saw him have troops sufficient to assist him, he came to him : but because after all these kindnesses he had treated him with so much baseness, he did not doubt that he shou'd one day see him at his gate in the same miserable state from whence he had before deliver'd him. All this in the end fell out exactly.

The Emir Kei Cosru did not treat Timur in the same manner ; for after having testify'd to him the joy he felt at his arrival, he conducted him into his palace, where he treated him magnificently, and gave him all possible marks of his good-will, promising to join with him against every one else.

The Emir Kei Cosru had the honor to be son-in-law to Togluc Timur Can king of Gete ; and the prince Toman Cosluc afterwards gave him in marriage the daughter of his cousin Bisan Timur Can, son of Abuken ; and he had by this princess a daughter nam'd Rakie Can. Timur demanded her in marriage for his son the Mir-

za Gehanghir; and they pass'd a whole month in pleasures and diversions. Chap. 21.

CHAP. XXI.

*The Emir Hussein sends an army against Timur, which is defeated.*

THE Emir Hussein went into the city of Sebz at the head of a great army of the Coronas, and encamp'd at Salat Boulac. He sent before to attack Timur the most considerable troops of his army, to wit, the Emir Moussa, the Cheik Mehemed son of Beyan Sel-daz, Oladgia Itou Aperdi, and others, with twenty thousand men; who march'd by Samarcand to the river of Balangour. But the Emir Moussa and the other leaders of these troops, who had several times felt the effects of Timur's valor, were seiz'd with fear; which oblig'd 'em to detach from their army three great squadrons whom they sent before, with orders that every one should keep a particular way to wait Timur's passage. Malek Behader was posted in the road to Suzangheran with three thousand men; Gehanchah in Rebat-Mulc with fifteen hundred troopers; and Kherman with a thousand men at Dizac to guard the passage of Biti

Timur, who was not disturb'd at the great number of the enemys, being accompany'd with Kei Cogan, took with him two thousand Getes to oppose 'em. He went before with fifteen hundred men from a place call'd Cavas; he cross'd the Siron at Cogende, and in the night attack'd Gehanchah, whose troops he

## Book I.

dispers'd: the next day he went to Dizac, where he attack'd Kherman and beat him; and permitted his soldiers to pillage his baggage. He staid at Dizac to give his cavalry time to rest themselves, and left there three hundred Getes to guard the spoils of the enemy. He then departed with two hundred horse only, to attack Malek Behader: he sent before him thirty of his bravest and most experienc'd soldiers; four scouts went also to the right and left to make discoveries, and he follow'd 'em himself with a hundred and sixty six men.

When the enemys saw these thirty men so well equipt advancing towards 'em with great boldness, they were surpriz'd, and thought it was the vanguard of the Moguls army, that is to say, of the Getes, and that the main body was behind. This thought, join'd with the secret fear they had of Timur, caus'd the flight of Malek to fly. Our men pursu'd 'em, and kill'd a great number: these cowards, who were fill'd with the fear which Timur had caus'd in them, approaching the Emirs Moussa and Oladgia Itou, also struck terror into them; and tho they had twenty thousand men complete, they decamp'd the same night, and fled in so great disorder, that no one staid for his comrade, because every one being under apprehension of death, fled full speed to rejoin Hulsein.

The prince Kei Cosru sent to inform Timur that the army of the Getes had plunder'd the Mussulmans; that after having made many slaves, they had return'd by the way of Dizac; and that he expected Timur with a hundred men in Rebat-Mulc. This news griev'd Timur, who presently went to Kei Cosru, to acquaint him, that

that it was not right to leave the Mussulmans in the hands of the infidels. Chap. 21.

Upon this they held a council, wherein it was resolv'd that sixty chosen men shou'd be sent in search of the Getes in the mountain, to molest 'em, and perhaps put 'em to flight; in which case it wou'd not be difficult to deliver the slaves from the hands of the barbarians. In short, these sixty men had no sooner rais'd a dust on the mountain, than the Getes were afraid and fled, abandoning the slaves and booty, of which our soldiers easily made themselves masters.

After this expedition they return'd, and Timur cross'd the Sihon, and went down to Cossac.

When the Emirs and soldiers of Hussein, arriv'd, poor, and miserable, were come to him, he fell into a great passion, and after a sharp reproof, told 'em they too well deserv'd the misfortune which had befallen 'em. He departed with the Can very wroth; and when he was at the white mountain, he chose ten thousand of his best soldiers, encourag'd 'em by his discourses, and sent them away as scouts, with order to cross the Sihon at Cogende, and to march with all expedition to give the enemy battel.

About the same time that Timur receiv'd the news of the march of Hussein, there fell a terrible shower of hail throughout the country; and this happen'd during the night, and the darkness was extraordinary, yet he mounted his horse immediately, and the Emir Kei Cofru assisted him with his forces. They departed to-

The Getes were idolaters.

Ac Kattel, or Acarya.



Book I  


Flight of  
 the army  
 of Emir  
 Hussein for  
 fear of Ti-  
 mur, and  
 the return  
 of Hussein.

gather at the head of fifteen hundred men, and at midnight arriv'd at the passage of Barm; they seiz'd it, and order'd the trumpets to be sounded, the noise of which, join'd to the fear the enemys were in, caus'd this army, so formidable and numerous in comparison to that of Timur, to be seiz'd with a panick. It cross'd the river, and march'd all night to find Hussein; the soldiers appear'd before their general with shame, and the general was afflicted at his bad fortune. During these transactions, Behram Gelair, without following the advice of Timur or Kei Cosru, departed from Tachkent with the army of Gete, to return home, and took the road to Seiram. As the furniture belonging to Timur and Kei Cosru were with Behram, these princes were constrain'd to follow him; and when they were arriv'd at Seiram, they found 'em left in the village of Tchemkent, whence Behram was already departed.

Timur sent Sar Bouga and Aobouga Behader to Gete to the Emirs Chamseddin and Hadga Bei, to get their assistance; and then he consulted with Kei Cosru concerning the place where they shou'd take up their winter-quarters, and it was resolv'd that Kei Cosru shou'd go to Otrar, and that Timur with his six hundred men, on whom he very much rely'd, shou'd return to Tachkent.

The Can and the Emir Hussein consider'd, that the winter approach'd, and that with all their efforts they wou'd be able to gain no advantage over Timur, because this prince by his wise conduct had defeated all their enterprizes, notwithstanding the numerous armys they had got together: they therefore left at Samarcand Poulad Bouga with a troop of their bravest soldiers

soldiers to guard that city, and return'd to Ashkenkerai to pass the winter there. Chap. 22

CHAP. XXII.

*Timur-Bec Hussein again seeks to make peace with Timur.*

**A**FTER the winter, Sar Bouga and Ashonga Behader, whom Timur had sent to Gete, return'd, and brought advize that a great army of the Getes were marching to his assistance; and that this prince usually succeeded in his undertakings, and defeated the greatest armies with few soldiers, the Emir Hussein resolv'd to make peace with him; and he the more earnestly desir'd it, in that he learnt that the army of Gete intended to come over to this prince in the spring. He imagin'd he shou'd not be able to resist him when at the head of a great army, and with a handful of men he had much to be overcome; and if he continu'd the war, he must expect the fatal consequences of it; for this reason he thought it proper to apply himself to the doctors of Cosseide and Tachkunt, and beseech them to prevail with Timur by sentiments of piety, and to inspire in him, thro' their wise counsels, a spirit of reason and peace, instead of that of discord and rage. These doctors did not fail to come and see him; after having made vows for his prosperity, they told him that being perswaded of the respect he bore to men of their character, they were resolv'd as to ask a thing which concern'd both religion and the state. "I know," said they, "the war between you is the

Book I.

“ the cause of the ruin of the kingdom, and of  
 “ the misery of the people; and that at present  
 “ a strange army is on the point of coming in-  
 “ to this country: the infidels will plunder the  
 “ goods of the Mussulmans, and bathe their  
 “ hands in their blood; and if they are conque-  
 “ rors, which God forbid, they will not spare  
 “ even you; the hatred between you will cause  
 “ strange effects, and ruin all the antient fami-  
 “ lys of the empire. We hope that, following  
 “ the inspirations of him who has always given  
 “ you the victory, you will change this hatred  
 “ into friendship and peace, that the affairs of  
 “ the empire may be restor’d to their former  
 “ state, for the good and security of the peo-  
 “ ple.”

These remonstrances were follow’d by a dream of Timur, which at length caus’d in him a resolution to make peace. This dreamt that the Sihon was overflown, and that he was set on a plank of wood on the water; that he fell down on his face, and pray’d without intermission to be deliver’d from the danger he was in: that his surprize made him swoon away, and that when he was return’d from his swoon, he found himself on the bank of the river towards Samarcand, from whence, looking behind him, he perceiv’d a boisterous sea. When he awak’d, he interpreted the dream after this manner: he imagin’d the sea signify’d an army, and that the deliverance he found in getting on the bank of the river towards Samarcand, signify’d that his desires wou’d be accomplish’d in that very place.

All these reasons oblig’d him to change his resolutions, and to despise the assistance he expected from Gete: he was entirely resolv’d on a peace; but he thought that if he made use of

a mediator in it, it wou'd take up too much time to canvass the reasons on both sides, and to keep up the right of each; that the business wou'd be long in hand, and it was better he shou'd go himself to find the Emir Hussein; that it wou'd be more convenient to have a conference together in relation to the difference between 'em, because they wou'd sooner agree on the articles of peace. For that purpose he sent to Hussein an officer whom he cou'd confide in, call'd Pentchenbe, to let him know his design; and at length our prince departed in person to regulate his affairs himself according to his custom. In the mean while the Emir Moussa and Oladgia Itou came to meet Timur on the part of Hussein, to ask pardon for all that had past: they renew'd their antient friendship, and Timur did Emir Moussa the honor to embrace him.

After the preliminaries were settled, the peace was concluded, and these princes disbanded their army. They regal'd each other with several diversions, and then they return'd home. Timur took the road to Kech, and arriv'd at that agreeable country, where all the grandees came to kiss his feet, and receiv'd him with all imaginable civilitys. He found at Kech all sorts of satisfaction and happiness, and the people of this kingdom were extremely over-joy'd to possess in peace a prince so dear and valuable to 'em.

## C H A P. XXIII

*The Emir Hussein brings an army into the field from Bedakchan.*

**T**HE Can and the Emir Hussein, on the news of the kings of Bedakchan having revolted, fail'd not to prepare an army for reducing them; and as these rebellious princes had also rais'd troops, they went to meet 'em, and the two armies were soon in view.

Malek Hussein, prince of Herat, sent some good troops from Balc, with orders to ravage the provinces thereabouts, which were subject to the Emir Hussein; and Timur had no better advice of this enterprize than he departed for Kech with his forces to repulse Malek Hussein in consequence of the peace and union which had been renew'd between him and the Emir Hussein.

When the troops of Malek heard of Timur's march, they return'd back, after having pillag'd Cheburgan and Balc, and all the country as far as Culm. Timur cross'd the river at Termid; but as the Corassians retir'd, he advanc'd no farther, but went in search of the Can and the Emir Hussein, who on notice of his coming, made a truce with the kings of Bedakchan, and immediately return'd. These princes met at Condoz, embrac'd each other, and put an end to the aversion they had a long time bore to one another. They made entertainments which lasted several days, went together to the cold country of Iscamich; and Timur sent orders to prince Gehanghir his son, who was at Macan,



Macan, to come immediately with his family and retinue to the agreeable territory of Kech; which he did accordingly.

Poulad Beg and Acbouga also revolted, fortified themselves in the citadel of Cabul, and committed many acts of hostility. The Emir Timur accompany'd by Timur, march'd with an army to that place to reduce 'em, pass'd by the mountain of Hendoukech, and arriv'd before Cabul. Poulad and Acbouga made preparations to defend themselves with bravery, and fortified the citadel.

Timur and Hussein march'd with an army to Cabuletan.

Our army attack'd the place on every side, and gave many assaults; the besieg'd vigorously defended themselves from the top of their walls, casting great quantitys of stones, and shooting arrows on the besiegers.

Timur employ'd all his courage in subduing the enemy, which he so effectually perform'd, that he took from 'em all hopes of safety: but thro' his own and his soldiers courage a great many of his brave officers were slain. Catai Beg, Timur's brother, and other officers were wounded in the attack; but the presence of Timur inspir'd 'em with so much resolution that they at length became victorious: our army enter'd the place sword in hand, seiz'd on Poulad and Acbouga, and bound their hands; and after the taking of the place, the princes return'd home laden with glory.

The Emir Hussein ask'd Timur's advice in relation to the design he had to make his ordinary residence in the city of Balc; and for this end to rebuild the citadel of Hendouan, formerly noted for the height of the walls, the depth of the trenches, and the largeness of the towers: but Timur attempted to dissuade him from this thought, and for that reason told him the

## The history of Timur-Bec.

Book I

the tragical history of the Mirza Abdalla his uncle, who after the unfortunate death of his father Mir Cazagan, wou'd reside at Samarcand, notwithstanding the counsel of the Emirs who were attach'd to his interest both by duty and inclination, and who cou'd not but represent to him, that thus to abandon his native country, and live amongst strangers, was thro want of prudence, because one cou'd not confide in the service or assistance of strangers: but this young prince wou'd not hearken to the counsel given him; and at length what had been predicted happen'd to him.

Timur told the Emir Hussein that he took the same road as his uncle, and that a prince of so great a soul as himself shou'd not be guilty of a like fault, after such an example had been given him.

Tho the Emir Hussein approv'd of Timur's counsel as very fit to be taken, and as given him thro pure friendship, yet he did not follow it, but was resolv'd to put his design in execution. He departed for Balc, at which place his misfortunes began; and tho it was resolv'd, that at their return from Cabul, Timur shou'd depart for Kech, yet he desir'd him to accompany him to Balc, which he did. Hussein was no sooner arriv'd there, than he began to build the citadel of Hendouan, and to dig the ditches: he gave orders for the men to work there with diligence, made all the inhabitants of Balc come into the citadel, and the city remain'd like a desert; which happen'd in the year of the Hegira 769.

An. Dom.

1367.


Mog. The  
Monkey.

In the mean while advice was brought that the army of the Getes was again upon its march thither. The Emir Hussein, who foresaw that he was not able by himself to get over so in-

tricate

## The history of Timur-Bec.

111

tricate an affair as this, besought Timur to do it himself, and to march into Transoxiana to repulse this army, *Chap. 24.*  telling him all you'd be lost, if the troops had not for their general the most valiant prince in the world.

---

### C H A P. XXIV.

*Timur marches at the head of an army to repulse the Getes.*

**W**Hen the news of the march of the Getes was confirm'd, Timur departed for Transoxiana accompany'd by the Emir Moussa. They prepar'd themselves warmly to oppose the enemys, who were arriv'd at Tachkunt, where they encamp'd to pass the winter.

Timur and the Emir Moussa march'd to Samarcand, and encamp'd at Cara Kichlac. The Emir Hussein follow'd 'em with the rest of the army, and encamp'd in the plain of Kech.

There very fortunately arose a division among the lords of Gete : for Camareddin of the hord of Ouglat, Kepec Timur, and Chiraoul were united with some troops against Hadgi Arkenout, who resolv'd to give 'em battel. They took horse with this design ; but when they were in view, they made peace, and Arkenout return'd home : but Camareddin and Kepec Timur deceiv'd him, and retreated with their troops instead of following him ; and then Hadgi Bei son of Chiraoul cut off Arkenout's head, and by that means put the army of the Getes in disorder, and oblig'd it to march back again. Timur, who was well skill'd in the art of war, wou'd not attack 'em, but



but said, that when there was a misunderstanding between the generals of the enemys army, it was requisite that the sword should be left in the scabbard.

Timur and Moulla sent messengers to tell the Can and the Emir Hussein, that since the Getes were return'd in disorder, it was proper to pursue em; but because the kings of Bedakchan had made several irruptions during the winter on their dominions, and had pillag'd the city of Condoz, the Emir Hussein thought it more advisable to march into Bedakchan, and put a stop to the designs of those princes.

Since thro' the valor of Timur there was no further danger to be apprehended from the troops of Gete, the prince Moulla and Timur rais'd fresh soldiers, with whom they march'd to Bedakchan; and when they had cross'd the Orhon, and regulated the march of the army, they went to Faican and Koaoughan, and encamp'd at Kechem, a place dependent on Bedakchan. Timur, who lov'd to be first in every expedition, departed first, being accompany'd by Gehanmulc, son of the Emir Hussein; and this last prince staid with the Can in Kechem.

On the other hand, the army of Bedakchan march'd towards the borders of the mountain Kerkas, where they stopp'd; their commander imagining that not a bird cou'd pass without their permission: but when they perceiv'd Timur's horse, they fled. Nevertheless, when they were arriv'd at the defile of Gerem, they were resolv'd again to stand their ground; but as soon as Timur's standard approach'd, all the troops fled beyond the mountain, cross'd the river Gerem, ruin'd all the country, and lodg'd on all the passes of the river. Timur cross'd it, and conceal'd a part of his men. And when the enemy

Chap. 24.  
 enemy had advice that the army had pass'd it, they retir'd by the upper side of Bedakchan, encamp'd in a narrow pass of the mountains nam'd Ortondgc, where two great rivers meet: but having advis'd that the troops were marching thither, they turn'd their backs, and abandon'd it again: they went towards Conghoralenk, and cross'd at the small part of the Gihon; seiz'd on the other sides of the river which were on this side, and encamp'd there. The scouts of our army pursu'd 'em; but the enemy having prepar'd themselves to give battel, beat and routed 'em: they even made prince Cbeik Ali, king of Bedakchan, prisoner. These vagrant princes afterwards presented Timur with the horses and all the flocks of their king. Timur, on advice that a troop of the enemy which had fled was retir'd into a defile, sent against 'em Gehanmulc, son of the Emir Hussein, with troops. He vanquish'd 'em, and took from 'em a great quantity of spoils: but at his return the troops of Bedakchan oppos'd his passage, took possession of the pass, and gave him battel. Gehanmulc fled, and the Bedakchans recover'd all they had lost. They kill'd a great many of our men, disabled six hundred and thirty horsemen, and made themselves masters of their horses and baggage. Balkhi rode post with this news to Timur. The prince immediately took horse, and in a passion march'd to the top of the mountain: but his soldiers being fearful, wou'd not follow him; so he was forc'd to content himself with thirteen horse, with whom he seiz'd on a narrow pass, thro which the enemys were oblig'd to march: he fell furiously upon 'em, and beat 'em, rescu'd his soldiers from their hands; and Timur protested that of all the battles he had been in, he had not yet met with

so rough a one. In the mean while fifty of the  
enemy's infantry, cover'd with their bucklers,  
boldly march'd against Timur; and being with-  
in shot of him, let fly a great cloud of arrows.  
At the same time two hundred men came up  
to their assistance: but, thro' the good fortune of  
Timur, Eltchi Begs ran to 'em, being alone,  
and cutt 'em. He carrels'd 'em, and for that rea-  
son touch'd 'em several times upon the neck,  
speaking to 'em in a kind and gentle manner.  
"The person you see, says he, is the great Ti-  
mur: he will restore you your slaves: why  
do you then fight to no purpose? You know  
that if you are kill'd or made prisoners, you  
will bear the blame of having your slaves  
taken. When the soldiers heard the name  
of that prince, they retir'd, and were hin-  
der'd 'em from fighting. They consider'd their  
weakness, kiss'd the earth in token of submis-  
sion, and two of 'em came to him, in a humble  
manner, to beg pardon. Timur order'd 'em to  
bring the next morning all the horses and buck-  
lers they had taken from our men; and he pro-  
mis'd to deliver 'em back their slaves. They  
consented to every thing he requir'd; and said  
to him, "We are your servants; whatever  
you command, we must obey." They then  
return'd home, after having with'd him all man-  
ner of prosperity. Timur return'd to his cam-  
p. The men of Badachan got together all they  
cou'd find belonging to us, besides several pre-  
sents of horses and other things: the  
day they laid 'em at the feet of Timur,  
who kindly accepted of 'em, and ord-  
er'd their slaves to be restor'd. At length this great  
prince, by his prudence, valor, and good con-  
duct, with thirteen men only, deliver'd six hun-

\* The Tartars presents always consist of a piece of silk and a  
dred

died and thirty horsemen who had been made slaves, and reported what an army had shamefully lost; having also the professors made him by what means he was brought safe to the city, and as soon as he arriv'd, Timur-Bec and the troops which had fled, and the troops which were come into that city, were sharply reprimanded. The Emirs besought him that he wou'd defer the process against 'em till the end of the campaign; but Timur's zeal wou'd not permit it. He order'd 'em to be brought that instant before a court-martial; and after

they were all punish'd according to their sentence. Timur's stay at Bedakchan, the Emir Hussein sent to tell him, that the Cheik Mehemmed Selduz and Kei Cosru, after having got together all their friends and some troops, were upon their march, with their ensigns display'd; that nothing but his invincible sword was able to quench the fire of this rebellion; and he

with expedition, to settle himself. Hussein return'd with the Can to Salsirah.

## CHAP. XXV.

### *Timur returns from Bedakchan.*

WHEN Timur had advice that the Cheik Mehemmed Beyan Selduz and Kei Cosru were design'd to make war on Hussein, he took horse and departed from Bedakchan; and as every one knew that victory always accompany'd the standard of that prince, the rebels sent him a letter, in which they represented the

cause of their discontent, and beg'd assistance of him. This letter was intercepted by the Emir Hussein, of which Timur had advice. When he was arriv'd at Arhenk, he had a conference on the bank of the river with the Emir Hussein, who testify'd his joy on seeing him, and observ'd on his side all the ceremonies which were tokens of a kind reception. Timur, because of the friendship they had renew'd and confirm'd by oaths, expected that the Emir Hussein would shew him the letter of the princes, and not conceal his design; because the discovery of a secret is a token of sincerity: but Hussein did not answer his expectation, which made him jealous. He was no sooner got to his palace, than three persons came to him, who told him that the Emir Hussein had resolv'd to betray and kill on him. All this was confirm'd by a private person, to whom the Can Adal Sultan said that the Emir Hussein had order'd his Emir Moussa to watch an opportunity to seize on Timur; which letter he brought with him. Tho these circumstances increas'd his jealousy, yet he had so great a soul, that he took no notice of 'em, and acted as he had done before.

All these marks of Hussein's baseness, confirm'd by so many circumstances, did not astonish Timur: he conceal'd this letter, imagining that if Hussein had any design to betray him, he would have done it at their first interview. "Is the Emir Moussa, says he, able to seize me? And can a fox make a lion his prey?"

After he had banish'd from his mind all these thoughts, which might give him any discontent, he took horse, and went to find Hussein, to know of him the truth of these rumors. He met him on horseback on the bank of the Gihon: and as he was about to speak to him, there came a bark

back from the other side of the water, out of which there suddenly leap forth a man, who whisper'd to the enemy his near approach. The Sultan, upon hearing this, thought the best way to attack the enemy would be to lead Timur to the river. He told him of it, and instantly began to cross the river with his troops.

Timur did as he desir'd; and when he had overtaken the scouts, he put the army in order of battle: but the enemy had no longer heard of the arrival of the great Timur, than they turn'd back, and fled. Timur took the pursuit to the river, and thence to Alai, whither he was pursu'd by Zendeacham; and the Cheik Mehomed Beyan Selduz fled to Zizi, towards Gogende, to which place Timur pursu'd him: but the Cheik cross'd the Siron, and fled towards Tachkine and Otrar: wherefore Timur, full of glory, immediately return'd to Kach, where he ordinarily resided; whilst every part of his empire was in a state of jubilation. Timur then march'd to Balch, where he chose the castle of Handouan for his residence.

CHAP. XXVI.

The capture between Timur and Houssein.

When God designs a thing, he disposes the matter, that whatever he hath resolv'd on, must come to pass: thus he design'd the empire of Asia to Timur and his posterity, because he foresaw the millions of his government,

Book I. ment, which wou'd be the means of making his people happy. The least accident in the course of this prince's fortune hath been so extraordinary, that the wisest and most learned men were never able to fathom it: every thing fell out according to his desire, thro' the assistance of the divine providence, which had resolv'd to settle the crown on his head. And as for sovereignty, according to Mahomet, in the shadow of God, who is one, it cannot be divided; so, more than there cou'd have been two moons in the same heaven: so, to fulfil this truth, God destroyed those who oppose him whom providence wou'd fix upon the throne.

Among all the princes who had the title of Timur-Bec, there was none of greater merit: but his wicked inclinations, his ruin, and his various misdeeds, his contempt of laws, and want of regard to the publick good, his self-conceit, and the small regard he shew'd to others, join'd to passion and imprudence in his speeches, render'd his government insupportable, and drew on him so great an aversion from the people, that they lost all the esteem and affection they had had for him. The good intelligence he kept with Timur-Bec had so firmly supported his authority, that scarce any one refus'd whatsoever he demanded; and he, who declar'd himself his enemy, was not safe from the vengeance of Timur, but by flight. In all his other enterprises and undertakings, Timur assisted him as far as he was able, with an admirable courage and intrepidity: he even pursu'd the Can Sultan, who was jealous of Hussein, the he had rais'd him to the throne: this prince fled from his court, and pass'd thro' the country of Khorasan, but

But Timur, being now after some resistance, and  
 sent him to prison. Moreover, the friendship  
 of these two princes was set up by their al-  
 liance in marriage. Timur had married the  
 sister of Hussein: Nevertheless the latter had  
 always design'd to deceive Timur; for tho' he  
 had in appearance repented of the enmity he  
 had conceiv'd against him, and had obtain'd a  
 peace with so much difficulty, and tho' their a-  
 greement was confirm'd by oaths, yet he left  
 not off his former treasons: his unconstant be-  
 haviour join'd with the malice of his rebellion Hus-  
 sein had been so far from being reconcil'd him  
 to Timur, that at his return, and the treaty he  
 had made with Timur. He sent men to Kech,  
 to make all Timur's subjects depart out of that  
 city, and to bring 'em to Bale. And because  
 the Emir Moulis had in a drunken fit beaten  
 and kill'd the son of Chagartchi, and fled for  
 his Hussein sent messengers to bring away to  
 Bale the wife of this Emir, call'd Charin Be-  
 gum, the daughter of Timur, he design'd the prince  
 to marry her. And when he was near the place  
 near him, and order'd him to send his troops  
 with the Emir Moulis with the troops he com-  
 manded. Timur had every day new causes of  
 jealousy, advice being brought him that a de-  
 sign was form'd to seize his person: on the o-  
 ther hand, the secret which Hussein had made of  
 the letter of Kei Cosru, join'd with the in-  
 sinuation Mehemed Beyan had given him that all  
 these reports were well grounded, as in effect  
 they were; and the reflections he made on the  
 present treasons and former treasons of Hus-  
 sein: all this lay, convinc'd Timur of the  
 evil intention of that prince, whom it was not  
 not to suspect. In the mean while he held a coun-  
 cil with the Emir Moulis and the princes he



and most confide in; in which he told 'em the Emir Hussein had designs against his person, and that it was prudent for him to prevent their being put in execution.

When the Emir Moussa, the other Emirs, and the principal courtiers of Timur, as the Emirs Daoud, Ser Bouga, Mmaid, Hussein Behader, Achoung, Eltchi Behader, the Cheik Ali Behader, and Dolotchah Secretary of state, had heard his discourse, they unanimously agreed that he ought no longer to confide in the treaty or oaths of Hussein, since he always had design'd to deceive him. "God forbid," said they, "that we shou'd let slip the opportunity of murthering ourselves in a

war, which we shall never be able to finish; and then repentance will avail nothing. We must go to war to oppose him, and employ all our force to carry on incessantly to impede his progress, that he may no longer have the means of hurting us." After having given thanks to God, according to the custom of the council, they concluded thus: "Since the enemy has always evil designs in his heart, it will be better to proclaim open war against him."

Then addressing themselves to Timur, they said, "This perfidious prince designs to ruin you; you ought therefore as a wise man to break off all intelligence with him; by which you'll put an end to his insupportable tyranny, and stop the tears and crys of the people, who expect freedom from your hands."

The Emir Yakou and Dolotchah press'd this home to Timur, who gave great attention to 'em. And after the Emir Moussa had renew'd with this prince a promise of friendship, they conceiv'd a perfect enmity against Hussein; and excited

On the 11th of the month of this conjuncture of the capture by the

On further notice, Hussein design'd to violate his oath, already prepar'd to execute his artifice, Timur, relying on the ruin of this enemy. But as his greatness would not permit him to make use of tricks, which are suggested by weakness or necessity, he boldly declar'd war against him, giving out his orders for troops to be rais'd, and sending Hindoui Corcora native of Capcha, with orders to oblige the Cheik Mehemied Beyan to return, who had fled, and cross'd the Sihon for Ottrar.

When the troops were come to the place where Timur was, this prince gave his orders among the scouts and guards; he kept with him the Emir Moussa to command the rear, and departed from Kech in person, after having, according to custom, consulted the astrologers, and taken the happy moment in which he shou'd depart. He set out before the rest with a great number of horse, full of great ambition and hope. As soon as he arriv'd at Chaur, the Emir Moussa was surpriz'd with a panick fear, as usual, went back from his promise, fled, and return'd to Samarcand. Timur seem'd to take no notice of this action; but sent Siorgatmich Beyan, with the Emir Muaid and Hussein Berke before the rest, as scouts; while himself followed the guards, and continu'd his march. When the scouts had pass'd the iron gate, and were arriv'd at Termed, the scouts of the army of Hindou, commanded by Hindouchah and Calil, perceiv'd 'em, but they soon fled back to Balc.

When Timur was arriv'd at Roys, three leagues from Termed, he met the illustrious and

**Book I** and place Canton Seid Beréke; one of the most considerable Cherifs (that is, relations of Mahomet) of the venerable Mecca. This famous Cherif, who had acquir'd a great reputation for his piety and learning, came by chance to this place: he presented Timur with a drum and a standard, which are the ordinary marks of sovereignty, and at length, as if inspir'd, he sung an hymn, which predicted Timur's future happiness.

Timur gave Seid Beréke a very magnificent reception, he being one of the most illustrious lords of the house of the prophet. He then join'd with him in an indissoluble friendship, and they resolv'd to spend all their days with a perfect concord, which he had foreb'd: and Timur order'd that whithersoever they shou'd be both laid in the tomb, that his body shou'd be carried thither, and that the day of judgment, when every one shou'd lift up their hands to heaven to implore assistance of some intercessor, he might lay hold on the robe of this child of the prophet Mahomet.

The great confidence Timur always plac'd in this Cherif, who was the chief of all the other relations of Mahomet, is too well known to need proofs of it. Their strict friendship was of great advantage to the Mahometan religion, and on that account several people abandon'd their error and idolatry to embrace it. This union hath continu'd to this day among the illustrious posterity; and it is hop'd, that living begun so well, it will remain among the descendants to the end of time.

Timur departed from Boya for Jagan on the river Jaganrouc, where he order'd the Emir Yakou to assemble the troops which were in the neighbourhood. Yakou accordingly got together



valiant brave men for scouts; whilst the Emir Hussein had also done. The Cheik Ali Behader, who was of prodigious strength, had no sooner perceiv'd the scouts of Hussein, than he rush'd on them like a lion sword in hand. The encounter was terrible, nothing being heard in the two battalions but frightful cries, whilst the soldiers fell on each side. Catai Behader attack'd once in another place, and oblig'd the enemy to fly; and the Cheik Ali Behader took Chouban Serbedal prisoner. Afterwards this great army, being divided into two bodys, march'd by the foot of the mountains; the soldiers who were always desirous to fight, were full of joy, and under the command of Timur-Bec, who was at the head of the army, they march'd on the banks of the river, which was from the eastern passage of the mountain, the citadel of Orben; where Timur-Bec gave Boga-torch Agien the title of Gen; and after he had regulated his army, departed for Balc. He met Zende-hacham the son of Mehemmed Coja, leader of the vanguard, who came from Cheburgan with the troops of the head of Agendi, and join'd him.

The army, consisting of a prodigious number of soldiers, block'd up the city of Balc on all sides, and the citadel call'd Hemdouan. There was a hideous cry among the Tartar troops; nevertheless a great many horse and foot sallied out of the city to repulse the soldiers; and the two armies fought with parallel'd courage till night, when both party

grew

A considerable body of soldiers who are a kind of vanguard, always commanded by a prince.

drew

draw off. In the battel, prince Omar Chalk, the son of Timur, who was no more than fifteen years old, being a proof of his valor, was wounded in the leg, which pierced thro his foot: and tho the surgeons drew a hot iron thro the wound, this brave young prince bore it with invincible patience. The next day the sun had no sooner shone on the fort of Hendouan, than the two partys prepar'd for battel. Timur's army march'd at the sound of kettle-drums and trumpets; and a party of Hussein's men falling out of the citadel to shew their valor, they began the fight, which was very bloody. Timur, who at a distance beheld this terrible encounter, conceiv'd his affairs to be desperate, and that he shou'd never be able to re-establish 'em: he therefore resolv'd to shut up the gates of the citadel, and to abandon his fortune and all his grandeur.

Timur defeats Hussein.

The victorious Timur sent to acquaint him, that if he desir'd his life, he must submit, and deliver up the fort. Hussein being now reduced to the last extremity, at this time advis'd with his council, and sent his eldest son to Timur, with the Can whom he had set up: they submitted to him, besought him to spare their lives, and told him they shou'd account themselves happy in being subject to him. Hussein then sent his other son, and order'd him to tell Timur in the most submissive manner, that since fortune had forsaken him, he foresaw that the kingdom wou'd be Timur's lot, and poverty his: he therefore he wou'd resign his crown, renounce his riches, grandeur, and other pleasures of this world, being resolv'd to lead a private life overwhelm'd with griefs and misfortunes, and to request nothing of him but a free passage out of the citadel, in order to go a pilgrimage

Book I. pilgrimages to Mecca. Timur granted his request, and order'd that no one shou'd molest him, but that he might depart in freedom at the time he propos'd, and retire whither he pleas'd.

The Emin Hussein went again to satisfy Timur that he wou'd go out the next day; and request'd he wou'd promise him that no one shou'd undertake any thing against his life. Timur granted it; but Hussein was so accusom'd to break his word, and therefore jealous that Timur wou'd not keep his promise, that he went out of the citadel the same night with two servants. His affliction indeed had so overwhelm'd him, and he was so full of jealousy, and under so much sorrow, that he could not find the way he was to go to; neither was he stout enough to perform the pilgrimage he propos'd. After wandering for some time he arriv'd at the old city of Balch, and when morning was come, his fear of death, which he was conscious he had deserv'd, made him get upon the minaret of the principal mosque, where he hid himself. By this were fulfill'd the words of Gelaeddin Roumi in his poems, "That a camel which got upon a minaret, cry'd out  
" *I am hid here, pray don't discover the place I am*

As the time fix'd by fate for the death of Hussein was come, the concern he was in to hide himself was in vain. A soldier, who by chance lost his horse, and hunt every where to seek it, was advis'd to get upon the minaret to try if he could not perceive it.

\* A high steeple built near the mosque in Balch, where the cryers with a loud voice proclaim the names of the

He went up, and saw the Emir Hussein, who in his prosperity, and the least generosity to a man, a handful of power, and promised he would save him from the danger he was in; he would not fail to requite him according to his power; he bestowed him with the greatest importunity, and made him swear he would not discover him. The soldier promis'd he would not, and went down the minaret, but immediately ran to Timur, to whom he told the adventure, not forgetting the circumstances of the pursuit, nor the measures Hussein had made: he asked pardon of Timur for the action, and told him, that because he had the honor to belong to him, he would not keep it secret, but was oblig'd to give him this important advice.

The Emirs and soldiers had no sooner heard of this, than they ran to the mosque. Hussein, who saw 'em from the top of the minaret, despair'd of his life; he came down very much affected, and by chance the emperor was seen: so that he was discover'd, and brought to Timur with his hands bound. This prince would not break his promise, but said to the Emirs who were near him, "I renounce the right I have of taking away his life, and craze the sentence of his death, by which I might revenge my self." When he had dismiss'd him from his presence, the prince of Catlan complain'd of the wrong which had been done him, in that Hussein had sent to death his brother Kei Cobad; he therefore besought Timur to deliver him into his hands, that justice might be done for the crime he had committed in taking away his brother's life. Timur, to appease Kei Cobad,



He told him he ought to abandon this profession, for that his brother's blood would be staining'd without his having a hand in it; and on that occasion he cited a verse of the poet: *Leave him who hath offended you in the hands of time, for time and fortune will avenge you.*

Death of  
Emir Hussein.

Nevertheless the remembrance of the ancient familiarity, as well as the alliance between Timur and Hussein by the marriage of the illustrious prince's Turcan Aga, added in great a sorrow in Timur's mind, that he shed many tears. Upon which the Emir Otaogialloo, a man of years and great experience, imagined that as Timur bore so great affection towards Hussein, he might escape from the danger he was in, and when an opportunity was once lost, they would repent it. He therefore made signs to prince Kei Cofru, and the Emir Mahmud, to get out of the assembly; which they did without asking leave of Timur, and taking horse, they follow'd the Emir Hussein, soon overtook him and slew him: which punishment being due to him according to the strict rules of justice, the protection of Timur avail'd him nothing.

An. Dom.  
1369.  
Heg. 771.  
Mog. The  
Dog.

The body of this prince was laid in the tomb of Santon Coja Ucache.

At length the army made themselves masters of the fortress of Hendouan; the two sons of Hussein, Confaid and Norouz Sultan, paid for their father's faithlessness, for they were burnt, and their ashes cast into the sea; his two other sons, Gehan Mule and Cassi Sulran, fled into India, where they perish'd. The Can whom Hussein had set up was also put to death. They brought to Timur the ladys and domesticks of Hussein, as also all the treasure and riches he had amass'd with so much sollicitude

and

and avarice. Among the ladys of this prince's seraglio, Timūr kept for himself the princess Serai Male Catun, daughter of Cazan Sultan Can, Olous Aga daughter of Bayan Selduz, Islam Aga daughter of Kefer Yeloury, and Togi Turcan Catun. He gave to Behram Gelair the great queen, Sevendg Cotluc Aga daughter of Turmochirin Can, Hussein's first wife; he gave Dilchadaga to Zende Hacham, and the princess Adel Mule, daughter of Kei Cobad prince of Catlan, to the Emir Yakou Berlas: he distributed the other ladys of Hussein's palace in the same manner, and gave the daughter of this prince to Elchi Beg, brother of Taban Behader.

Timūr order'd that the inhabitants of the city of Belc, who had shut themselves up in the citadel of Hendonan with Hussein, should return to the old city, and rebuild it for their dwelling-place. The citadel, after it had been pillaged, as well as the palaces of Emir Hussein, were all raz'd even to the very foundations; and every thing that belong'd to him was so entirely destroy'd, that there remain'd no footsteps of him.

*The end of the first book.*

## B O O K II

The advancement of Timur-Bek to the throne of the empire of Zagatai. The marriage and death of Mirza Gebanghar his eldest son. Seven famous expeditions against the Geyers. The conquest of the kingdoms of Georgia, Armenia, of the empire of Capcha, and grand Russia. The establishment of Tocatich on the throne of Capcha. The birth of Mirza Charac son of Timur. The conquests of this emperor in Mazendran, Azerbijana, the country of Fars, which is the true Persia, and in Irac Agemi.

### C H A P. I

The establishment of Timur on the throne of the empire of Zagatai.

**A**FTER the taking of the city of Balc, all the Emirs, princes and generals of the army of the empire of Zagatai, the Cans of Termed, and the prince of the Cherifs, Seid Bereke, (who, as we have related in the former book,

book, had predicted Timur's advancement to the throne, assembled in this city, and with unanymous consent chose Timur to sit the imperial seat of Zagatan. Nevertheless they waited for the proper season to perform the ceremony of his coronation; and as soon as that time came on, Timur ascended the throne, plac'd the crown of gold on his head, and girded himself with the imperial belt in presence of the princes of the royal blood and the Emirs, who all kneel'd down before him, and having wish'd him prosperity, made him sumptuous presents, sprinkled handfuls of gold and precious stones upon his head, according to custom. This gave him the title of Sahib Caran, which words signify the emperor of the age and conqueror of the world; and from that time all the country was subject to his laws.

This prince was then thirty four years old, being born in the year 736; this great action happening in the year of the Dog, one of the twelve years of the Mogul calendar, answering to the year of the Dog 1335, in the month of Ramadan, in which month the alcoran came down from heaven, according to the opinion of all our doctors.

An. Dom.  
1335.  
Mog. The  
Moufe.

An. Dom.  
1369.

This prince was at first named Timur by his father the Emir Tragai; which name signifying Iron, was given him because of his extraordinary strength; but he was afterwards called the Lion and Conqueror.

For he hath almost always been invincible, and those who have hated him, or made war on him, have been only the instruments of aggrandizing the honor of his throne, and the glory of his triumphs.

<sup>1</sup> This custom continues to this day, not only at the coronation of princes, but also at the marriages of private persons.

Book II.

He began his warlike actions in the city of Balc, which had belong'd to the Emir Hussein; the inhabitants of which place he treated with the utmost rigor, binding some in chains, and beheading others; he destroy'd their houses, and either rooted up or burnt the rest of the country; seiz'd on their riches; which he distributed among his officers, and made their wives and children slaves.

Thus there remain'd no more rebels in that country; the people enjoy'd peace; and there was nothing to be fear'd but from luxury and effeminacy.

As soon as Timur was upon the throne, he open'd the rich treasures of the Emir Hussein, which have been already mention'd, and was very liberal; he particularly distinguish'd himself by his civilitys towards the governors of towns, the generals of the army, the Emirs and principal men of the state; enlarging their commissions and honors: at length he dismiss'd 'em all, ordering 'em to the places of their residence, that they might administer justice to their subjects.

---

## C H A P. II.

*Timur returns from the city of Balc to Samarcand: the building of the castle and fortress of that metropolis.*

AFTER the taking of Balc, Timur made prince Mourad, son of Tchougam Berlas, governor of it; and having a design to return home, he march'd towards Kech, after having built a bridge of boats over the Gihon\*, which

\* Qxus:

is but eight leagues distant from Balc; and Chap. 2.  
which having happily cross'd, he arriv'd in the  
delicious residence of the country of Keeh, and  
encamp'd in the plain of Coudemich, on the  
banks of the fine river of Cochca. This prince,  
as he us'd all his authority to encrease the joy  
and pleasure of the great lords of this country,  
so he procur'd to the enemys of the kingdom  
all the disquietude and trouble he possibly cou'd,  
during the two months he staid in these delici-  
ous countrys. He there order'd carpets to be  
spread, and feasts prepar'd; giving himself up to  
pleasures, and sitting upon the throne in his na-  
tive country, the city of Keeh.

The country being deliver'd from the scourge  
of war, the favorites and officers of the house of  
Timur, and all those who were attach'd to his  
interest, were loaded with gifts, and rais'd to  
considerable posts and honors. In short, this  
prince caress'd the army, and particularly the  
generals; those he cloth'd with robes of honor,  
after having enrich'd them, and confirm'd the  
princes in their Fomans, and the commanders  
of a thousand men in their Hezars.

The Emir Daoud was of this number, and  
to him was committed the post of Deroga,  
that is, governor of the city of Samarcand, and  
chief of the council, whom we commonly call  
Olave Imaret Divan, or chief of the Emirs of  
the Divan. The Emirs Yakou, Seifeddin,  
Eskender, Alemcheik, Alafe Coutchin,  
Ardeche Coutchin, Comari Einac brother of  
Temour Coutchin, had considerable commands  
assign'd 'em in the army, being made Tavatchis\*,

\* Lands which furnish a thousand men.

! Tavatchis among the Tartars are lieutenant-generals.

Book II. which are the first posts under the crown among the Turks.

He made Sar Bouga, Houssein Berlas, Achbonga, Hadgi Mahmoudcha, Eltchi Behader, and Doleitcha Behader, Emirs of the Divan, that is, counsellors of state.

He appointed the following brave men, Catai Behader, Cheik Ali Behader, Caban Behader, Decne, Baichah, Carahing, Cuduc, Apachi Kelte, Cazan Bouga Arhan, and Doura Behader, to be \* captains and lieutenants in his army; and he constituted these illustrious persons, Catai, Cheik Ali, and Akitmur, to be chiefs over the others, making them also his own † lieutenants. And in this manner he fix'd every one of his warriors in the employment which best suited him; and even the meanest officers had great estates, and were advanced to high dignities.

\* Mocadem Sipah.

† Kelanter.

Samarcand made the seat of the empire.

He then departed for the city of Samarcand, which for its charming situation, the freshness of its gardens, the strength and neatness of its buildings, and its delightful rivers, makes the finest city in the world jealous of its beauty. This he made the seat of his empire, and the place of his residence.

He caus'd the walls of the city to be repair'd, and a fortress to be erected; he built stately palaces and neat publick edifices, assigning the care of this great city to the Emirs of his court.

He appointed the Emir Achbonga superintendant of the buildings; and while the public affairs went on in a regular course, Timur

\* The author calls those Turks in this book which we in Europe call Tartars.

us'd all his care and application entirely to purge the empire from the disorders which had crept into it, in such that plenty soon flow'd in this city, and all the earth was charm'd with the justice of Timur's government. In short, the favors and immunitys he granted to the inhabitants, and the moderation and equity with which he govern'd 'em, caus'd so vast a number of people to settle there, that even Grand Cairo and Bagdad envy'd its prosperity and glory.

The Emir Moussa, who since discontent had left the court, at the time when Timur departed for Balc, and was return'd to his own country, having learnt that this city was conquer'd by our hero, fled to Turkestan\*. Timur being inform'd of it, dispatch'd Genghi-Contchin in pursuit of him; and when this general was come up to him, he fought and overcame him, and oblig'd him to retire into the mountains. He there remain'd a vagabond, till the Emir Carlogach, brother of Timur, having pursued him, constrain'd him to return, and to return to the southern country, he being follow'd, he at length resolv'd to cross the Gihon with his two wives, and to fly for refuge to the prince Zende Hacham at Cheburgan<sup>s</sup>, in order to excite him to revolt. This unfortunate man listen'd to the rebel Moussa, which prov'd of ill consequence to him, for he after lost his life, and his principality of Cheburgan fell into the hands of another.

\* The eastern Tatar.

<sup>s</sup> A city of Turkestan, near the Gihon and Balc; long. 100. lat. 36. 45.



## C H A P. III.

*The Couroultai, that is, the diet or assembly of the states, conven'd by Timur's orders.*

**I**N the month of June, the same year, the emperor gave instructions for the Couroultai to be held. The Emirs of the Tatars and Hezares came before the throne, according to the orders they had receiv'd.

\* Aperdi, a hord or tribe among the Zagataian Tartars.

The princes and kings came also; Zende Hacham, son of Mehemed Coja Aperdi\*, was the only person who did not obey the orders. Timur, by an express, threaten'd him with punishment if he did not come to the Couroultai. As soon as the envoy met him, he said, "You must come before the emperor's throne, if you wou'd testify your fidelity." Zende Hacham was deceitful on this occasion, pretended submission, and answer'd him, "I glory in obeying the orders of the emperor: wheresoever he requires my presence, I shall be ever ready with my buckler and sword in my hand; and if he wou'd put me to death, his will be done."

He honor'd and caress'd the envoy, and promis'd immediately to follow him: but he did not keep his word; and a person who came from thence made appear to the emperor, that Zende Hacham was not obedient to him, by the following relation: The Emir Bairamcha Erlat†, and his son Yetlandgi had formerly sided with the Emir Hussein against Timur; but being sensible of their errors, they were pleas'd with

† Erlat, a famous hord of Tartars.

the

the success of this prince; and having learnt the news of his victorys and coronation, were so over-joy'd that they departed immediately from Corassana<sup>7</sup>, to render him their services.

Zende Hacham having advice of it went to meet them; and having carry'd them to a place agreeable for its coolness call'd Dalbeailac, he regal'd them magnificently; and when the fumes of the wine had got into their heads, seiz'd on both father and son, and binding their feet with irons, committed 'em to the care of his brother Pir Mehemed, whom he order'd in the presence of a great many persons to lay them at the foot of the throne of the emperor Timur, tho at the same time he had privately charg'd him to put them to death. Pir Mehemed carry'd them half a day's journey from the place where they had been entertained; and having murder'd them, return'd the same night to his brother Zende Hacham.

As soon as the emperor heard of these violences, he order'd the Emir Oladgia Itou, a relation of Hacham, to endeavor by his good counsel to bring him to his duty, threatening him else with a war, which might bring inevitable ruin upon him.

But as this old man had great experience in all affairs, and knew perfectly the humor of the princes of his blood, he remonstrated to the emperor that it would be in vain to give advice to this rebel, and that he cou'd not do it without being expos'd to an open affront, if his counsel should be despis'd by a rash young man, who ow'd respect to his age: but if his majesty approv'd of it, he wou'd give the commission to

<sup>7</sup> A province E. of Persia, and S. E. of the Gihon.

**Book II.** his son Coja Yousef. The emperor was satisfy'd with his excuse, and sent Taban Behader with Coja Yousef to Zende Hacham, to persuade him to return to his duty, and to bring him to court. But being arriv'd at Cheburgan, this presumptuous and proud prince, without considering the consequences of his proceedings, seiz'd and bound them in chains.

#### CHAP. IV.

*Timur marches to Cheburgan at the head of an army.*

**T**IMUR having advice of the imprudence and violence of Zende Hacham, was so enrag'd that he immediately caus'd the horle's tail, and imperial standard to be erected, and departed from Kech with an army to reduce him to obedience.

When he had cross'd the Gihon, Zende Hacham, who had fortify'd himself in a castle in those quarters named Sefiddez, that is, the white fort, thought at first to have continued his rebellion; but the army having invested him in that place, the sound of the Courke\*, the noise of the kettle-drums, and the great trumpet Kerrena, join'd with the horrid cries of the soldiers, terrify'd him so much, that he cou'd find no other remedy, than supplications and groans. He therefore address'd himself to his relation, the Emir Oladgia Itou, and besought him to intercede for him. The Emir Oladgia

\* A kettle-drum which is beat at the beginning of the fight.

Itou discover'd so much goodness and humanity, as to present himself before the imperial throne; where after having groan'd and wept, he meekly told the emperor, that Zende Hacham, sincerely repenting of his evil action, intreated him to pardon his crime; and he join'd his entreatys with those of that prince, that it might please the emperor to decamp and disband his army, so that Hacham being recover'd from his surprize, might come before the throne with a sword and handkerchief in his hand, to be receiv'd into the number of Timur's servants.

Timur, remembering the saying of Mahomet, that blessing always attends the words of old men, was pleas'd with the intercession of Oladgia Itou; he granted what he ask'd, and abstain'd from the blood of Zende Hacham, who came out of the citadel, deliver'd up the Emir Moussa, the author of this confusion, to the servants of the king, and sent Islam his younger brother to serve Timur.

After this happy success, the Emperor took horse to return home; he disbanded his troops, and return'd to the city of Sebz<sup>1</sup>, the place of his birth, where he not only pardon'd Moussa his faults, but also loaded him with favors; and to comfort him for the grief he seem'd to have for his fault, gave him a sumptuous banquet, and distinguish'd him from many others, by honoring him with magnificent vests, and the command of a hord and province.

---

<sup>1</sup> It was a custom among the Tartars to carry in their hand a naked sword and a handkerchief, when they appear'd before their prince, to signify that they were ready to fight in defence, and to lay down their life if he requir'd it.

<sup>2</sup> Sebz is the same place as Kech.

*Timur sends an army to Balc and Termed.*

**A**S Zende Hachan was destin'd to a miserable end, the excess of his imprudence and pride prevented his reaping the benefit of the emperor's goodness towards him; insomuch that slighting his friendship, he relaps'd into disloyalty and rebellion. He drew over to his side the prince Aboul Moali, tho all his friends, and even policy itself, counsell'd him not to be seduc'd: and these two princes concerted together how they shou'd pillage the countrys of Balc and Termed.

When Timur had notice of it, he dispatch'd Catai Behader, and Argoun Chah, native of Bourdalie\*, with an army of valiant men, all greedy of honor, and foremost in the most dangerous actions, and whose leaders had help'd to advance Timur to the throne.

When the Emirs were arrived at Termed with the army, they found a bridge of boats built by the inhabitants of the country over the river Amouye†: but some of the enemys, having cross'd it in order to get away, had demolish'd one end of it during the night; so that the other rebels, who were dismay'd at the sight of the imperial troops, and fled with precipitation,

---

\* A city in Transoxiana between the Gihon and the river of Saganian; long. 100°. lat. 37°.

† A town of Transoxiana upon the bank of the Gihon, at the foot of a mountain of the same name, towards Cabul.

‡ Amouye is the Gihon or Oxus, which takes this name while it passes to Amou,

being ignorant of the condition of the bridge, were overtaken by the troops who pursu'd them, and discharg'd a great number of arrows upon them: hereby the greatest part of these unfortunate rebels, threatened both before and behind with death, perish'd by the sword and waters. Nevertheless, as some were got over to the other side with Zende Hacham, this prince was accompany'd in his flight; and he gain'd entrance into Cheburgan, with design to defend himself in that fortress till the last extremity.

## CHAP. VI.

*Timur sends the Emir Yakou to besiege Cheburgan.*

**T**IMUR having learnt that Zende Hacham had fortify'd himself in the citadel of Cheburgan, order'd the Emir Yakou to march and besiege it, which this general, having cross'd the Gihon with the army, did in form; he there pass'd the winter, and Zende Hacham dur'd not appear till spring; but then he came to himself again, and having had recourse to his friendship with the Emir Yakou, he went out of the fortress upon his promise of being civilly us'd; begg'd his protection, and ask'd pardon for his fault. His excuses made the Emir treat him handsomly, and promise to use all his interest with the emperor in his favor: he brought him to court, where the Emirs received him with all manner of civility. The Emir Yakou agreed with the princes to carry him to salute the emperor, and kiss the borders of the imperial carpet; they desir'd no other intercessor for the pardon of his crime than the love and clemency

Book II. mency which emperors usually have for their subjects.

The generous Timur vouchsaf'd him the honor to speak to him, and told him that he had forgotten his faults, and granted him his life, but it was his own province to preserve it, and not to desire what it was impossible for him to attain, because the crown which he had fought after is an honor which God grants out of his rich treasure to whomsoever he pleases; which is an effect of his bountiful mercy, and not to be attain'd by care or anxiety.

After Timur had assur'd Zende Hacham of his protection, he honor'd him with his counsel; caus'd him, and made him a present of many curious pieces, as belts of gold, Arabian horses, camels, flocks of mules, and an infinite number of cattle; and even increas'd his former dignity. Then Zende Hacham voluntarily offered himself to the service of Timur, and was lifted among the officers of the court.

## C H A P. VII.

*Timur marches an army into the country of the Geres.*

**T**IMUR propos'd to march into the country of the Geres\*, and in the year of the Hog, which answers to the year of the Hegira 772, and of Jesus Christ 1380, he departed at the head of his army.

\* Geres a kingdom, which lies on the East Turkestan, on the South the river Sihon; on the West Caspian, and on the North part of Turkestan. It fell to Zagan Can the son of Genghiz Can, as his share.

As soon as he had cross'd the Sihon, the Emirs Comze and Orenkitmur submitted to him, so that their hords and countrys were entirely at the disposal of this Prince, who gave the government of them to Kepec Timur, and return'd victorious to his capital city.

Some time after he had advice that Kepec Timur, full of ingratitude and pride, had revolted from him: wherefore as Behram Gelair\*, after what had happen'd at Tachkunt, and his being check'd by this prince, became obedient to him, and had been enroll'd in the list of the officers of the imperial army: he was order'd, as well as the Emir Abbas, Khati Behader, and the Cheik Ali Behader, to make war on Kepec Timur, and by the sword to put an end to this rebellion.

\* Gelair, a hord of Tatars.

All the Emirs and other brave warriors readily obey'd this order, and march'd with great resolution. When the army was in view, the foldiers of the Toman of Behram Gelair, with the conduct of their captain Beterkedgi, an old enemy of Behram, contriv'd to betray him, and some on his person, and others having notice of it, kept in the middle of his corps, and hinder'd the execution of their design. In the mean while Khati Behader, having made some useful propositions with regard to the fight to Cheik Ali Behader, which he thought not fit to hearken to, imagin'd the Cheik disliked his proposals merely thro' want of courage: he therefore in a passion drew his sword, and having cross'd the river Aiche Caden, alone attack'd the enemy's ranks, of whom he routed some; but as their number was very great, they had entirely defeated him, if the Cheik Ali Behader had not follow'd him, and sav'd him from the danger he was in; after which he reproach'd him



Book II. him for his rash action, and they join'd one another again. These actions deserve the greatest admiration, as they cou'd never have happen'd but thro the good fortune of the invincible Timur, under whose conduct they carry'd on the war.

The Emirs made peace with the enemys on the bank of the same river, and then return'd home. They severely punish'd the soldiers of Gelair, who had form'd a design to betray Behram. But when they had the happiness to salute Timur, he was displeas'd at their return, and blam'd them for having made peace.

## C H A P. VIII.

### *A second expedition of Timur against the Getes.*

**T**IMUR, who was never pleas'd till he had finish'd what he had begun, was troubled at the Emirs making a peace with the enemy, by which they had lost the advantage of a battle.

To repair this fault, he resolv'd to go in person to the country of the Getes; for which reason he sent orders every where to levy a great number of soldiers; when that was done, he join'd them to the old troops, and all rendezvous'd near Samarcand. The emperor had scarce march'd by Sciram<sup>\*</sup> and Penki, with his numerous and formidable army, but in less than a month he became

<sup>\*</sup> At own on the frontiers of Gete, North of the Sihon, long. 99. 25. lat. 44. 45.

victorious ; for the army of the enemys fled at the first rumor of his march. This prince went as far as Senghiz Agidge, leaving with his foldiers a vast number of slaves and great booty ; and at length arriv'd at Abou Couzi with the spoils he had gain'd.

In the mean time the following accident happen'd : The Emir Moussa and Zende Hachim, notwithstanding the favors Timur had a thousand times bestow'd on 'em, form'd a fresh conspiracy against him with Abou Hnac, and swore upon the Alcoran, that as soon as they arriv'd at Gassacan, they would seize on him, while he was hunting. Every thing seem'd to smile on 'em, and when they were pleasing themselves with the ridiculous thoughts of their shameful project, they did not reflect on the consequences of it.

The prince Aboulmoali, son of the Can of Termed, and Cheik Aboulleit Samarcandi, who had also conspir'd against Timur, were no sooner come into their mealms, than a person who was privy to the design, presented a memorial of it to the emperor.

As soon as he had read it, he order'd the conspirators to appear before him : when they came, they were try'd and convicted of the crimes of treason and rebellion.

But because the queen Serai Mule Canim<sup>a</sup> was the sister of the Emir Moussa, and the princess Akke Beghi<sup>b</sup> was betroth'd to one of his sons, the emperor said to him, " The crime thou hast committed is great ; but because we  
" are related, I pardon you, and will not re-

---

<sup>a</sup> Daughter of Gassan Sultan Can, and mother of Charles : she was the great queen.

<sup>b</sup> Daughter of Timur.

"venge my self: and thus you may say, it was  
 "your alliantie with me, and extreme old age  
 "which saved your life; for had it not been for  
 "that, I shoud have order'd your head, which  
 "intended evil against me, to have been sepa-  
 "rated from your body."

He also told prince Aboulmoali, that no harm  
 shoud come to him notwithstanding his follis, be-  
 cause he had the honor to be of the family of Ma-  
 homet; but it was necessary he shoud be banish'd  
 this country. He also commanded Ghak  
 Aboulleit to retire to Hendjaz. But as to  
 the son of Keder, as he was brother to the  
 wife of Ghak Aboulleit, this lord had  
 recourse to his generosity, and succeeded  
 for him; and sav'd him from all harm. After  
 this Timur order'd that Zende Hacham shoud  
 be bound, and carry'd to Samartand, where he  
 was kept close prisoner in a dungeon.

At length Timur return'd to Samartand, the  
 capital of his empire; and he had no sooner  
 dismounted his horse, than he gave the govern-  
 ment of Cheburgan, and the places Zende  
 Hacham possessed, to Beyah Timur son of  
 Abouga.

---

Arabia Petrea, in which Mecca is situated.

## C H A P. IX.

*The embassy from Timur to Houssein Sofi,  
king of Carehem\*.*

AS soon as Timur had deliver'd the empire of Zagatai from rebellion and tyranny, he employ'd his time in governing it according to justice; but having learn'd that Houssein Sofi, son of Samson, the Lord of Gonkegrat, had made himself master of the countrys of Cat and Kivac, he turn'd his thoughts to the settling of that affair: to which end he sent Atase Tavaçchi with a handsome retinue to this prince, in quality of ambassador, to acquaint him that Cat and Kivac belong'd to the empire of Zagatai; that he did not act fairly in seizing on them as he had done for these last five years, because they were without a prince; and that he might deliver them to his hands, and send them into the hands of the officers and commanders of the state, that union and peace might be kept up between the two crowns, and he enjoy Timur's protection.

When the ambassador arriv'd at Carehem, he faithfully acquitted himself of his commission to Houssein, which he urg'd with the most forcible arguments: but this prince persisted in his resolution, and without considering the valor of the soldiers of Zagatai, the consequences of which he ought to have fear'd, he answer'd, That he had conquer'd these countrys with his sword,

\* A kingdom on the east shore of the Caspian sea.

Book II. and that Timur might recover 'em the same way, if he cou'd.

The ambassador upon his return reported this answer to Timur, which appear'd so unreasonable, that he was exasperated, and at the same time resolv'd to march at the head of an army against Hussein Sofi. But the pious and learned Moulla Gelaleddin, native of Kech, who was Musti \* to our great prince, did not like that the vanity of a single man shou'd be the cause of a great empire's ruin; and thereupon having made his submission to Timur, he besought him to let him go to Hussein Sofi, to advertise him of his imprudent carriage, and to admonish him to spare the lives and fortunes of the muselmans.

The emperor granted the petition of Moula, and gave him leave to go to Caracorum, to finish this affair. As soon as he arriv'd there, he began to give those general advices, which experienc'd and learned persons, the Imams, and other wise men, ordinarily use to appease seditions, and quench the fire of war; and he accompany'd 'em not only with arguments, but even with citations out of the Alcoran, and the sayings of Mahomet: yet all his eloquence, how sublime soever, did not succeed.

Hussein Sofi slighted his counsels, and had the boldness to imprison this virtuous Musti in the citadel; upon which Timur order'd his troops immediately to rendezvous before Samarcand.

---

\* Musti is the chief priest, who decides the affairs of the law.

C H A P. X.

*Timur departs from Samarcand, to make war on the king of Carezem.*

**I**N the spring of the year of the Hegira 773, An. Dom. 1371. which answers to that of the Mouse, the emperor assembled his army, distributed his treasures, and made presents worthy of the greatest kings. Having done this, he departed from Samarcand, pitched in the plain of Carshi, and encamp'd at Cabamitan<sup>1</sup>. Malek Cayasoddin Pir Ali, son of Malek Azeddin Husem, who, after the death of his father, in the month of Zilcade in the year 771. was proclaim'd prince of Herat, of the kingdom of Gour, Couhestan<sup>2</sup>, and their dependences, sent hither Hadgi Vezir in quality of ambassador to Timur, with many presents of Arabian horses, camels, and other mules for riding, a great quantity of robes and garments. Among the presents was a fine horse spotted like a tiger, call'd Conc Aglen, with a saddle of gold.

Hadgi Vezir, on his arrival, having had the honor to kiss the royal carpet, did in a very humble manner inform Timur with how much sincerity and affection Malek his master had always been attach'd to his interest. Timur was intirely satisfy'd with this declaration; and having presented the envoy with a vest and other

<sup>1</sup> A country famous for a victory Timur formerly had obtain'd over the Gera.

<sup>2</sup> A province in the middle of Persia.



other of † judge. They order'd the gates to be shut up and barricado'd, and having prepar'd the machines of war, they put themselves in the best posture of defence they were able. Chap. 10.

The imperial troops having invested the town, assaulted it with their utmost vigor. And as the attacks were going forward, and both sides were hot, there was no time for treating of peace; arrows and stones fell from the town upon our army like rain, while we had not so much as one engineer in the camp. In the mean time Timur said it would not be to his honor that the town should be taken without making himself master of the slave of Hussein Sofi, who was commander of the town: he therefore immediately order'd the troops to fill up the ditch with faggots and other wood, and would be present at this work himself. He commanded Coutchei Malek to go down into the ditch; but fear seizing him, Timur gave the same orders to the Chaoux Comari, who immediately performed 'em.

Mubacher and Tachour follow'd the Chaoux, and the soldiers did the same, advancing towards the breast-work. Cheik Ali Bahadar was the first who laid his hand on the said work, and would have mounted it; but Mubacher envying him that honor, took hold on his foot, and both of 'em fell to the earth. However, Cheik Ali return'd, and had success: on which one of the enemy's came with his lance in his hand to repulse him; but this

† By this slave he means Behram Yefacoul, all the subjects of Asiatick princes being called slaves.

• Chaoux signifies an aide-de-camp.



Book II. brave man snatching it from him broke it, and struck him upon the head with his sword. Then the soldiers having forc'd a passage on all sides, enter'd the town, seiz'd the governor and principal inhabitants; and put the greatest part of those who defended it to the sword. As also of the inhabitants, whose wives and children they carry'd away for slaves, after having pillag'd whatsoever they cou'd find.

The next day Timur taking compassion on the slaves, order'd 'em to be set at liberty. He then departed from the camp to Carezem. As he remembered the cowardice of Coutchei Malek, who was afraid to enter the ditch, he commanded him to be bastinado'd, according to the law of Genghiz Can, call'd Yafac\*. He was then ty'd to the tail of an ass, and sent to Samarcand.

Cayafeddin Tercan', of the race of Cachlic, (who had been made a Tercan by the emperor Genghiz Can) was made a Mangalai by Timur, as also was Coja Youscf Oladgia Itou. The Mangalai are those who command the vanguard. Timur sent 'em before with some other brave men; and when they were arriv'd at Dgioui Corlan, they found Mangheli Coja and Calec with a troop of the enemys.

Our valiant men began the fight, and carry'd the victory as usual: they put the enemys to

\* These laws are set down at length in *The history of Genghiz Can.* page 79.

' A Tercan is a person who for his good services is so highly advanc'd in the emperor's friendship, that whatsoever fault he commits, the emperor takes no notice of it; that is, he is permitted to do any thing the emperor does. Those only are made Tercans whose virtue has been approved, and their services great. See *The history of Genghiz Can.* p. 49.

Tercan is also the name of a herd in the country of *Tagan*.



the rout, and pursu'd 'em with so much vigor, that they kill'd the greatest part of those who fled. At length the emperor commanded his army to decamp with expedition, and to make inroads on all sides; which was obey'd so punctually, that all the provinces of the kingdom of Carzem were ruin'd.

Hussein, not being in a condition to defend himself, thought only of securing his person; wherefore he enter'd into the city of Carzem, from whence he sent an express to demand quarter, and to beg pardon for himself. The envoy said it was a sense of his fault that had excited Hussein, his master, to try by all means to gain the friendship of the officers of the emperor, that so the fire of war might be quench'd. But the traiterous Kei Cosru Catlani sent a private messenger to Hussein, advising him to trust no body, nor make any propositions of peace, but to prepare his army for battel, and march out of the town, because he wou'd join him with his Toman, and abandon Timur. Hussein, on the petition Kei Cosru; he march'd out of the city with his troops, follow'd by a great many of the inhabitants in arms; and after having beat the kettle-drums, they rais'd a great cry, call'd Souroun, which is the signal for the battel to begin.

The army was rang'd in order on the banks of the river Caoun, two leagues from the capital of the kingdom. As the greatest part of Timur's troops were gone out in partys to plunder the provinces, there remain'd but few near this prince. Nevertheless he drew up as many as he had in order of battel; and having commanded 'em to beat the kettle-drums and sound the trumpets, he march'd against the enemy.

When

# The History of Timur-Bec.

Book II.



When he came within sight of 'em, he encamp'd on the bank of the Caoun, which separated the two armys. When they were ready to fight, Apatchikelte, Pechai, and Socar Dgiorgatou rush'd with their horses into the water, and cross'd the river, and the enemys attack'd 'em briskly. Cheik Ali Behader, and five others, also cross'd the river: he fell furiously upon Coja Cheikzade, whom he put to flight. Catai Behader and Akimur Behader did the same; and Elrchi Behader had follow'd their example, if he had not been drown'd in crossing the water.

Selduz, a famous hord of Tartars.

The invincible Timur won'd also have pass'd the river, if the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz had not oppos'd it, and spoke to him as follows: " Hence, it is now our business to fight; your place is the throne, and it is fit you shou'd take your rest." Immediately the Cheik spur'd his horse into the water, from whence he got out again unhurt. The prince Aboulmoali, son of the Can of Tenna, follow'd him; and these brave men who were skill'd in conquering, attack'd the enemy in several places, and repuls'd 'em even to the gate of the city, which they were constrain'd to enter. This oblig'd the victorious army to encamp round the walls; while the troops who had been making of inroads, return'd laden with spoils. Then the siege was resolv'd to be carry'd on in form, and all the passages of the town were block'd up against the enemy.

Hussein Sofi remain'd some time in the fortrefs, so full of remorse and chagrin, that finding no remedy for his ill fortune, he dy'd thro despair.

After his death his brother Ysough Sofi was establish'd in his place.

C H A P.

## CHAPTER XI

*Timur makes peace with Ysough Sofi, who  
succeeded Hussein; and demands in mar-  
riage the princess Canzade for the prince  
Gehanghir his eldest son.*

**Y**SOUPH, Sofi, not having com-  
miserated those infidelities which his brother  
Hussein had on the subjects of our prince,  
found the means of approaching him by sup-  
plication and obedience. His brother Ac Sofi,  
son of Yenghadai, had a daughter by his wife  
Chnkur Bei, the daughter of an Usbec Can.  
The name of the young princess was Sevin  
Bei; but she was commonly call'd Canzade,  
that is, the daughter of a sovereign. The po-  
ets say, that since the time of Adam, there  
has not been born of the race of the Cans a  
woman of so great a beauty, and that she had  
the genius of an angel, and the body of a  
fairy.

The great Timur believ'd so fine a Lady the  
fittest match for his son Gehanghir, and that  
this marriage wou'd be a certain omen of his  
future elevation to the sovereign power. This  
made him receive with pleasure those tokens  
of respect and submission which Ysough Sofi  
gave him by his envoys.

Timur consented to the peace, on condi-  
tion of the marriage. This Can esteem'd him-

**Book II.** self fortunate; and as he accepted it with all imaginable satisfaction, he desir'd the emperor to prepare an equipage suitable to the grandeur of this princess, and told him he wou'd send her to his court as soon as the imperial orders shou'd be deliver'd him.

The affair being concluded in this manner, hatred and discord were chang'd into peace and perfect friendship. The imperial army march'd home out of the country of Ysough Sofi; and as soon as Timur arriv'd at the place of his residence, he immediately order'd that Kei Cofru Catlani shou'd be apprehended, and brought before the tribunal of criminals, and that the Emirs shou'd demand his prosecution.

This order was executed, his crimes were proved, and his intrigues with Hussein Sofi examin'd into; and being convicted, he was carry'd bound to Samarcand, and deliver'd into the hands of the officers of the Emir Hussein, who put him to death, to revenge the murder of that prince: and the emperor gave the Toman of the province of Catlan\* to Mehemed Mireke, son of Chir Behram, a relation of Kei Cofru.

Timur pass'd the winter in the enjoyment of honors and pleasures; and he particularly employ'd his time in rendring justice, and doing good to his subjects.

---

\* Between the Gihon and the kingdom of Bedakchan. It has a city of the same name.

CHAP. XII.

*Timur marches a second time into the kingdom of Carezem.*

WE read in the last chapter of the Alcoran, call'd Souret Ennas, that we ought to beseech God to keep us from the conversation of malicious men, as much as from the temptation of the devil; because the company of wicked persons is the principal cause of the corruption of the world, as we see in the following relation.

When Kei Cosru Catlani was apprehended, his son Sultan Mahmoud departed from the court with Abou Ishac, son of Keder Yefouri\*, and Mahmoucha Bocari; and retir'd to Yfouph Sod at Carezem. They spoke publickly in an assembly where he was to promote sedition, corrupt this prince, and also to break the union he had contracted with Timur, which they did with so much cunning, that Yfouph dar'd to violate the treaty he had enter'd into.

\* Yefouri  
a hord of  
Tartars.

In autumn he made inroads into the country of Cat, which he laid waste, and dispers'd the greatest part of the inhabitants; but he did not consider the crime of which he was guilty, breaking treatys so soon.

When the winter was over, in the month of An. Dom. Ramadan of the year 774. which answers to 1372, the year of the Ox, the emperor assembled all the troops of the countrys of Nakcheb, Kech, and without the city of Carschi\*; and when

\* Carschi is a city, and Nakcheb is its country; which are often taken for one another; as is also Nefes.

they

**Book II.** they were ready, he march'd towards Carezen; and as soon as he had pass'd the sandy desert, Ysough Sofi was overcome by his fear of Timur's approach. He then repented of the fault he had been guilty of, and sought all means imaginable to obtain pardon. He made use of intercessors to Timur; and at length, after having renew'd the treaty, consented to prepare a pompous and magnificent equipage, suitable to the grandeur of the prince's Canzade, who had not the least hand in her uncle's crime; and promis'd to send her forth with.

Timur, who was of a merciful temper, dispatched messengers of pardon, and at the same time disbanded his army, and return'd to the city of Samarcand, which was the residence of the imperial throne. After which he gave orders that preparations should be made for the marriage.

### C H A P. XIII.

*The famous embassy from Timur to the king of Carezen, to demand the princess Canzade.*

An. Dom.  
1373.

**I**N the month of Chawal in the year 775, which answers to the year of the Leopard, spring being come, Timur sent to Carezen the illustrious prince Yedghiar Berlas his relation, and who sprang from Lala son of Canchar Nevian, and the Emirs Daoud and Oozan Oladgia Ron. These princes departed with presents worthy of their emperor, to demand the illustrious princess Canzade, and to conduct her to Samarcand.

Ysough

## The history of Timur-Bec.

139

Ysough Sofi, at their arrival, gave 'em a magnificent reception, and paid 'em all imaginable civility: their entry was pompous, and he neglected nothing which might shew the respect he bore to 'em.

They behav'd themselves in like manner towards him, with all the kindness which could be expected from 'em: they offer'd the presents they had brought, which where gold money, rubys, musk, amber, velvet, gold and silver brocades, silk, China satins, and other curious stuffs; vessels of the gold of Canzade, adorn'd with precious stones, magnificent habits, women slaves, and the finest horses.

Ysough Sofi, after having made a magnificent feast, and treated the ambassadors like emperors, accompany'd Canzade a great part of the way, and sent her to Timur with an attendance worthy the greatest princess. He presented her for her portion a very rich crown, and a throne of gold, bracelets, earrings, necklaces, girdles of gold, precious stones, several rings, boxes, and caskets full of jewels, robes, pearls, clothes and furniture in boxes, with locks of gold; besides several magnificent beds, canopies, pavilions, tents with one and many pillars; and also with furniture of several sorts, sufficient to fill many caravans.

The ambassador sent an express post to Samarcand, to let the emperor know they were at some distance from the capital; who being inform'd of it, resolv'd to give a magnificent reception to Canzade. For this reason he order'd Cortix Catoun, wife of Caidu Can, and all the other wives, as well as the princes and Emirs, to receive her with all the honour usual on the like occasion, and particularly to wait on her at her entry.

On



## Book II.

On this order all the great lords went to meet her, and shew'd an extraordinary joy, sprinkling on her head abundance of gold and precious stones.

The air was fill'd with the most odoriferous smells, and the ways cover'd with carpets and brocades. The Cherifs, Cadis, doctors or Moullas, and the Imams, with all the principal officers of the empire, went to pay their devoirs to her, while every one pray'd to God for her prosperity. Then they made their compliments, according to the orders given, and every day there were sumptuous feasts and fresh marks of magnificence.

She was every where entertain'd with plays, and had presents made her of perfumes: the ground was cover'd with the most beautiful flowers; and as the people were fill'd with pleasures, because of the peace and security they enjoy'd from the justice and clemency of the emperor, all imaginable grandeur and magnificence appear'd among 'em in token of the joy they receiv'd from the presence of so glorious a princess. But this scene of pleasures and grandeur shone with brighter lustre in Samarcand than in any other place, this imperial city being adorn'd with all imaginable pomp; in so much that every thing there was surprising, and melancholy was entirely banish'd thence, as well as from all the other parts of the empire.

Plays and diversions reign'd thro' all the city; every place partook of these pleasures, and musick charm'd the ears of all.

The princess's bed, as beautiful as that of Caidasa, the queen of the Amazons, was en-

---

\* She resided at Berdaa, capital of the kingdom of Aran, sixty two leagues distant from Teflis, capital of Georgia.

rich'd with celestial graces and blessings. In fine, the magnificence of this happy entry rais'd the city to so great a pitch of glory, that it caus'd a jealousy which the queen Saba<sup>7</sup> had reign'd.

*The marriage of the prince Gehanghir with the princess Sevin Bes, surnam'd Canzade.*

THE officers of the emperor's household began to make all necessary preparations for celebrating the nuptials. An infinite number of tabernacles, tents, pavilions, curtains, carpets, magnificent beds were got ready; a particular pavilion was erected for the emperor, the favorites and great lords, the cieling of which, in form of a cupola, appear'd like a heaven full of shining stars; the outside seem'd cover'd with gold, and the inside was enrich'd with precious stones, the ring and ball at top were likewise adorned with precious stones. The marriage was to be consummated, was parted by a curtain of gold brocade.

The emperor sat on a rich throne, plac'd in the imperial tent, and was so magnificently dress'd that he resembled the sun. Several kings, princes, and Emirs of the army came to the court, to partake of the general joy, and every one indulg'd himself in pleasures.

The emperor Timur appear'd further magnificent by his great liberality. He had order'd

<sup>7</sup> Porte in the oriental language signifys court.

<sup>8</sup> The name of the queen of Saba, who came to visit Solomon.

Book II. many apartments to be fill'd with curious pieces of gold, precious stones, vests, and other apparel: he made so great presents to all the court, that there was every day one of these apartments empty'd.

In the midst of all this pomp and pleasure the emperor commanded the most learned astrologers and expert philosophers to assemble together, and examine the state of the heavens. They punctually executed this order, and after having observ'd all the circumstances, and made choice of the happy moment, in a private apartment in presence of the great lords of the

\* Nekiah. kingdom, they ty'd the nuptial knot\*, and got ready the contract of marriage between the prince and the Mirza Gehanghir, according to the custom of the Mahometans; then they saluted the marry'd couple, and sprinkled over their heads abundance of pearls and precious stones: and when night was come, which resembled the night of Cadre, and which was the most considerable and glorious that had happen'd for an hundred years before; the prince and princess retir'd into the secret chamber, where the marriage was happily consummated. This great feast was celebrated in the year of the Hegira 775.

An. Dom.

1373.

Mog. The.

Leopard.

\* The night of Cadre is that in which (as the Mahometans imagine) God sent to Mahomet the first chapter of the Alcoran by the angel Gabriel.

C H A P.

CHAPTER XIV.

*Timur marches a third time into the country of the Getes.*

**O**N the first day of the month of Chaban, in the year of the Hegira 776, Timur march'd at the head of his army for Gete. When he was encamp'd at Rebat, Catan, it was exceedingly cold, the fog disappear'd, and a violent storm blew fell, that the tempestuous weather made the foldiers unfit for service, so that they cou'd take no care of their horses, their own lives being in danger. This occasion'd the death of many of the men, as well as of the horses.

An. Dom.  
1374.  
Mog. The  
Hare.

Timur sensibly afflicted at this misfortune, order'd his army to decamp from Rebat, and return'd to Samarcand, where he staid two months.

In the month of Chaban, at the beginning of the year of the Hare, he resolv'd to bring his army into the field, and march against the Getes.

He sent his son Mirza Gehanghir at the head of the vanguard, accompany'd by the Emir Mehemed Beyan Selduz, who command'd the squadron of the prince's guard, and by Adalad, son of Behram Gelair, to whom he had given the hord of Gelair after his father's death.

When they had got beyond Seiram, and were arriv'd at Jaron, they seiz'd on a man whom

\* A town of Gete.

**Book II.** they sent to Timur to be examin'd. They ask'd him where Camareddin, the prince of the hord of Ouglat, was. He told 'em he had rais'd an army, and was encamp'd in a place nam'd Gheuk Toupa, or the blue hill, where he waited for Hadgi Bei, not at all expecting Timur's army. Upon which the prince immediately order'd the vanguard to hasten their march thither, resolving himself to follow with all expedition.

Camareddin, on advice of it, retir'd with his troops into an inaccessible place, thinking himself not safe where he was encamp'd. The place he had retir'd to was call'd Birkei Gouris, where are three defiles of mountains extremely steep, and three great rapid rivers. Camareddin cross'd two of the defiles with his army, and encamp'd in the third, after having made entrenchments and batteries in the way.

\* The basin of the Gouris.

But the prince Gehanghir, having an army compos'd of men who understood the art of war, resolutely march'd at their head, and at the sound of kettle-drums attack'd the enemy. When a great many of these unfortunate men were slain with arrows, they fell upon the rest sword in hand, till night came on, when they fled. The next morning our brave men not finding any of the Geres in the camp, vigorously pursu'd 'em; and at sun-rise Timur coming up with the rest of the army, sent the Amirs Daoud, Hussein, and Outchicars Behader, to endeavor to overtake 'em. These captains swam along the stream of the river Abele; but Hussein fell into the water, and was drown'd. When the others were got upon the enemys sands, they pillag'd their goods, par-

don'd the cantons, which submitted, took away their arms, and sent 'em to Samarcand. Chap. 14.

Timur went to Baitac, with design to destroy the enemies, and sent the Mirza his son with a great army to give Camareddin battel, and seize on his person. The prince departed, according to order, at the head of his troops, and roind the cantons of the Getes which were in Outch Ferman. They found Camareddin in the mountains, pursu'd him, drove him out of his country, and made him abandon his troops; they ravag'd all these parts, raz'd his palaces, and seized other ladies, seiz'd on the wife of prince Chameddin, nam'd Bouian Aga, and on his daughter Dilchadaga. Gehanghir sent an expresse to inform the emperor his father of it, who had staid fifty three days at Baitac.

When he receiv'd this news, he departed from the camp, and ascended a mountain call'd Cara Casnac, where Gehanghir, at his arrival, kiss'd the emperor's feet, and presented him with camels, horses, and a great quantity of other goods, after which he propos'd for the prince's Dilchadaga the honor of saluting the emperor.

Timur quitted this camp, went to Atbachi, and thence to the country of Arpaiazi, where he staid some days to refresh himself. Mobarrah Mecrit, who commanded a thousand men in this country, and was one of Timur's oldest friends, testify'd his respect so much by diversions and feasts, that he entirely gain'd

\* Or rather Camareddin, king of the Getes or Moguls.

\* Mecrit was one of the most ancient nations of the Moguls in Genghiz Can's time.

**Book II.** the heart of this prince; and so truly attach'd himself to Timur's interest, that he gave to his son Codadad, as a particular favor, the government of Salar Aglen and of Hussein, who dy'd this campaign.

## CHAP. XV.

*Timur's marriage with the princess Daulat-begum, daughter of Camareddin king of the Gecks. Timur is in danger of losing his life by a conspiracy which he narrowly escap'd.*

**T**IMUR, excited by a verse of the Alcoran, wherein God permits men to marry four wives, resolv'd to espouse the princess Daulat-begum.

The officers of the court prepar'd entertainments and other diversions, that nothing might be wanting in the feast. Wine, concerts of musick, and whatever might contribute to the heightning the pleasure of so signal and happy an action, according to the exact observation of astrologers, were in abundance at the camp. There was a numerous assembly; and at length this great monarch, following the custom of his ancestors, took for his wife this charming and virtuous princess.

The time of rejoicing being ended, he decamp'd; having march'd by Yam Daban, he went to encamp at Uzkunt, whither the princess Corluc Turcan Aga, Timur's eldest sister, came. She departed from Samarcand, accompany'd by the princes, Emirs and officers of her household: she had the honor to salute the em-

emperor, and make her presents to him: and then she partook of the diversions of the court. Chap. 17.

Adelchah son of Behram Gelair, pretending himself a faithful servant to the prince, gave him a splendid entertainment, presented him with fine fine horses, and render'd him all imaginable civilitys. But these were only testimonys of a feign'd friendship; for he had another design in his heart, which was to have surpriz'd Timur during the solemnity of the feast: but this prince, who was under the divine protection, having observ'd many marks of his treachery, and the treason by the motions of the conspirators. The strong conjectures he had of it, caus'd him to leave the assembly, and take horse to return to the camp.

Mehemed Beyan Selduz, Adelchah Gelair, and Turcan Erlat, had resolv'd to seize on his person; but as they cou'd find no opportunity of doing so, his good fortune turn'd the hate they bore him into grief and despair: and this mov'd him to his capital city.

Then he gave leave to the troops to retire to their quarters; and pass'd the winter at Zerdgir Serai, two leagues west from Carachi.

During this winter, Adelchah and the other conspirators having a sense of their fault, came to court, and confess'd their crime. Timur having learnt the circumstances, positively pretended to have known nothing of it, and at the same time highly carels'd Adelchah.

---

\* The families of Behram, Gelair, and Erlat, were the chief among the Mongols in Genghis Can's time.

\* A castle and pleasure-house.



**Book II.** Winter being past, the troops were commanded to get together, in order, as was pretended, to make war on Carezem. The princes and Emirs readily march'd out of all the provinces; and as soon as they were arriv'd at the imperial city, Timur order'd that the Cheik Mehemed Beyan Selduz shou'd be apprehended and prosecuted. And as at his examination his crime was fully prov'd, he was put into the hands of Herimulc Selduz his relation, whose brother he had unjustly slain; and this man reveng'd himself upon him, by putting him to death.

Death of  
Mehemed  
Beyan Sel-  
duz.

Ali Dervich and Mehemed Dervich, being equally guilty, were also put to death; and Timur gave the government of the Toman of Selduz, to the brave Akramat Beg.

## THE HISTORY OF TIMUR-BEG

*Timur marches a third time to Carezem, and returns on the revolt of Sar Bouga and Adelchah.*

An. Dom.  
1375.

**I**N the beginning of the spring of the year of the Hegira 777, which answers to that of the crocodile, Timur's good fortune, and his wise conduct in foreseeing the success of affairs, caus'd him to resolve on a journey to Carezem, his valor making him to prefer the fatigues of war before quiet and repose. He left the Emir Acbouga governor of Samarcand, and sent into the country of Gete the Emirs Sar Bouga, Adelchah Gelzir, Catai Behader, Eitchi Bouga, and other commanders of thousands, with thirty thousand horse; and enjoin'd them to use all their efforts and care in search of Camareddin, with

with orders to put him to death wherever they should find him. Chap. 10

On the other hand, he march'd with the imperial standard and great army towards Carazem: being at a place call'd Sepaye, situate on the bank of the Gihon, he saw Turcan briat, who came from the other side of this river at the head of his troops, and seem'd willing to join our camp; but having some apprehension and foresight of his death, he immediately return'd to his home near Corouan. Timur order'd a captain named Poulad to pursue him with some troops, day and night; who being assist'd by Androud, overtook him at a place on the bank of the Sihon. Turcan and his brother Turmich wou'd not give ground, but resist'd 'em. Our men receiv'd 'em with bravery, and both sides fought like lions; but at length the enemys gave way, were defeated, and constrain'd to fly. The victorious army pursu'd 'em; Poulad alone overtook Turcan, who being weary wou'd not get off, and struck down that of his horse with the butt end of an arrow, and as he lay another blow Poulad was able to get up, but it went thro his cap without wounding him. Poulad rush'd on him with violence, so that they struggled a long time, till at length Poulad having slung Turcan on the ground, cut off his head, crying out, *Long live Timur*; and he return'd with great joy. Aman Serbedal, who had been sent after Turmich the brother of Turcan, also seiz'd on him and slew him: So the heads of these two brothers were laid at the foot of the throne.

\* The same town as Oren.

## The History of Timur-Bec.

Book II.

Among the Emirs whom Timur had sent to Gete, Sar Bouga and Adelchah, finding the country not in a condition to resist them, form'd a design to revolt, and conspir'd with Can-Bekader, Eltchi Bouga, and Hamdi, whom Timur had left governor of Andecan. They got together their hords of Gekair and Capchac, and march'd towards Samarcand, which they besieg'd; but the inhabitants defended themselves so valiantly with their arrows and darts, that they were oblig'd to raise the siege. Acbouga governor of the place wrote to Timur, who had already march'd by the town of Cat, concerning the siege: as he was arriv'd at Khas when he receiv'd the news, he immediately return'd, and having given the command of the vanguard to his son the Mirza Gehanghir, whom he order'd to march'd with all expedition, he follow'd him with the rest of the army.

As soon as he was come to Bocan, he rang'd all the troops in order of batrel, and went to encamp at Rebat Malek. Mirza Gehanghir overtook the enemy in a place call'd Kermina: each party put their troops in order, kettle-drums were heard on all sides, and the fight began. After a brave engagement the prince was victorious; the enemy run away in disorder: the confederates retir'd into the deserts of Capchac, and fled for refuge to Ouzon Can, and the officers who escap'd out of the batrel list'd themselves in his service.

Timur after this victory return'd to Samarcand, and divided the land of Gekair, with his lands.

\* A town of Zagatai on the frontiers of Turkestan, long 102. lat. 43.

\* Emperor of Capchac, descended from Youlchir Can, son of Genghiz Can.

and

## The history of Timur-Bec.

171

and demesns, among the princes who remain'd faithful to him; and made the prince Omar Cheik his second lieutenant of Andecan.

Sar Bouza and Adelchah remain'd in the service of Ouzous Can; but the spirit of rebellion against em. They laid hold on an opportunity, while Ouzous Can was gone to a pleasure house, to fly from his court: and thro their natural ingratitude, slew Ourchibi lieutenant of this Can, and then came to the country of Gete to Camareddin, whom they persuaded to join em in making war against Timur.

### C H A P. XVII.

#### *Timur's fourth expedition to the kingdom of the Getes.*

**W**HEN Sar Bouza and Adelchah had met, they did not cease to stir up the spirit of rebellion, having persuaded him to join em. He brought an army into the field, and march'd to the country of Andecan, where the Hezare of Condac abandon'd prince Omar Cheik, and came over to the enemy. Omar Cheik fortify'd himself in the mountains, and sent a man nam'd Dachmend to the emperor, to inform him that the enemy with a great army had entirely ruin'd Andecan; and afterwards he gave him an account of all that had happen'd. This news so incens'd Timur, that he immediately march'd towards Gete; of which Camareddin having advice, retir'd from the place he was in, and commanded his household and hord to leave Atbach, while he remain'd in ambuscade with four thousand horse.

Timur

## The History of Timur-Bec

Book II

Timur coming to that place, ignorant of the snare Camareddin had laid, sent his Emirs with all the army in pursuit of the enemys. Five thousand of the most valiant men were conducted by the Emirs Muaid, Catai Behader, and Chelik Ali Behader, who consulted how they should proceed in the destruction of the enemys, and concluded only to perform actions of bravery. Upon which they march'd, and to their remain'd no more than two hundred men with the emperor.

Camareddin being inform'd of this, laid hold on the opportunity, and briskly sallied out of the ambuscade with his four thousand men sword in hand, and fell upon Timur; but Timur remembering the passage of the Alcoran, *How often have few troops vanquish'd great armies thro' the assistance of God?* was neither troubled nor afraid; but on the contrary encourag'd his soldiers by this short speech: "Victory is the gift of God, and a multitude of soldiers don't always gain the advantage: my friends, we must fight like brave men; the least cowardice on our side will make us lose the day, for in the present conjuncture we are oblig'd to risque every thing."

He had no sooner ended his speech, than he spur'd his horse against the enemys; he enter'd into the field of battle, and on every side laid about him with his sword and battle-ax, turning himself wherever occasion presented; every attack he overthrew those who oppos'd him, and spilt abundance of blood: he penetrated even into the heart of the army. Thus this valiant emperor, with his lance, war-club, sabre and net, defeated many of the enemys, and led captive their generals.

In short, this prince, being oblig'd to expose his person, behav'd himself with so much bravery, that nothing but the divine assistance could excite such valor in any man. His soldiers bravely assist'd him, and in that battle did all that could be expected from the consummate valor of the most dauntless heroes: in fine, notwithstanding their small number, they defeated four thousand valiant men, who were fill'd with a desire of revenge; which could not have been accomplish'd by human strength alone. But by God himself, who was pleas'd to give the victory to this great prince.

Timur imagin'd one night in a dream he saw the face of Chok Burhaneddin Clerch, in one of those visions which are esteem'd prophetic, and are of forty six kinds. He dream'd, that being in the presence of this holy man, with great respect he humbly beg'd of him to pray to God for his dear son the Mirza Gehanghir, whom he had left sick. And the Cleric answer'd him, *Be with God; and I will pray for him.* Concerning his son, when he awoke, he was not so much surpris'd as he had been, but he was so much affected that he order'd his secretary of state, nam'd Poul Coslar, to depart with all haste from Sengghul to bring him word how he was. When this man was departed, Timur had another strange dream relating to his son, which very much increas'd his melancholy: he there-fore shew'd to the Emirs and officers, *I believe I shall be entirely parted from my son, hide not from me the condition he is in.* They all fell on their knees, and swore they knew nothing concerning him.

Prophetic visions of 46 sorts, according to the Mahometans.

In the mean time he decamp'd, and met Camareddin at Senghezigadge, gave him battle, and the latter was again defeated and constrain'd

## The History of Timur-Bek.

174  
Book II.

strain'd to fly. The Emir Outchcara pursu'd him closely, and after a long pursuit oblig'd him to return immediately with eight men only. Being surrounded by many of our soldiers, his horse was kill'd by their arrows, and himself wounded in divers places, insomuch that he cou'd scarcely get away on foot. Poulad also in the fight had an arrow shot into his hand; and on their return a place was by chance set on fire, this lord fatigu'd himself so much in endeavouring to extinguish it, that the sickness occasion'd by his wound increasing, procur'd his death.

### CHAPTER XVIII.

*The death of Mirza Gebanghir, Timur's eldest son, and grandson of*

**T**IMUR, being return'd from Aracan, and having cross'd the Sihon, that is, the Jaxartes, arriv'd at his imperial city of Samarcand, where all the great lords of the empire, the Cheriffs and others, were cloth'd in black and blue garments; they wept bitterly, cover'd their heads with dust in token of sorrow, beat their breasts, and rent themselves according to custom, and then went to meet the emperor in great haste.

All the inhabitants with their heads uncovered, and with sackcloth and black felt about their necks, and their eyes bedew'd with tears, came out of the city, filling the air with cries and lamentations. "What a pity is it, say they, that the pious and just conqueror Gebanghir, appear'd only as a rose, which is blown away by the wind! What pity is it that death hath

†

" thus

“ thus cast into the grave this prince, who ~~Chang~~  
“ could so easily bring his designs to perfec-  
“ tion !”

As soon as ~~the news arrived~~ the general consolation, he no longer doubted of the death of his son, which his imagination had already represented to him.

Every thing then became melancholy and disagreeable to him, and his cheeks were almost always bath'd in tears: he cloth'd himself with mourning, and his life became uneasy to him. The whole kingdom, which us'd to be overjoy'd at the arrival of the emperor, was turn'd into a scene of sorrow and weeping.

All the army, cloth'd in black and blue, sat down in token of their grief; the greatest lords cover'd their heads with dust, their eyes flow'd, if one may so say, with tears of blood, and their hearts were pierc'd with the deepest

~~grief~~ The emperor was affected in an extraordinary manner at the loss of his son; yet ~~with~~ ~~being~~ ~~man~~ of eternal duration, and that every thing which belong'd to God must return to him again, he found some consolation in his grief, and at the same time perform'd several acts of piety for the repose of his son's soul, as endowments and publick works: he prepar'd, as usual, sumptuous repasts and banquets, in which the great were treated; and he distributed other alms ~~among~~ them.

The body of the deceas'd prince was carry'd to Kech, where he was bury'd, and a magnificent mausoleum erected for him. He lived twenty years, and left two sons, one of whom was call'd the Mirza Mehemed Sultan, born



Book II. of the princess Canzade; and the other, the  
 An. Dom. 1375. which happen'd in the year of the Hegira 777,  
 which answers to the year of the Crocodile.

Seifeddin Berlas had no sooner heard of this  
 misfortune, than he became averse to all world-  
 ly things, and besought the emperor to permit  
 him to pass the remainder of his life at Hud-  
 geaz\*, in the sacred place of Mecca.

### Timur's fifth expedition against the Geres.

**T**HE emperor was so affected at the death  
 of his son, that he laid aside all the affairs  
 of public affairs; but the principal Emirs and  
 princes of the blood assembled before the throne,  
 and kiss'd the ground. They represented to  
 him, that as the wisdom of God had made  
 the good order of the world dependent on the  
 absolute power he had given to sovereigns,  
 to maintain their people in peace, so if his  
 great heart was resolv'd to please the Divine-  
 being, he cou'd think on no better means of do-  
 ing it, than by rendering justice to his subjects.  
 since the wisest of men, Mahomet, hath said,  
 "That he prefer'd the fruits of one hour em-  
 ploy'd in rendering justice, to sixty or seventy  
 years spent in divine worship."

\* A province of Arabia.

Timur gave serious attention to what these princes said, being fully persuaded that it flow'd from a sincere affection to him; he therefore began to ~~take notice~~ to the affairs of the empire, and immediately order'd the army to get ready to march.

At the same time advice was brought that Adelchah Gelair was in the mountains of Caradgic, accompany'd with few persons: which caus'd Timur to send Berat Coja. Kulkeltach, and Etchi Bouga, with fifteen horse only, to endeavor to find him. They departed from Samarcand in the evening, and continued their march every night till they arriv'd at the town of Akraz, where they chose the fittest men to go into the mountain in search of this rebel, whom they found in a place nam'd Acfouma, where they seiz'd on him, and put him to death according to law.

Death of  
Adelchah  
Gelair.

Acfouma is a tower built on the top of the mount Caradgic, a place design'd for a guard to the country, because one may observe from thence what is doing in the plains of Capchat. Sar Boula, who had been disobedient and revolted, repented of his faults, and return'd to court after two years absence. The emperor pardon'd him, and gave him the government of his own people, that is, the hord of Gelair.

Soon after Mirza Omar Cheik, Emir Arbata, Catai Behader, and the other Emirs receiv'd orders to march against Camareddin, and to use all their efforts to subdue him. These Emirs departed from court, and made

<sup>s</sup> Formerly call'd *Farah*, upon the Sihon, long 98 <sup>lat.</sup>  
44. a frontier town between Zagar and Capchat.

Book II.

such haste that they met him at the borders of the country of Couraton\*, where they gave him battel, and struck such terror into his troops, that they fled in disorder, after the example of their general; and soon after the victorious army return'd laden with spoils and slaves, as usual.

## CHAP. XX.

*Timur's fifth expedition to the country of the Getes against Camareddin. Tocatmich Aglen, descended from Touschi, son of Genghis Can, arrives at court, and puts himself under the protection of Timur.*

THE troops were no sooner upon their return, than Timur resolv'd to march in person into that country†, the same year, and for this purpose Mehemed Bei, son of the Emir Moussa, a confident of the emperor, gave the command of the vanguard of the army to the Emir Abbas and Akitmur Behader, and sent 'em away according to the prince's orders.

These captains march'd day and night, and were so fortunate as to come up with Camareddin at Bougam Afighenl, where they put him to flight after a furious battel, and then ravag'd his country, and reduc'd his subjects to

\* In the country of the Getes.

† Capchac, call'd by the Europeans the Grand Tartary, which contains all the country situate between Russia or Great Tartary and Turkestan. This empire was given to Touschi Can, by his father Genghis Can the conqueror of it, as his share.

obedience, and Timur himself afterwards pur-  
sued him as far as Conchar.

At this place the emperor had advice that  
Tocatmich Aglen, son of Toghris Can, had  
withdrawn himself from under his protection,  
and was coming over to him. Timur gave or-  
ders to Toghris Timur Uzbek, to take care of  
the ceremonies of his entry, to go and meet  
him, and load him with all the honors and  
caresses imaginable: which was punctually ex-  
ecuted.

Timur then march'd towards Ollagda, in  
order to return home; from thence he came  
to Tocatmich, and continued his march towards  
Tocatmich, where at length he fortunately ar-  
rived.

Toghris Timur brought thither Tocatmich  
Aglen, who was presented to Timur by the  
principal lords of his court. He shew'd abun-  
dantly of joy at his return, and did not forget  
any of the ceremonies and honors which a  
king of his rank and dignity could expect; for  
he sent him all sorts of rich presents, and with  
all sorts of rich presents, and with all sorts of  
rich presents, and with all sorts of rich presents,  
as his officers, so many presents, that it would  
be difficult to number 'em. They consisted of  
gold, precious stones, arms, habites, magnificent  
bells, rich stuffs, and a great deal of furniture,  
horses, camels, tents and pavilions, kettle-drums,  
saddles, mares and slaves; and then he did  
him the honor of calling him his son.

\* Uzbeg, king of Tatars.

\* A town on the frontier between Turkestan and  
Zagrai, long ago call'd in the Arabian of Nuh,  
Adarcand and Uzbeg.

## CHAP. XXI.

Timur gives Tocamich Aglen the principality of Otrar and Sabran, and assists him in making himself master of the empire of Capchat, which he claims as his right; the Ourous Can, descended from Genghis Can, was in possession of it.

THE generous emperor gave the government of Sabran, Otrar, and Saganac, to prince Feramuz, who was no sooner establish'd there than Cotluc Bouga, son of Genghis Can, arrived at Feramuz, bringing with him the best of his army, which these princes had for fighting was the reason that the armies were not long before they came to blows, and fought as if they were resolv'd to conquer or die.

Death of  
Cotluc  
Bouga.  
Defeat of  
Tocamich  
Aglen.

Cotluc Bouga was kill'd by an arrow in the fight, nevertheless Tocamich Aglen was defeated; the enemy's plunder'd his country, and constrain'd him to quit his government, and retire towards Timur, who receiv'd him with greater honor than at first, and after having order'd a new equipage to be made for him, and given him fresh troops, sent him away.

When Touda Caya, eldest son of Ourous Can, heard that this prince was on his return

\* Ourous Can gave the name to all Russia, of which he was sovereign.

to Sabran, he join'd many other princes of the race of Tonchi Can, son of Genghiz Can, as also Ali-Bai, and several Emirs, who resolv'd to revenge the death of Genghiz Bouga on Tocatnich Aglen; the army they brought into the field was very numerous, and compar'd to pillars and grasshoppers. In short, when Tocatnich Aglen had rang'd his army in order of battle in view of the enemy, the fight began, and the troops of this prince were put to flight: he himself fled to the banks of the river Sihon, where he had thrown himself into the water to save himself, but was surpris'd by Cazandgi Berlas, who shot him with an arrow wherewith he wounded his hand. When he had cross'd the river, he alone enter'd into a wood naked and wounded, and cast himself on the ground to get some rest: but he was soon reliev'd by Ardecou Berlas, an old expert captain, whom Timur had sent to give him his advice in the enterprise he was carrying on, and to instruct him in the way to his own country.

the wound, by which he was much affected; he sought for the person who was lamenting; and at length found Tocatnich Aglen, who was recover'd from a swoon he had a little before fallen into. After he had got off his horse, he comforted him as well as he was able, told him how much he was concern'd for his misfortune, and gave him somewhat to eat and drink, and a garment, such a one as scouts commonly carry, to serve on occasion in a jour-

\* Some authors call him Djeundgi.

Book II. — He then took all possible care of him, and conducted him to Timur, who was encamp'd without Bocara when they arriv'd.

When Timur knew the condition Tocatmich was reduc'd to, he receiv'd him with all the clemency which, so great an emperor was capable of showing, and order'd another camp to be made for him, as magnificent as either of the former.

In the mean while an Emir of the country of Tenehi, nam'd Aidecou, of the blood of Mangour, came from the court of Oureng Can to that of Timur, and brought advice that this prince had drawn his troops into the field, and was marching against the invincible emperor, and fought every where for Tocatmich. About this time also Bano Mangout and Touloudgian came to court in quality of ambassadors from Oureng Can, and made an harangue to the emperor, the substance whereof was as follows:

"Tocatmich has kill'd my son, and is fled for refuge to you: you ought to deliver up this prince, who is my enemy; if you refuse to do it, I declare war against you, and there remains nothing for us to do but to meet in the field of battel."

Timur made this answer: "Tocatmich has put himself under my protection, and I will defend him. Return to Oureng Can, and tell him, that I not only accept his challenge, but my preparations are already begun, and my valiant soldiers have no other employ than the trade of war; they are lions, who instead of living in forests, have their residence in camps and armys."

CHAP. XXII

*Preparations for war. Timur brings an army into the field against Ourous Can, emperor of Capchac and Grand Russia.*

AS soon as the emperor Timur had dismiss'd the ambassadors of Ourous Can, he order'd the Emir Ali to make preparations for war, and to bring an army into the field, and the Emir Yulduz to take care of the government of the royal city of Samarcand, during his absence.

War between the empires of Touchi and Zagatai.

The troops of the empire of Zagatai were soon got together, and Timur at their head, march'd to attack Ourous Can, towards the end of the same year of the Crocodile. They cross'd the Sihon, and encamp'd in the vast plain of Ourous.

Ourous Can having assembled all the troops of the empire of Touchi, march'd to Samarcand, twenty-four leagues distant from Ourous. These vast armys being in sight, were ready to make great havock, when a prodigious cloud overshadow'd 'em, and shower'd down a prodigious quantity of rain and snow, which was follow'd with so excessive a cold, that the limbs of the men and beasts lost all motion. The weather continu'd thus almost three months, during which time the armys were in view, and neither capable of action.

Timur could not quell the impetuosity of his courage; he was desirous to be in action, and commanded Cural Behader and Mehemed Sultan Chah, who were retir'd from the court



of the prince of Herat, and were attach'd to him, to march with all haste to attack the enemy during the night. Following this order, they took five hundred men with 'em to make inroads. They met Timur Melik Aglen, son of Ourous Can, with about three thousand horse. This rencounter happen'd late at night, but morning approaching, the battel began. Fear and valor had each of 'em a great share in this action, and the victory was a long time in suspence; but at length the troops of Timur gain'd it, as they were accusom'd; and the enemy was put to the rout. Eltchi Bouga was wounded in the hand, and the prince Timur Melik Aglen in the foot by an arrow; and the Yarek Timur and Catai Behader were both slain, the victorious troops return'd to the camp in triumph.

Defeat of  
the troops  
of Ourous  
Can.

Mehemed Sultan Chan had orders from the emperor to depart, that he might gain intelligence of the enemys, which he did; and brought to Timur a man whom he had seiz'd: the Emir Moubacher, who had receiv'd the like order, also brought another he had taken. Timur learnt from both of 'em, that the enemy had sent two of their bravest men, one nam'd Olough<sup>3</sup> Satkin, and the other Kutchuk Satkin, with a hundred horse, to learn news of the state of our army. They were by chance met by Akitmur Behader and Alabdad, who came from Otrar, where they had distributed the victuals for the army. Akitmur, excited by the good fortune which never abandon'd the great Timur, march'd vigorously against 'em.

<sup>3</sup> Olough signifys eldest, and Kutchuk youngest.

and in the mean while to deceive them, made use of a warlike stratagem: he pretended to fly; and this motion of ours gave fresh courage to the enemy, who were already advanced, but Akimur soon after returning to the charge with his men, beat back their soldiers, who thought themselves conquerors, and entirely broke their ranks. Those who were not slain, fled, and hid themselves in pits and caverns of water. Kerpetchi Wtchi, Akimur's nephew, kill'd the young Satkin; and Indouchan seiz'd the chief whom he brought to Timur, who, for his services distinguished Indouchan from the other captives by particular favors. They had then advice that Ourous Can, despairing of his projects, was return'd home, and had left Karakesel in his place; which oblig'd Timur to march in person against the enemy; but as he found that Karakesel was also retir'd with his troops, he finish'd the campaign, and return'd with his army to his camp near the city of Kech, where he

C H A P. XXIII.

*Timur's irruption into the country of Ourous Can: Tocatmich Aglen plac'd on the throne of the empire of Capchac, otherwise call'd the empire of Touchi Can.*

As the season wou'd permit the army to be brought into the field, the invincible Timur took horse to make war on Ourous Can. He gave the conduct of his vanguard to Tocatmich, who likewise serv'd as a guide, and march'd day and night with so much expedition

Book II.

That is the needs for deers.

Death of Oroun Can, and his son Tousta Caya, in 1376.

Elogium on Timur's favorite horse.

An. Dom. 1376.

Timur Melik ascends the throne of Touchi, and defeats Tocatnich.

dition, that in fifteen days and nights they arriv'd at Geiran Camich \* a town of Capchac, the inhabitants of which he found asleep, having no notice of the march of our army. The town was pillag'd, and the soldiers brought away a great number of horses, camels, sheep and slaves; and, what was a further mark of Timur's good fortune, before this action Oroun Can died, as soon after did Tousta Caya his eldest son.

Timur immediately furnish'd Tocatnich Aglen with every thing requisite for government; and establish'd him sovereign in Capchac and the rest of the empire of Touchi: and after having prepar'd him an equipage worthy of an emperor, he left him in that kingdom. He also made him a present of the famous spotted horse named Conc Aglen, a horse of the finest metal and spirit, and which he greatly esteem'd for his extraordinary swiftness. And on making this present, he thus address'd him:

" This horse will serve you on several occasions: for you may easily overtake the enemy when you pursue him; and no one will be able to overtake you if you are oblig'd to fly."

After this expedition, the emperor resolv'd to return to Samarcand; whereupon he left Capchac, and fortunately arriv'd at the heart of his empire, in the beginning of the year of the Serpent, and of the Hegira 778.

But the affairs of Capchac did not long continue so quiet as he had left em; for soon after his return, he receiv'd advice that Timur Melik Aglen, son of Oroun Can, having fix'd himself on the throne of Touchi, had brought a powerful army into the field to make war on Tocatnich: in short, their armies came in view, and after several skirmishes, Tocatnich was again

again intirely vanquish'd. Nevertheless, he sav'd himself from all dangers, by means of the horse the emperor had presented him; yet all his troops were destroy'd, and he alone came to the court.

Timur, thro' his wonted goodness, again recruited his forces, and in the end of the year 778 sent him back to Saganac, guarded by several great Emirs, among whom were Toumen Timur-Uzbek, and his son Balti-Coja, Ozunkhanur, Cayaseddin Tercan, and Besik Gontchis, whom he order'd to re-establish him on the throne of the Great Khan.

Timur, tho' he was old, and plac'd Tocatnich again upon the throne in the city of Saganac, with all the ceremonys observ'd at the coronation of Cans; and according to custom they sprinkled upon him gold and precious stones.

An. Dom.  
1376.

CHAP. XXIV.

The Death of Prince Chagatai, son of the emperor Timur.

IN the middle of the same year of the Serpent, when the government of Timur seem'd to arriv'd at the summit of its felicity, many of his officers bearing the titles of kings and emirs, there were compos'd several poems and other pieces on his prosperity. Some observ'd that this conqueror had for his courtiers none but fools; while others related to what a high degree he had gratify'd his desires, and how favorable fortune had been to him.

They

## Book II.

They recited several passages of the Alcoran\*, which perfectly agreed with his good fortune; they thence foretold the birth of the son whom God wou'd give him, because of his virtues, and the justice with which he govern'd his subjects.

This charming infant was born in the city of Samarcand, the seat of his empire, on thursday the fourteenth of the month Rabilaker, in the year of the Hegira 779: and what most pleas'd the emperor was, that he saw in this beautiful and happy prince the continuation of his family, which shou'd remain in the possession of the empire to the end of time.

An. Dom.

1377.

In short, he discover'd an extraordinary joy at the moment Mehrebane† his mother brought him into the world; and when he was presented to him, he knew by examining the features of his countenance, that the sun of his good fortune had already cast his rays upon this beloved infant.

He was brought up with great niceness and care by the ladies of the seraglio; his body by degrees became of a proper size: they adorn'd his clothes with the finest oriental stones, and he had always held over his head a canopy of rich embroider'd velvet.

There is a prayer in the Mesnevi‡, which was made use of to beseech God that he wou'd be pleas'd to make the throne of Timur happy under the government of this young prince, that

\* The Mahometans read the Alcoran's book of prayers and pretend to find predictions therein.

† The surname of Serai Mulc, which signifies a well-don.

‡ A celebrated book of Mahometan theology in verse, compos'd by Mouleï Rourn, chief of the sect of Derwishes, who always carry this book in their hands.

he wou'd render tributary to him the seven cli- Chapter  
mates of the universe, and that at length he  
might become emperor of the whole world.

The most learned astrologers, observing the  
situation of the heavens at the time of his birth,  
declared that this prince shou'd accomplish all  
his desires, and arrive without opposition to the  
highest pitch of grandeur and sovereignty. They  
conspired in his favor all that astrology was able  
to teach men upon the horoscope and birth of a  
great prince: they reason'd on every thing  
which concern'd the planets and other stars, on  
their motions, and the influence as far as they  
could extend, on the agreement  
between their predictions and those of the Alco-  
lans, the detail of which wou'd be too long  
and troublesome to the reader. This chapter  
having been compos'd only as an account of the  
august birth of the prince Charoc, we shall make  
no mention of his actions till the third book.

*Timur sends Tocatmich Can to attack Timur  
Melik Can, emperor of Capobac.*

THE first time that Tocatmich Aglon, after  
having abandon'd Ourous Can, came to  
himself under the protection of Timur, he  
was accompany'd by Orkismur, to whom this  
emperor as a reward for his services shew'd ma-  
ny favors, because in his absence Ourous Can  
had pillag'd all his goods, and given his revenues  
to another. And when Tocatmich was defeated  
by Timur Melik, Orkismur was made prisoner  
of war, and carry'd to Timur Melik, who gave  
him

Book II. him his life, and ever his liberty. But some time after, this captain being in misery, cast himself at the feet of Timur Melik, and besought him to restore to him his lordship and troops, that he might be in a condition to serve him. Timur Melik refus'd it, and told him, he did not care whether he remain'd in his service or no. Then Orkhan fled, tho it was winter, and came to seek protection from the great Timur: he had the honor to sit on the carpet of his throne at Samarcand, and receive from him many peculiar favors; he gave him an account of Timur Melik's manner of living, that he spent both night and day in debauches; that he slept till ten a'clock in the morning, and then rose, and lay down to wake him whatever accident happened; that his subjects had no longer any hopes of obtaining favor or protection from him; and that all the people of the empire of Persia were very desirous of Tocatmich for their sovereign. The emperor therefore sent messengers to Tocatmich at Saganac, to advise him to march with all expedition to attack Timur Melik, who had pass'd the winter at Caratal. Tocatmich, in obedience to this order, brought an army into the field, and march'd against the enemy.

As soon as he came near Caratal, the army were rang'd in order of battle; they fought, and thro the usual good fortune of our emperor, the Can Timur Melik was defeated, and Tocatmich Agien at the same time took possession of the throne of his ancestors in the empire of Canchac, and immediately sent Ourous Coja to carry the news of the victory to the great Timur.

This prince was so pleas'd at this news, that he spent many days in rejoysings: and to render the

the joy universal, he releas'd those who were in chains. He honor'd Onrons Coja with a vest and a gilt belt, and having made him a present of several jewels, sent him back to Tocamich, furnishing him with horses and money for his journey.

Tocamich Can return'd to Saganac, where he staid during winter, and as soon as the spring appear'd, rais'd a great army, and march'd towards the kingdom of Serai, and the country of Memac, which he again conquer'd.

His power encreas'd so considerably, that thro' the good offices of Timur he impos'd in Persia, on the kingdom of Toccin Can was oblig'd to his obedience; and thus he follow'd this politick maxim, That he who is ambitious of greatness, shou'd associate himself with fortunate men, because prosperity is not to be acquir'd but from the star of them who enjoy it.

*Embassy from the emperor Timur to Joseph king of Carazem.*

**W**HILST Timur pass'd the winter at Otrar, to observe Onrons Can, Joseph king of Carazem, taking advantage of the absence of this prince, sent an army to Bocara, which ravag'd the country, and carry'd away all they cou'd find, without considering what might be the consequences of this irruption. This action oblig'd Timur to send Dgelaren to



Book II. his ambassador, to account him, after having contracted an alliance with him, he thought it very strange that he should commit hostilities in the country of Bocara without any cause given.

The ambassador acquitted himself of his commission; but Ysough Sofi gave orders that he should be seized, and put into prison; of which Timur being inform'd, order'd one of his secretaries to write to him about it.

This officer instead of ink used brass beads, to make the characters of the letter which was of silk, look more noble: he began with praising God, and with some considerations on the ordinary conduct of his providence with regard to princes; then he let him know the maxim of princes, which was, to esteem the person of ambassadors sacred; which was the reason they were always exempt from death, and even from prison, if the sovereign, to whom they were sent, had any regard to the law of nations, and the ambassador had the prudence not to commit any considerable faults, and should behave himself inoffensively: moreover, that whoever shall have a contrary opinion, fails in judgment; since it is remark'd in the Alcoran, that ambassadors are sacred, and only oblig'd to execute their masters orders; in short, that he should rather have sent back the ambassador without abusing him; which if he did not, he would soon be brought to repentance, and feel the effects of the most cruel vengeance ever mention'd in history.

When he had seal'd the letter, it was sent to Ysough Sofi, who without consulting whether 'twas reasonable, put the messenger in irons; and was again so imprudent as to endeavor to kindle the war; for he sent Toni Bogai, firnam'd the robber, with a company of men of his

his own stamp, to carry away the camels of the Turcomans, which he knew were then about Bocara.

During this year of the horse, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin Berlas return'd from his journey to Mecca, and had the honor to salute the emperor, to whom he represented the state of the kingdoms of Iran\*, the governors of which had acted like absolute sovereigns.

In the same year also Timur was marry'd, according to the law of the prophet, to the princess Touman Aga, daughter of the Emir Moussa; and the sincere love he had for her was the reason that at her desire he adorn'd the city of Samarcand with many fine monuments; among the rest he built a pleasure-house without Samarcand towards the west; he also destroy'd the twelve gardens which were built in imitation of the twelve signs of the zodiac, in order to make them one. He order'd a magnificent pavilion, embellish'd with all possible ornaments, to be erected; inasmuch that thinking this the most pleasant place in the world, he knew of no name which would surmount it better than that of Bagh Behicht, the garden of paradise. Timur then went to pass the winter at Zendgir Serai.

---

\* All the country between the rivers Oxus and Tigris; i. e. Persia and the neighbouring countries.

## C H A P. XXVII.

*Timur's fourth war in Carezem: death of Joseph Sofi: conquest of that kingdom.*

**J**OSEPH, or Youseph Sofi, Can of Carezem, excited by his pride, wou'd keep no correspondence with Timur, but imprudently committed several rash actions. This boldness gave cause to Timur to revenge himself, and get ready an army to make war on Carezem; which happen'd in the month of Chawal in the year of the Hegira 786, which answers to the beginning of the year of the Sheep, when the sun enters into Pisces. Thus having passed the winter in the quarters of Zendgir Serai, he began his march, and arriv'd at the frontiers of Carizme or Carezem.

An. Dom.  
1376.

His army invested the town of Estiskiz. The general at the same time caus'd the kettle-drums to be beat, and the soldiers made the usual cry which is call'd Souroun: they built a fortress over-against the town for greater security; made entrenchments on all sides, and fortify'd 'em, and every morning fail'd not of making the great cry.

Partys went out, according to the orders given 'em, to pillage the territory of Carezem on every side, from whence they brought away all sorts of booty: they ravish'd the handsomest virgins in the country, made many slaves, and carry'd away all the horses, camels and sheep they cou'd meet with.

In the mean time Joseph Sofi thought proper to write the following letter to the emperor:

“How

“How long shall the world suffer persecution Chapter  
 “and ruin for the sake of two men only? and  
 “how many thousands of Mussulmans shall pe-  
 “rish thro’ their quarrell? It would be better  
 “that we meet alone in a particular field, and  
 “prove our valor; for then trusting in the di-  
 “vine assistance, we shall know in whose favor  
 “heaven and heaven will declare.”

Timur was pleas'd in that Joseph Sofi had  
 sent such a letter to him; and said it was  
 what he most earnestly desir'd. He there-  
 fore order'd him to be immediately brought  
 him; he put on his light cuirass which  
 he had receiv'd, girded on his sword, hung his  
 bow on his arm, and in this posture, with  
 the imperial helmet on his head, march'd towards  
 the town. The princes and Emirs of the court  
 cast themselves at his feet, and told him it was  
 not reasonable so great a monarch shou'd fight a  
 duet; but he had no regard to their speeches,  
 and continu'd his way. Hadgi Seifeddin Ber-  
 ber, a noble officer to him, which transported  
 him to the battle, took hold of the horse's  
 bridle, to drive in against the standards of  
 the emperor: he cast himself at his knees, and  
 told him he ought not to be guilty of exposing  
 his royal person, and fighting as a private man,  
 when he had so many officers. “If the empe-  
 “ror, said he, shou'd fight duels, what need is  
 “there of so many brave warriors?” Timur  
 in wrath, reprimanded Seifeddin, and drew  
 his sword to strike him: but the Emir quitted  
 the bridle, and retir'd. The prince trust-  
 ing entirely in God, went alone to the borders  
 of the camp of the city: he cried with a  
 loud voice, that Joseph Sofi might know he was  
 come, to answer the challenge, and had kept  
 his promise; and that he ought to meet him,

Book II. that he might see to whom God would give the victory. Fear seized Joseph Sofi, who repented; and was not as good as his word. Timur cried out again; and to excite Joseph, told him that death rather than life was his due, who broke his word; he said many other things to shame him, and oblige him to come into the field: but Joseph prefer'd life before his honor, and was so abash'd that he could make no answer. Timur waited a long time; but at length having no answer, return'd to his camp, where the bravest admir'd his intrepidity.

About this time there were brought from Fermed to Timur the first melons of the year: his natural goodness made him resolve to send some of 'em to Joseph Sofi, supposing it wou'd be thought uncivil if he did not let that prince partake of 'em, seeing he was so near him; wherefore he order'd some of 'em to be carry'd to him in a bason of gold. The Emissaries told him a bason of wood might serve; but the emperor wou'd not suffer it, and they were carry'd in a bason of gold to the borders of the ditch. They demanded from the wall what there was in the bason; the bearer answer'd that there were some new melons which the emperor had sent to Joseph Sofi, and then he return'd: some of the besieg'd took the bason, and carry'd it to the Can, who thro' his want of sense, order'd the melons to be cast in to the ditch, and gave the bason to the porter of the town.

After this action one of his generals nam'd Hadgi sall'y'd out at the head of a good number of troops, who were of the bravest warriors of Carezem; but the Mirza Omar, with his officers and soldiers, fell upon 'em with their swords drawn,

drawn, and swam over the water. This action Chap. 21.  
kindled the war on all sides: at length there was  
a general fight; all the field of battel was co-  
ver'd with dead bodies, and look'd like a moun-  
tain of slaughter'd men, as well on one side as  
the other, and the combat did not end till night:  
in it were perform'd actions of the utmost valor;  
but at length the army of Carezem tir'd with  
fighting, thought it advisable to fly and enter  
the town.

Eltchi Bouga, and Anoucherouan son of Ac-  
boug, having distinguish'd themselves by an ex-  
traordinary valor, were wounded; of whom  
the former was heal'd, and the latter died.

Timur gave orders for the siege to begin;  
the army was employ'd in placing the battering  
rams, and playing them against the walls; and  
the machines design'd to cast millstones and other  
stones, were made use of with such success, that  
the castle of Joseph Sofi was nearly ruin'd: and  
fear seizing him he was oblig'd to go for shelter  
to some other place.

The siege continued three months and fifteen  
days, during which time the marks of victory  
daily appear'd on Timur's side; and the disem-  
pers of the mind, which are astonishment, fear,  
inquietude, affliction, anger and envy, seiz'd on  
Joseph Sofi with so great violence, that at  
length falling sick, he lost all courage and died,  
bewailing his misfortune.

This event was esteem'd the most considera-  
ble of any that had happen'd to Timur, since the  
prediction was fulfill'd which he spake when he  
went alone to the walls of the town to invite  
this Can to the duel which he had propos'd, and  
afterwards refus'd to answer by not appearing;  
by which it was manifest that he deserv'd

Book II. death rather than life, as the emperor had pre-  
 ~~~~~ died?

Taking of
 the capital
 of Care-
 zem.

At the same time they briskly attack'd the town on every side, and at length enter'd it by the breaches they made, notwithstanding the brave resistance of the besieg'd, who defended themselves to the last.

A treasure of pearls and precious stones, which belong'd to the brave Erkedge, were taken away, tho not without opposition, by the soldiers whom Timur's good fortune assist'd: the other troops pillag'd all the riches of the town, and kill'd many of the inhabitants with their swords and arrows; and the publick edifices were ruin'd.

All the Clergymen, doctors, and learned men were sent to the city of Keoh, as also the tradesmen; together with a vast number of women and children.

An. Dom. This noted victory happen'd in the year of the
 1379. Sheep, and of the Hegira 781; the same where-
 of was dispers'd thro all parts of the universe: The conqueror Timur, accompany'd with victory and triumph, return'd to the seat of his empire, and some time after went to pass the winter at Zendgir Serai, where all sorts of diversions were prepar'd for him.

* The author in several passages intimates as if Timur had the spirit of prophecy.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Foundation of the walls of Kech, the country of Timur: the building of the palace of Asferai.

HISTORIANS report that the city of Kech was formerly the place where the most learned doctors of the Mahometan law assembled, and that three venerable Imams, celebrated by the sects of which they were the chief, and for the new opinions they had introduc'd, dwelt in this country: one of 'em was Abou Mehemed Abdai, native of Kech; another was Abdalla, native of Samarcand; and the third Abou Abdalla Mehemed, of Bocara.

At the same time men of learning came from all parts to this city, for the improvement of their knowledge. Abou Hussein Muslem of Nichibour came according to the example of other virtuous men, and advanced his studys under the famous Abdai. The learned Moulas came thither in great numbers; and as the study of the sciences was then brought to perfection, they firnam'd this city Coumbet Elilmi Veledeb, that is, the dome of science and virtue: it had also the name of Cheber Sebz, the green city, because of the verdure and freshness of its gardens, and a meadow famous for its rare and curious plants.

At the end of the year 781, which answers to that of the Monkey, the emperor charm'd with the beautys of this city, the purity of the air in its plains, the deliciousness of its gardens, and the goodness of the waters, made it his ordinary

The history of Timur-Bek

Book II. dinary residence in summer, and declar'd it the second seat of his empire; wherefore he built there new walls, and a new palace which he nam'd Acferai, because the walls of it were exceeding white and very high. The foundation of these buildings was laid in an hour fitted for the most fortunate horoscope; and the palace was built so exquisitely fine and beautiful, that no other cou'd compare with it. Timur then divided the city among his Emirs, and the troops of his household.

C H A P. XXIX.

The Emir Hadgi Seifeddin sent ambassador to Herat, to Malek Cayaseddin Pir Ali, king of Corassana.

TH E emperor being in his winter-quarters, sent a messenger to Malek Cayaseddin Pir Ali, prince of Herat, to let him know that at the beginning of the spring, the Emirs and other princes of the empire were to be present at the Couroultai, or diet, to which he had summon'd 'em; and that his presence there was also requir'd. The messenger at his arrival at Herat was us'd with all imaginable civility and respect by the prince Pir Ali, who told him, that if the Emir Seifeddin wou'd do him the honor to come thither, he being a servant of the emperor, and friend to the Emir, wou'd confide in his protection, and the friendship between them, and depart with him immediately to testify his obedience. He spoke to the messenger after this manner, because he stood in fear of Timur; but the emperor granted what he desir'd, and

in the year 781. sent Seifeddin Berlas to Herat, where he was receiv'd by Pir Ali with all imaginable honor. Pir Ali kept him a long time on pretence of putting in order the presents he shou'd carry, and to make preparations for the journey; but his design was only to furnish the city with victuals and other necessarys, and to finish the fortifications of Herat, which he had caps'd to be encompass'd the preceding year by a wall of two leagues circumference, and which consequently enclos'd the suburbs and gardens without the wall of the old city. Pir Ali persuaded himself, that thro the care and precaution he had taken he shou'd be secur'd against all events. The Emir knowing this prince's designs by his conduct, press'd him no more, but put himself in a condition to return to court; where as soon as he arriv'd, he represented to Timur what he was able to find out of the designs of Pir Ali by his manner of acting.

Chap. 29.
An. Dom.
1379.
Mog. The
Monkey.

At the same time Ali Bei, son of Argoun Chah Joon Garbani, return'd to his obedience, according to the orders he had receiv'd, and came to the foot of the throne. The emperor pardon'd all his past faults, gave him a handsom reception, and distinguish'd him from his equals by particular favors; he even consented to the marriage of the daughter of this Bei with Mirza Mehemmed Sultan: he was entertain'd with feasts, and had presents made him of vests and other things; and Timur had several conferences with him in relation to his design upon Herat.

It was concluded that Ali Bei shou'd be in readiness to go thither in the beginning of the spring; which he gave assurance of by his pro-

Book II. *Wiles and oaths: after which the boundless emperor, having again honor'd him with his kindnesses, permitted him to return to the place of his residence.*

C H A P. XXX.

Mirza Miran Chab, son of Timur, marches into Corassana, to make war on Isak Gayseddin Pir Ali, prince of Herat.

THAT it was Timur's ambition of universal monarchy, which caus'd him to undertake such glorious actions, is unquestionable; and as he cou'd not find his equal in valor and conduct, among all the princes his contemporaries, he rais'd his empire to as high a degree of power and glory, as it was possible for any to attain to.

He has been often heard to say, what highly favor'd of this ambition, that it was neither agreeable nor decent, that the habitable world shou'd be govern'd by two kings; according to the words of the poet, *As there is but one God, there ought to be but one king; all the earth being very small in comparison of the ambition of a great prince.*

About this time many rebels had seiz'd on several provinces of Iran^{*}; and every one setting up for monarch, had declar'd himself sovereign of the country he possess'd, and fortify'd it, that he might become wholly independent. These unaccountable enterprizes exceedingly displeas'd Timur, whose power visibly encreas'd; and

^{*} All the country between the Oxus and Tigris; that is, Persia and the neighbouring countrys.

after having brought into subjection the countries and kingdoms of *Touran*¹, which Genghiz Can had formerly divided betwixt his two sons, Touchi Can and Laghayan Can, he left 'em in the care of his lieutenants, and resolv'd to conquer the empire of Iran or Persia.

In the autumn of the year of the Hen, and of the Hegira 782, he constituted governor of *Corassana* his dear son the Mirza Miran Chah, who was then but fourteen years of age: he gave him, to be near his royal person in quality of officers, the Emir Gehanghir brother of the Emir Hadgi Berlas, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, the Emir Agha, the Emir Osman Abbas, Mehemed Sultan Chah, Comari brother of Temouke, Taban Behader, Orous Bouga brother of Sarbouga, Pir Hussein Berlas, Hamza son of the Emir Moussa, Mehemed Cazagan, Sarac Eteke, and Muzaffer son of Ouchcara, and other Emirs, with fifty companys of horse, whom he chose out of his imperial army, and

An. Dom.
1380.
Mirza Mi-
ran Chah
made go-
vernor of
Corassana.

he sent him with an extraordinary fleet, which dash'd the air, and arriv'd at the bank of the Gihon or Oxus; over which by order of the prince, a skilful engineer, who was in his train, built a regular bridge of boats.

The Tartar troops cross'd the bridge, and pass'd the autumn and greatest part of the winter at Balc and Cheburgan, where they rested themselves; but towards the end of the winter they march'd from Malek the town of Badghiz, where the soldiers had as a reward for their conquest a great many horses, furniture, and

¹ What is call'd the Grand Tartary from the Oxus, to Muscovy, Siberia and China.

Book II. Other riches, which were pillag'd thro' the valor of the young prince, insomuch that the army became rich with the spoil of the enemy, equip'd it self, and provided every thing necessary.

When the sun was come to the middle of Pisces, Ali Bei sent an express to Timur, that if the victorious standard shou'd march to Herat, he wou'd be so gracious as to permit him, his faithful servant, to attend him in quality of guide.

CHAP. XXXI.

Timur's army marches to make war in Persia, and the rest of the empire of Iran.

An. Dom.
1380.

TOWARDS the end of the year of the Hegira 782, which was the beginning of that of the Dog, the emperor Timur perceiving the agreeable season of the spring drawing near, sent orders to all parts to raise troops, that he might execute his design to pass into Iran; and he departed from his camp in a happy moment, before all the army was got together.

The troops came one after another to the imperial army, which consisted of the brave Tartars of Touran, as well as the skilful Turks, and the choicest soldiers of the east, Catlan, Termed, and Visagherd; and Timur cross'd the Gihon with all the army.

He order'd a bridge to be built over the river Dizac[†]; and all these motions, which were made with extraordinary dispatch, caus'd an in-

[†] It falls into the Gihon or Oxus, and passes by Corassan.

expressible terror in Corassana; for the desert and plains were entirely cover'd with tents, standards, foot and horse, arms and baggage.

When Timur was arriv'd at Andecoud, his devotion prompted him to visit the illustrious Santon Babasencou, who was of the number of those Dervises, who make profession of folly. This person, in an enthusiastick fit, flung a breast of mutton at the emperor's head; who imagining this a good augury, said, "I am assur'd that God will grant me the conquest of Corassana, because this kingdom has always been call'd the breast or middle of the habitable world." This prediction had its effect: the prince departed from Andecoud, accompany'd by good fortune and prosperity; and in the encamping and decamping of this vast army, the noise of kettle-drums, the sound of the great trumpet Kerrena, of the cymbals and Gourca, and the din of bells, struck such terror into the inhabitants of this great country, that every one was in a consternation.

Malik Mchemely brother of Malik Chaherdin, was then in the fortress of Serac: as soon as he had advice of the march of the army, he so much confided in the emperor's good nature, that he came before the throne, where he had the honor to kiss the imperial carper, and to re-

The rest is full of this kind of Santons who are natural fools or blockheads, or at least pretend to be so: the Mahometans have an extraordinary veneration for 'em, esteeming 'em saints. They say that God loved 'em before their creation, and on that account did not endue 'em with reason, so that they are incapable of offending.

* The author says, this noise was so terrible, that it seem'd as if the day of judgment was come.

Book II gave many carrels and presents. When, after a long march, the army had pass'd by Merveroud, commonly call'd Morgab⁷, they at length encamp'd at Tchekedalic, eleven leagues from Herat.

The emperor sent an express to Ali Ben to bid him to raise troops, and forthwith to join his army, according to the league made between 'em; but he refus'd to obey, and not only did not come, but, by a shameful treason and pride, which prompted him to attempt what he was not able to perform, he caus'd the envoy to be seiz'd. As Malek Cayasfeddin Pir Ali had that day taken the town of Nichabour from the Scerbekais, and had part of his army in that country, Timur march'd to Jam and Gousoupe, that the troops which were there might not be able to join Malek. When the emperor was at Gousoupe, Pehlivan Mehli, the governor of it, went to meet him, and had the honour to kiss the emperor, which was the reason the inhabitants of this province receiv'd no molestation from the army.

Timur, who always highly esteem'd those who profess'd the true religion in its purity, went to Taibad to visit the learned and virtuous doctor Zeineddin Aboubekre Taibadi, who at that time was famous for the strictness of his morality and great austerities. The prince had a long conversation with this Moulla, who was the most pious man of his time: he receiv'd good advice relating to his conduct, and at length took leave of him, and march'd with the army to Herat.

CHAP. XXXII.

Reduction of Fouchendge, a town of Chirassan.

WHEN the imperial standard arriv'd at Fouchendge, the troops had orders to besiege this town; the soldiers accordingly invested it; and tho it had abundance of water in its ditches, they were not discourag'd, but spent three days in preparing their arms, and building the machines necessary for the siege. The fourth day in the morning, Timur order'd all the army to march towards this place, and vigorously to assault it, and strive to reduce the enemy. The soldiers prepar'd themselves for strange actions, and as soon as the Gourghe^{*} was founded, they made the terrible cry *chah Sourouh*, and every one obey'd the emperor's orders: they crept on the sides upon planks and rafts, came to the foot of the wall, and discharg'd their arrows against the enemies, of whom they made a terrible slaughter.

Timur often march'd round the town without his cuirass, having only a vest on, to excite the soldiers to fight, who at the sight of the prince were recruited with fresh vigor.

Arrows and stones were shot from the top of the wall like rain, and Timur was struck with two arrows.

* Long. 94. lat. 34.

The same as Gourghe.

Book II. Mirza Ali, son of Emir Muaid Erlas, who resembled Timur, Aicoutmur Belcout, Omar son of Abbas, Mubacher and other brave men, march'd with upparallel'd valor and intrepidity towards the ramparts, which they overturn'd; they got upon the wall, and the arrows and stones, which rain'd upon our soldiers, did not lessen their courage.

The valiant Cheik Ali Behader, and his younger brother Cosru Buquet, with Marek son of Eltchi, and other warriors, cross'd the ditch, and assaulted the gate of the town; they came to blows with the enemy, and fought with so much vigor that they vanquish'd them, and found means to open the gate: on the other hand, the vast army, having made breaches on all sides, enter'd the place, and put to the sword all those who had escap'd out of the hands of the others. Then they pillag'd the town, and carry'd away whatsoever was valuable.

This action gave extraordinary pleasure to the officers of Timur; because it was the first conquest they had made in Iran.

This town of Fouchendge was very much esteem'd for its strength, being surrounded with high walls and a good rampart: its other fortifications were so strong, that no traveller had ever seen any citadel comparable to it: its outer parts were guarded with a deep ditch full of water: it was furnish'd with a great many men arms, and machines, and had plenty of victuals. Yet notwithstanding all these advantages, it was taken by our victorious soldiers at the first assault; which seem'd to foretel that all the kingdoms of the empire of Iran shou'd in a short time be brought in subjection to the invincible Timur. But that this good fortune might not pass unmixt with some adversity, Elias and several

General soldiers fell into the ditch, and were
brown'd.

C H A P. XXXIII.

Reduction of Herat, capital of Corassana.

WHEN Timur had taken Fouchendge, he march'd toward Herat, tho Malek Cayaseddin in his pride, and by reason of the strength of the walls which surrounded his capital, the many friends he had, and the succors he expected, had prepar'd arms and all things necessary for his defence.

The victorious army was no sooner arriv'd, than the troops began to ruin the gardens, after having beat down the walls: they then invested the city on all sides; and as so on as the signal was given by the drums beating, and the soldiers had made the great cry Souroun, it was order'd for the city to be surrounded by entrenchments. This order was immediately obey'd, and Timur, relying on his ordinary good fortune, mounted his horse, and rode several times round the city, to examine the out-parts, and observe the strongest and weakest walls.

The enemy, who were ready to fight, open'd their gate; and at the same time the troop of Gouris, choic'd the strongest and most valiant men of Iran, made a sally upon our soldiers, but after a bloody conflict retir'd.

The inhabitants had no sooner heard of this, than preferring the safety of their houses, which were adorn'd with fine porcelane earth of Cachan^{*}, to the fatigues of war, they no longer

* A town N. of Ispahan, and four days journey from this city.

Book II. defended themselves, but thought only of saving their lives.

When Malek re-enter'd the city, he endeavor'd to change this resolution of the inhabitants: he resolv'd to make a second sally; and sent the Dellals, that is, the public cryers, into all the quarters of Herat, to order all the inhabitants to repair forthwith to the breast-works of the walls, and to take particular care of the city; but notwithstanding the crys they made in the markets and streets, every one was dead, and wou'd not obey 'em.

Malek seeing he had no other refuge to fly to than that of submission, sent to the emperor the Sultana Catoun, daughter of Taghitmur Can his mother, with his eldest son the Emir Pir Mehemmed, accompany'd by Eskender Cheiki, who was reported to have been of the race of Blegea; to acquaint Timur with his submission, and to beg pardon.

The merciful prince receiv'd 'em handsomely; he presented Malek's son with a robe of honor and a rich belt; and having comforted ' sent back the mother and son, with order to Malek he must depart out of Herat; for if he shou'd be so presumptuous as to defend himself and the city shou'd be taken, he wou'd be the cause of the ruin of the kingdom, and the death of the inhabitants, and repent his so doing. Timur kept with him Eskender Cheiki, that might inform himself of the affairs of the country, and of what had happen'd in the city; and the same time this prince went to dwell in

* A prince of the ancient Persians, the son of Kion and of the sister of Roustem.

inhabit of the garden call'd Bagzogoun, that is to say, the garden of the crows. Chap. 33.

Malek Cayaseddin the next day made preparations for his departure; and the day after, having laid aside his pride, he went out of the city to seek Timur: he kiss'd the imperial carpet upon his knees, as a token of his sincere submission; and beg'd pardon for his fault.

Timur pardon'd and caress'd him; gave him a veil of honor, and a belt set with precious stones, and then dismiss'd him.

The day after, the Sheriffs, antient Moullas and Imams, accompanied with the greatest lords of the kingdom, came out of the city: they had the honor to kiss the carpet, and made the accustomed vows for the emperor's prosperity.

This great conquest happen'd in the month of Muhârrem, in the year of the Hegira 783, which was that of the Dog with the Moguls; and the victorious standard was carry'd from the imperial camp to the meadow of Kehdestan, An. Dom. 1381.

and all the treasures and other riches which the Emir had amass'd for several years, shou'd be carry'd away. It is remarkable that there were in this city all sorts of treasures, as silver money, unpolish'd precious stones, the richest thrones, crowns of gold, silver vessels, gold and silver brocades, and curiosities of all kinds. The soldiers, according to the imperial order, carry'd away all these riches upon camels.

Timur then order'd the old walls of Herat to be raz'd, as also the new walls which Malek had built; which was accordingly executed.

* A pavillion in the gardens in form of a cupola, built of wood handfomly gilt, and sometimes of marble.

Book II. A tax was laid on the inhabitants of the city, in consideration of their being sav'd, and in acknowledgment of the good treatment us'd towards 'em; which was paid in four days.

Moulla Cotbeddin, son of Moulla Nezameddin, who was chief of the Imams and doctors of this kingdom, had orders to quit Herat, and to dwell in the town of Sebz, with two hundred considerable old men: and Timur-Tach, nephew of Acbouga, governor of Tashkent, was order'd to accompany and settle 'em there with their families.

The gates of the city, which were cover'd with plates of iron, adorn'd with sculptures and many learned inscriptions, were carry'd to Keck, where they remain to this day.

Malek had in possession another place, which he thought impregnable; it was call'd Echkiago, and sometimes Amangau, the government of which he had given to Emir Gauri, the youngest of his sons, who was accounted in Herat the bravest, wisest and most experienc'd lord of the kingdom. The emperor order'd Malek to bring him to court, and at the same time prohibited his entring into the citadel, and threatn'd to make him repent it if he did so. The prince went to the walls of Echkiago, as he was order'd; and having resolv'd to comply with this difficult proposal, he had recourse to his prudence, and conducted himself so well in this affair, that by his fine speeches he persuaded his son to come out, and he brought him to court, where he had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. Timur gave him a handsom reception; highly favor'd him, and presented him with a royal vest.

C H A P. XXXIV.

The army marches to Tous and Kelat.

TIMUR being highly pleas'd with his success at Herat, sent Gehanchah Yakou with troops, to conquer the towns of Nichabour and Sebznar; but as the affair of Ali Ber disappointed him, he march'd in person to Kelat and Tous; and when he was arriv'd at the tomb of Abou Massoud ^{the first} ~~the second~~, he got off his horse to make ~~prayer~~ ^{devotion} to it, according to the custom of pious men, besought God to assist him, and to give him strength sufficient to conquer his enemies.

The news of the emperor's march troubled Ali Ber: his heart was a long time divided between hope and fear; but at length, notwithstanding the confusion he was in, he resolv'd to ~~send~~ ^{send} his army to oppose Timur's march, and to ~~prevent~~ ^{prevent} the conquest of the towns of Tous and Kelat. He sent for the governor of Sebznar, named Sabedal, who was governor of Sebznar, during the absence of the army's march, and also immediately to court. The emperor receiv'd 'em with his ordinary clemency, and after having loaded 'em with favors, gave them a belt and sword, as a robe of honor: and thus these two princes were treated in a more obliging manner than they could have expected to hope for.

* General of the army of Aboul Abbas, first Caliph of the house of the Abbassides, and to whom these princes ow'd their advancement to the Caliphate.

Timur at the same time took horse to march to Esferain¹, which was in the hands of the lieutenants of the Emir Veli, prince of Mazendran. As soon as he arriv'd there, he gave orders for dispatching the siege of this town; the soldiers had no sooner fix'd their stations in the camp where they design'd to prepare their machines of war, than hanging their bucklers upon their necks, they march'd forthwith to the walls, in which they made considerable breaches, and enter'd the town: they kill'd the sword a great number of people, and destroy'd all their houses, the most considerable as well as those of less value; so that there remain'd to this great town only the name of Esferain, which it could not be depriv'd of.

Timur sent an ambassador into Mazendran to the Emir Veli, to tell this prince, that if he came before him without resistance, and with expedition, to obtain the honor of killing the usurper of his throne, he would distinguish him from his equals by imperial favors, and raise him above 'em; but if, thro his stubbornness he shou'd refuse to appear, he would by that means become very unfortunate.

This prince treated the ambassador with all manner of civility, gave him a handsome reception, kiss'd the letter which was presented him, laid it upon his head, profess'd his submission, and promis'd to come to the throne in a short time, and employ all his care in meriting to be of the number of the emperor's servants.

¹ Otherwise call'd Elmshredgan, a town in Corasmand, between Nichabour and Jorjan, dependant on Nichabour: long. 61. 4. lat. 36. 44.

When the ambassador was upon his return, Timur went to a pleasure house nam'd Ogoul Yaton Yailan, an agreeable place for the summer, where he staid some days to give time to his soldiers to bring up their horses, and to refresh themselves in a delicious meadow there, after the fatigue they had undergone.

During these transactions they put to death the band of robbers, inhabitants of Courache, of whom we have before spoken, who were so bold as to kill the Emir Hadgi Berlas, and his brother Aidecon, very near relations of Timur. The emperor gave the principality of this country to Mehemed Dervich son of Aidecon, and to Ali Dervich grand-son of the Emir Hadgi: and at present it belongs to their family.

C H A P. XXXV.

THE emperor having made several regulations as to the policy of the kingdom of Corassiana, which he had reduc'd to obedience, he dismiss'd Malek Cayasfeddin prince of Herat, and the other princes and governors, of whom he confirm'd in their respective governments. Emir Cheik Sebzuari, who before the conquest of Corassiana had quitted Malek, and put himself under the protection of the emperor, having had the good fortune for some years to serve this prince, was honor'd with the highest post in the town of Sebzuar; and Taban Behader was made governor of that



Book II country: after which the emperor happily returned to his capital city.

This monarch being on his return thither, went to pass the winter in the proud city of Bocara, where loaded with grandeur and glory, he pass'd his days in pleasure; and the Miran Miran Chah his son, who by his order was gone to Serres, having seiz'd on Mohamed brother of Malek Cayaseddin, sent him to Samarcand, where he remain'd during winter.

C H A P. XXXVI.

Death of Akia Beghi, daughter of Timur, and wife of the Emir Bei, son of the Emir Moussa.

TO verify what is said in the Alcoran, that there is no joy without sorrow, nor marriage without mourning; Timur, in the midst of his prosperity, was afflicted by the death of Tagi Can his daughter, also call'd Akia Beghi.

This princess was marry'd to Mohamed Bei son of the Emir Moussa: she had scarce her equal in beauty and virtue; her mind was adorned with the brightest graces, and her behavior attracted the love of all: in short, she was endu'd with such charming qualities, that the emperor her father lov'd her tenderly. Nevertheless her constitution decaying, she was seized with a pining sickness, by which she wast'd away; insonmuch that the fatal moment arriv'd, in which princes as well as peasants, the powerful as well

well as the sultan, was oblig'd to submit to the Chancery
decrees of favour in the matter that was taken to re-
lieve her was nothing, and she gave up to the
angel Israel her title, which she had only in
trust, leaving behind her a forlorn'd Sultan
Hussein.

The emperor Timur, who boasted that he was able to withstand the shock of misfortunes, was so afflicted at her death, that he forsook every one his presence; so that grief having seiz'd the hearts of the people, they rent their clothes, cover'd their heads with dust, and clad black felt about their necks.

The funeral obsequys were perform'd according to the maxims of the Mahometan law; her body was wash'd upon a table of gold, enrich'd with pearls and precious stones; they then laid her in a coffin of aloes-wood, and recommended her soul to God. The coffin was carry'd to the city of Kech, where it was laid in a magnificent tomb. The emperor, after the funeral obsequys, received the formal compliments of the court, and the most distinguished dignities and offices among the nobles in great abundance.

In the mean while advice was brought from Corassana, that Ali-Bei, in conjunction with the Emir Veli, had brought his troops into the field against Ali Muaid, and besieg'd him in the town of Sebzuar.

But, highly afflicted at the decease of his daughter, had no regard to the affairs of this world; notwithstanding the ambition he had formerly shewn; wherefore he took no notice of this advice, nor seem'd any way af-

* The Mahometans believe the angel Israfil carries away the souls of those who die.

Book II. fested with it; in short, he continu'd in this mood, till the princess Cotluc Turcan Aga, his sister, who cou'd not bear the thoughts of his spending his time after this manner, came to him: she profess'd how much she sympathiz'd with him in his grief; but at the same time she gave him some agreeable advice, and told him, That since there was no remedy for the misfortune which caus'd his sorrow, he ought not entirely to abandon the care of the affairs of the empire; that this neglect would bring disorder into his towns, and make the poor people despair; that it was better to free his mind from inquietude, which was prejudicial to him, and to shew that his zeal had no other aim than that of well governing the empire, and remedying the necessities of the state.

" March, says she, towards Mazendran^a and Kelat^b, to chastise those profligates, who have had the insolence to depart from their obedience: treat 'em in such a manner, that it may serve for an example to others; spare not their lives; pillage their houses; and in short, let 'em receive a punishment adequate to their crimes; that the innocent fall not into misfortune and trouble, by departing from their duty at the instigation of the wicked."

The words of this princess had the desired effect on the emperor's mind, who knew they proceeded only from pure friendship; they rous'd and animated his virtue; and at the same time he resolv'd on his march to Corasfana and Mazendran.

^a A province S. E. of the Caspian sea.

^b A town S. of Mazendran, between Macan and Toss.

C H A P. XXVIII.

Timur's second expedition into the kingdom of Iran or Persia.

THE emperor order'd his troops to be got together, tho it was the middle of winter; and his army being in a readiness, he march'd from Bactra towards Iran. He pass'd the desert, and arriv'd at Amoye upon the ~~Silang~~, where the engineers had no sooner built a bridge of boats, than this conqueror cross'd the river at the head of all his troops, entering a second time upon the territories of Iran or Persia. It is said, that at that time Asia trembled from China even to the borders of Greece.

Having pass'd by the country of Macan*, he arriv'd in the neighbourhood of ~~Herat~~. So-rats, with his army, and Malak Cayeseldin also join'd it with the troops he brought from Herat. But Ali Beg, instead of following their example, got the start of the army, and shut up all the inhabitants with his family and effects in the fortress of Herat.

The emperor was indulgent to him, and in consideration of the alliance between 'em, would not immediately take occasion from his fault to be angry with him; but sent a mes-

* A town of Corasana, long 97. lat. 37.

* A town of Corasana, long 94. lat. 36.

Book IV. fenger to him to know the cause of his fear, and to tell him he might come to court with full assurance that no act of hostility shou'd be us'd against him; but if he wou'd not obey, he must acknowledg himself the occasion of all the misfortunes which shou'd happen to him; and that he shou'd be blameable for it. But as the time was come when the prosperity of Ali Bei must have an end, he did not consult his reason, but despis'd the counsel which the emperor, thro his clemency, had sent him; and had recourse to this passage of the *Alaman*. *I will fly to a mountain, which will save me*; thus relying on the mountain of Kelat, which he imagin'd inaccessible, he did not come to the imperial camp to offer his service to the emperor.

Timur decamp'd in the territories of Kelat, and went down to Corah, which was dependent on Abiverd*, and order'd it to be proclaim'd in his army that he was about to march to Mazendran against Veli: notwithstanding which he took a different road, and turn'd to Kelat, imitating in that king Behman, whom the author of Chah Name† mentions in his verses, who designing to march to the country of Zabal to conquer it, gave out that he shou'd go to the left hand, but at the same time went to the right.

Ali Bei and his men obtain'd fresh vigor, on advice that the imperial army wou'd march to Mazendran; whereupon he flew out of the forests into the meadows, the horses, flocks of

* A town formerly call'd Bayerd, N. of Corasane now Tous, in the desert of Kivae; long. 23. lat. 27. 29.

† A general history of Persia, written in ancient Persian.

sheep, and other beasts which had been shut up in the town.

But Timur, instead of going to Mazendran, return'd to Kelat with the army, which ravag'd all the country, and over-against the gate of Kelat call'd the gate of the four villages, a dome was rais'd, under which was fix'd the emperor's throne, and the standard was erected before it.

The army, almost assur'd of the conquest, invested Kelat on all sides: the Mirza Miran Chah encamp'd over-against the gate of Doria; the Mirza Ali, son of the Emir Mirza Briat, in the passage of Doria; the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin posted himself in the defile of Argoun Chah; and the Mirza Omar Cheik planted his standard at another gate. Fear seiz'd on Ali Bei, who being in an ill posture of defence, was oblig'd to have recourse again to the goodness of the emperor; to whom he represented by a submissive letter, which he got to be laid before him. That being confounded at his bad success, he sent a messenger to ask himself at his feet, to implore his clemency; before he had beg'd pardon; but if thro his royal goodness he wou'd forgive him, and take the trouble to come to the gate of the town, accompanied only by a few men, he wou'd come out as his slave, to cast himself at his feet, and ask pardon for his faults. Timur granted the petition of Ali Bei, and having appointed a day to go to the gate of the town, he did not fail to be there with five horsemen only.

The walls of Kelat were built upon the brink of a high mountain, in which there was a narrow passage by the side of the walls among the rocks; which way was shut in by a gate, and join'd to that of the town.

Book II. Ali-Bek having notice that Timur was coming to the appointed place with but a few men, his malice, or rather his ill fortune, excited him to betray him, and to surprize him by some villains who lay in ambuscade in the way, and whom he had order'd to kill the prince, if they shou'd have an opportunity.

In the mean while the traitor did not keep his word, not imagining that he whom God protects can receive no damage from any one, whatever artifice shou'd be made use of to destroy him. In short, as if the villains had been blind, they cou'd not come out of their ambuscade, nor even hold open the door of the place by which they must have put in execution the orders given 'em; so that Timur having staid a long time at the place appointed, return'd to his camp without receiving any harm.

As soon as Timur was come down from the mountain, all the generals flock'd to salute him; and every one paid his compliments to him upon the danger he had escap'd.

When the treason and faithlesness of Ali-Bek was fully known by his breach of promise, the emperor was enrag'd, and commanded a general assault to be given, and the bravest men of the army to mount the walls of Kelat in those places which shou'd be mark'd out for 'em. The troops advanc'd, and without fear of death, did all that cou'd be expected from courage and resolution.

In the beginning of the month of Rabiul-Heg. 784. which answers to the year of the Ho the emperor order'd that the soldiers troops of Mecrit * and Bedakchan, the most able men in the world to march over mountains, and surmount the difficultys of narrow passages, shou'd scale the walls. The first night

An. Do
1382.

* Eastern
Tartars.

night they climb'd, and got on the top of the ^{Chap. 21} mountain, and to the sound of kettle-drums and trumpets came to the gates of the town. Timur hasten'd thither also with a troop of his most valiant officers who march'd before him, among whom were the celebrated Akimur Behader, and the brave Aicoutmur, who briskly repuls'd the enemy they met, and got upon the mountain. Omar Abbas and Mobacher, who were got up before the others, expected their comrades under a kind of vault, where the soldiers of the town attack'd 'em; but Timur immediately sent thither a detachment of his best troops of the army, who quickly cut 'em off, and cut off the rout: the victorious troops, after having intirely beat the enemy, return'd from the mountain, and the vanquish'd demanded quarter.

Ali Bei, reduc'd to the last extremity, sent to Timur to beseech him that the soldiers might give over the slaughter, on condition he shou'd come out the next day to make his submission, and assure him of his obedience. He promis'd that in an agreement which he sign'd, and confirm'd by an oath; and as a security for his fidelity sent Nicrouz and Mehemed Cheik Hadgi, who were the principal Emirs of the hoard of Youn Garbani, with his sister Can Sultan, who had been promis'd in marriage to Mirza Mehemed Sultan.

These envoys cast themselves at the feet of Timur with the greatest humility, and interceded for Ali Bei: the emperor, thro his clemency, granted them what they desir'd, and being willing to lay hold on the agreement of

* The same as the province of Youn, in Corassan, near Azadyar; mention'd by Abulfeda.

Book II. Ali Bei, and give credit to it, he at the same time sent orders to his troops to cease the slaughter, and to Nicrouz and Mehemed to follow him to his camp, which they obey'd.

The next morning, at sun-rising, Timur took horse, and went to the gate of the town; Ali Bei was then constrain'd to come out and submit: he confess'd his faults, and begg'd his life. Timur was again so generous as to pardon him, and even to grant him the favor he requested, which was to exempt him from coming to court that day, on his promising not to fail coming the next, to have the honor of the carpet of the throne.

But as the end of Pir Ali's good fortune was near, despair wou'd not permit him to act with reason, nor shew any honor in his conduct. This unfortunate prince again built castles in the air, and intended only base actions: he employ'd the night in fortifying and barricading the passage Lohra, and some other passages, by which the troops of Timur had scal'd the mountain; and he shut himself up in this inclosure of rocks, that he might avoid keeping his promise.

Timur departed fourteen days after, and went to the fortress of Cahcha, between Beverd and Kelat; the emperor gave orders to rebuild it, and the soldiers so industriously apply'd themselves to it, that in two days and nights it was entirely rebuilt: he gave the government of it to Hadgi Coja, and fortify'd it with a strong garison. He sent to the other side of the country Siorgatmish Can, Mirza Ali, and the brave Cheik Ali, with the troops of their Toman, to guard the road to Kelat, and to block up the passages with so much precaution, that this place shou'd be a fort

fort of a prison, from whence no one cou'd go Chap. 28.
in or come out to carry any refreshment to the prince.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

Reduction of the town of Terchiz in Corassana.

TIMUR, by his good conduct, having in a short time reduc'd all the provinces to his empire, turn'd his arms towards Terchiz, a famous town, the soldiers march'd thither with his army; he pass'd by Yassi Dapan, and arriv'd at Cabouchan, from whence he sent to Samarcand the princefs Dilchadaga, who was indispos'd. As soon as the conqueror was come to Terchiz, the troops rang'd themselves round the place. This famous fortress being among mountains, was almost inaccessible, and said to have been impregnable, because of the extraordinary height of its walls, and the extreme breadth and depth of its ditches.

The garison of Terchiz was at that time compos'd of Sedidians, so call'd, because the Emir Cayafeddin had given the care of this place to the Emir Ali Sedidi, who had brought them in; and these Sedidians were for the most part Scouris, men famous for their valor and skill in defending places. This town, by their good conduct, was furnish'd with all sorts of arms and machines, great store of victuals, and a

* Long. 92. lat. 35.

* A town dependent on Nichabour in Corassana.

Book II ~~some~~ number of soldiers, who were resolv'd to defend themselves to the last. When Timur had seen 'em in action, he complain'd to Malek Cayafeddin of their resistance; and told him, that these men whom he had put into this place, being under his command, he wonder'd they shou'd continue in rebellion, since himself had submitted to his orders and obey'd him.

Cayafeddin said, they did in their ignorance and want of good sense; and therefore he wou'd go and confer with 'em: in short, he went to the foot of the walls to command 'em to submit; but notwithstanding his injunctions and exhortations, they wou'd neither obey him nor depart out of the place: so that the emperor was oblig'd to besiege 'em in form. When he had sent out his orders to the army, these officers caus'd it to be publish'd to all soldiers, the Tatars and Europeans, that they shou'd begin the siege, and at the same time began the attack. Every day Timur rid round the place, and examin'd the out-works: the engineers with all expedition rais'd battering rams and other machines necessary for the siege; and presently got 'em in a readiness: the miners and pioneers drain'd the ditch; and at length undermin'd the walls, while our warriors assaulted 'em on every side, and perform'd many glorious actions. The besieged bravely resisted, and shew'd so much courage, that 'twas impossible to imagine such fury in warriors. The attack and the defence were sustain'd with equal resolution; but at length our soldiers receiving every day fresh succours, so far ruin'd the walls and breast-works by the stones which were cast, and by the battering rams and other machines, that the place was almost destroy'd.

And

Chapter 22

And as the prosperity of Timur was the care of heaven, which humane strength and the most heroic valor are not able to resist, the Sedidians being terrified by seeing their affairs reduc'd so low, lost all courage, and begg'd for quarter. The ever-merciful emperor granted what they ask'd, and even us'd good words to encourage 'em; yet they went out of the town very much afraid, tho they had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet: they were enroll'd in Timur's service, and recruited themselves in a very becoming manner.

This Timur-Bec, after he had order'd his army to be divided into three parts, and made his government of Persia, and other places on the frontiers of Turkestan. As soon as they were gone out of Perchiz, Mirza Miran Chah confer'd on Sarek Ereke the government of the place.

The arrival of an ambassador from Persia, at the court of Timur.

GElaleddin Chah Chaja was at this time sovereign of the country of Fars, that is, of the province of Chiraz and Persepolis. He was the flower and glory of the family of Mourziah, who us'd to be mediator in public treaties. This wise prince, thro the inspiration of his good fortune, made haste to testify his friendship to the officers of the emperor; and sent to court Omar Chah, who was one of the principal Emirs, with a letter, which, after the usual complements, assur'd Timur of his services and sincere friendship. He loaded this am-

Book II. **W**ith presents; which were curious precious stones, as also pearls worthy to be presented to emperors; gold rings, gold money, rich stuffs, rarities of great price, Arabian horses, excellent mules for running, cover'd with saddles of gold; and many sets of mules, six in a set, with harnesses of great price, cuirasses adorn'd with silk stuffs, choice furniture, a great scarlet canopy, a royal pavilion, a tent, and a great umbrella; which were of rich and sumptuous stuffs, with divers ornaments.

Omar Chah, being arriv'd at court, had the happiness at his audience to kiss the carpet. After having made the usual compliments, he presented to the emperor the letter, and presents from his master, which he distributed among the officers. This prince receiv'd him with the greatest respect, and conferr'd several favors upon him: he presented him with pieces of gold, veils of honor, and horses; and after having answer'd Gelaledin's letter, sent him back very well satisfy'd with his negotiation, and with the obliging expressions he had receiv'd. Timur commanded one of his officers to accompany him, whom he loaded with curious presents for the king of Persia; and he order'd this envoy to demand in marriage of Gelaledin the princess his daughter for his grandson, Mirza Pir Mehemed, son of Mirza Gehanghir, to perpetuate and strengthen their friendship and alliance.

CHAP. XL.

Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.

WHEN the imperial officers had got Terchiz register'd in the roll of conquests, and Timur had plac'd his governors there, he caus'd his army to march to Mazendran.

He pass'd by the road of Roughi, and order'd his forces to march to Keshoud Jaeme, and to Chander. The Emir Veli, prince of Mazendran, surpriz'd at this news, sent the Emir Hadgi, and others of his greatest favorites, to the imperial camp, with several horses, whose harnesses were new; as also curiosities of several forts.

His letter was presented to the emperor, whom he besought to excuse him from waiting on him that day, and to order his army to leave his country, that so his poor servant finding himself in security, might again rejoice in his good fortune, come to court with expedition, and have the honor of spending the remainder of his life in his interest and service. Timur, thro an excess of goodness, granted the demands of his letter; and dismiss'd his envoy with satisfaction.

In the mean while advice was brought from Kelan, that Cheik Ali Behader, having diligently examin'd the passages of that place, had mounted the walls in the night, accompany'd only with a few faithful domesticks, without mentioning it to the Emir Ali Bei; but that he had mistaken his way thro the darkness of the night; that he had met with a high arch from

Book II. whence he was perceiv'd by the enemy, who sall'y'd out with all diligence, and getting possession of the passages, put themselves in a condition to repulse him. Cheik Ali bravely attack'd 'em, and the two partys made the great cry, the usual signal for a battel. The fight was bloody, and the soldiers were so animated against one another, that they wou'd listen to no other words than those which encourag'd the slaughter of the enemy. In short, many warriors on both sides were kill'd; but as the quivers were empty'd, some persons, thro' religious motive, labour'd at an accommodation, in which, thro' the goodness of God, they succeeded; and Ali Bei spoke to the Cheik Ali Behader: they embrac'd one another in token of peace and friendship, and Ali Bei oblig'd the other to stay with him, where he receiv'd all imaginable civilitys and handsome entertainments: they convers'd together for many days, Ali Bei hoping, thro' the intercession of the Cheik, the emperor wou'd pardon his past faults.

Timur having agreed to the prince of Mazendran's request, because he had voluntarily submitted, march'd towards his capital. He pass'd by Chamlagan and Tcharmagan, and encamp'd in the meadow of Radecan. At this place the Cheik Ali Behader, and those who accompany'd him, join'd the imperial camp; and this general procur'd for Ali Bei the honor of kissing the imperial carper, having a sword and a handkerchief* in his hand. The Cheik knelt down, and besought the emperor to grant his pardon to Ali Bei. Timur did so, and afterwards caress'd and made him several presents.

This action of the Cheik very much pleas'd Timur, and increas'd his reputation at court.

* See Ch. 4. of this book in the note.

He gave him Radecan, in quality of a lordship, and Siorgal *.

This monarch also gave Samarkand to Ali Muaid Serbedai, and ordered that Malek Cayafeddin, and his children, as well as Ali Bei, and his men, should be conducted to Samarcand. He then distributed all the country of Youn Garbani to his heirs, but he order'd the inhabitants and family's in it to be conducted to Transoxiana.

CHAP. VII.

Timur marches to Samarcand. Death of the empress Dilchadaga, and of the princess Coliac Turcan Aga, Timur's sister.

TIMUR having no more enemys to fear in the kingdom of Corassana, and the Hettogians of Mirza Miran Chah being established in the possession of the towns and other places of the country, he gave leave to the troops to march to their quarters, and departed with expedition for the capital city of his empire.

When the inhabitants of Samarcand saw the court, which was finer than ever it had been before, in their city, they were exceedingly over-

joy bound Ali Bei, prince of Kelat, as well as Emir Gouri son of Malek Cayafeddin, and Mehemed his brother, and sent 'em to Amul, to Mirza Omar Cheik. The hord of Youn Garbani was also sent to Tach-

* Siorgal is a gift the king makes to any one of a lordship, which he and his heirs enjoy for ever.

Book II. kumt, and Malek Cayasfeddin, with his eldest son Pir Mehemed, were kept at Samarcand.

During the winter the following affair happen'd at Herat. The two sons of Malek Faccreddin and of his brother, making no figure in Herat, when this country was taken, nor during the government of Malek Hussein, or of his son Malek Cayasfeddin, liv'd in extreme poverty; but when Timur conquer'd Herat, these princes represented to him their misery, and told him, that having the honor to be his servants, they took the liberty to let him know that they were cousins-german to Malek Hussein, father of Malek Cayasfeddin; that these two princes had made themselves masters of their effects, and that they cou'd have no hopes of recovering 'em but thro his protection. The emperor was touch'd with their misfortune, and gave the government of Gour to the eldest, nam'd Malek Mehemed. About the same time a Gouris, nam'd Aboufaid Espahbed, a man of dauntless courage, who had been put in irons by the order of Malek Cayasfeddin, and remain'd in prison ten years, was releas'd by the favor of Timur.

An. Dom.
1380.

Towards the end of the year of the Hegir 782, the Mirza Miran Chah, having pass'd the winter with the Emirs upon the bank of the river of Morgab in a place nam'd Yendi, which the Persians call Pentchdeh, that is, the five villages; it happen'd that Malek Mehemed governor of Gour, thro his folly and ignorance, with a troop of Gouris more ignorant than himself, march'd to Herat, and was join'd in the way by Aboufaid Espahbed; and when they were arriv'd in the city, another band of rascally fellows, highwaymen, and vagabonds also join'd 'em; and being assembl'd together, the

they committed great disorders and unheard-of acts of injustice, cruelty and abomination. The governor, intendants, and officers of the Emirs retir'd of their own accord into the fortress of Esfaheddin, the gate of which the rebels barr'd; which so much astonish'd the garrison of the Turks, that without taking care of any thing, they flung themselves off the walls, to endeavour to save their lives: but there was no quarter granted 'em, and no one cou'd save himself from the hands of the rebels.

The Mirza Miran Chah having advice of these disorders, sent with all expedition the Emirs Seifeddin and Arbouga with some troops to Herat, and himself march'd thither afterwards with an army.

When the Emirs arriv'd, the Gouris advanc'd to repulse 'em, and gave 'em battel at the end of the street of Khiavan; but they were defeated, and many of 'em slain. Some of 'em fled into the city, and dispers'd themselves during night, and as the Mirza Miran Chah arriv'd about that time, his troops drew their swords to chastise this rabble, and slew so great a number of 'em, that they built a very high tower with their heads, as an example for the future to seditious persons.

When the emperor heard of this news, which was brought him by the Mirza Miran Chah, he gave orders that Malek Cayaseddin, who was imprison'd in the fortress of Samarcand, his brother Malek Mehemed, his grandson the Emir Gouri, and Ali Bei Youn Garbani, shou'd be all put to death.

^s This circumstance ought not to surprize the reader, nor appear to him incredible, there actually being till this day at Isfahan, capital of Persia, such an edifice built of the skulls of wild beasts.

Book II
An. Dom.
1383.

In the year of the Hegira 785, which was that of the Mouse, the most illustrious princels Dilchadaga, wife of Timur, pass'd from this world into the other; and some days after her decease, dy'd also Cotluc Turcan Aga, Timur's eldest sister; famous among the princesses in her time for her piety and charity, which consisted in founding of hospitals, mosques, colleges, and many other publick works for the assistance of the people, who all by this means partook of her bountys!

She was bury'd near prince Cotlam son of Elabbas. The emperor was highly afflicted at this loss for a long time. Every one paid his complements of condolence with the usual ceremonies; and he did several charitable things for the repose of the souls of the deceas'd, and gave abundance of alms to the poor who deserv'd 'em: but because his natural good nature caus'd in him an extraordinary sorrow, which kept him too long from the care of the affairs of state, the Cheriffs, doctors, old men and religious, among whom were Seid Bereke, Coja Abdelmalek, and Cheik Zade Saghezdgi, presented themselves before him, and comforted him by an agreeable conversation drawn from the tradition and discourses of Mahomet, from the Alcoran it self, and from many pious historians; who excited in him the desire of taking upon him the care of the people and army, and of rendring justice. In short, he approv'd of this maxim, as he had done before, that an hour only employ'd by a prince in executing justice, was of more importance than the worship given to God, and the prayers made during one's whole life: so that being at last comforted by the verse of the Alcoran, which tells us, *That we must return to God, because we are his*

The history of Timur-Bec.

211

he for the future employ'd all his zeal in the regulation of the state and religion.

CHAP. XLII.

Timur sends a sixth army into the country of the Getes.

THE emperor having learnt that there were disorders committed in some places of the country of the Getes, commanded Mirza Ali to march thither with an army, to destroy the seditious people of that country, the greatest part of whom were not Mahometans; he recommended to him principally to pursue Camaredin, the author of those troubles: and then he went to Kech. On advice of Mirza Ali's departing with his army, the people of Behrin laid an ambuscade to surprize him, and succeeded so well in it, that they plunder'd all his baggage, vanquish'd, and oblig'd him to return to the emperor.

The emperor at the same time, to revenge himself on these rash people, sent the Cheik Ali Behader, Seif-Elmulouc, Atilmich, and Argoun Chah Ectachi, with troops to make war on them: and as he heard no news from 'em so soon as he expected, he sent after 'em the Emir Gouhar Yakou, Eltchi Bouga, Chamfeddin, Ouregha, and Saintemaure Behader, with ten thousand horse: but these Emirs were scarcely come to Atacom, when they met those upon their return who were sent before 'em, and had overtaken the people of Behrin, of whom they had kill'd a great number, pillag'd their country, and made many slaves. But as the

Book II. the Emir Gehanchah had orders to seek out Camareddin; he oblig'd the former Emirs to return with him to that expedition. They went together to Issighenl, and from thence as far as Gheuctopa, in search of Camareddin; but not being able to find him, they return'd to Samarcand in autumn, and had the honor to salute the emperor.

C H A P. XLIII.

Timur marches to Mazendran, and thence to Sistan.

TIMUR having resolv'd to march in that season to Mazendran, gave orders for the raising of fresh troops, to render his army more formidable. When all was ready, he took horse at the happy moment, according to the observations which were made; and having reviewed all the troops, and display'd his standard, he march'd towards Mazendran. After having encamp'd and decamp'd many times, he arriv'd at Termed; and order'd that the victuals for his army shou'd be brought thither. This prince caus'd a bridge to be built in a narrow passage, where having cross'd the river of Morgab, he encamp'd on its banks: the Emir Yakou, governor of Cabulestan*, had the honor to kiss the carpet in the camp, where he gave an account of the affairs he had in charge, and at the

* This province, whose capital city is Cabul, hath on the S. Zabulestan, on the N. Bedakchan, on the E. the kingdom of China and Coran, and on the W. those of Bamjan, Gour and Rayer.

The history of Timur-Bec.

237

Chap. 43

same time desir'd orders from the emperor, relating to the government of his frontiers.

During these transactions, advice was brought that the Toman of Miceodari, which inhabited a place fit for the summer season, design'd to revolt; and that Cheik Daoud Sebzuari, whom Timur had honour'd, by making him chief of Sebzuar, had been guilty of so much ingratitude and insolence, as to kill Taban Behader governor of that town, by which action he declar'd himself a rebel: that the Mirza Miran Chah having notice of it, had sent the Emir Acbonga of Herat at the head of an army to Sebzuar, and the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin had follow'd him with fresh assistance; that they had besieg'd Sebzuar, and put abundance of the rebels to the sword, after having taken this town; that the Cheik Daoud fled, and retir'd into the fortress of Bed-rabad, situate on the ridge of a mountain, where he had fortify'd himself; but that the Emirs Hadgi Seifeddin, and Acbonga, had actually besieg'd it. Timur had no sooner heard of this rebellion, and that of the country of Sistan, than he sent the Cheik Ali Behader and Outcheara Behader, at the head of a great army, against the Emir Veli prince of Mardandran, that they might encamp near him, and reduce his frontiers to obedience; and himself march'd towards Sistan.

His army encamp'd at the beginning of the month of Ramadan in the year of the Hegira 785, before the town of Herat, the inhabitants of which, as we said before, were join'd with the Goma rebels; and the emperor himself march'd to Sebzuar, where he encamp'd. This fortress was attack'd according to his orders, and many breaches were made; the Cheik Yahia Corasani being appointed to direct the miners, the

An. Dom.
1383.

Strange
punish-
ment of
the rebels.

the place was so ruin'd, that the greatest part of those within perish'd, and the Cheik Yabia was crush'd to pieces under a wall which fell down.

There were near two thousand slaves taken, who were pil'd alive one upon the other with mortar and bricks, so that these miserable wretches might serve as a monument to deter others from revolting; who knowing the vengeance of this conqueror, shou'd not bring themselves into this inevitable misfortune, which their pride might tempt them to.

When the emperor was satisfy'd with this revenge on the inhabitants of Sebzuar, he regulated his troops, and sent the vanguard to Sistan; whither he afterwards march'd with the rest of his army, which consisted of a hundred thousand warriors complete.

The prince Chah Gelaeddin of Fars having a design to come to Timur's court, but no sooner advice of the march of this invincible than he was out of his counsellors, and came with diligence before the imperial standard, with a spirit of sincerity and submission: he made presents to Timur, which indeed were but mean, considering the prince to whom they were presented: for no one was able to make those which were worthy of him: but they were suitable to the ability of Gelaeddin, who well knowing it was his interest to be in favor at court, acquainted the emperor with the rebellion he had taken of sacrificing his life for his service.

Timur order'd Altun-Bekader, and other captains, to make incursions in the neighbourhood of the town of Sistan, and pillage that country. They executed this order with expedition, and so much vigor, that the gates of the town were beaten to pieces; and as soon as the army had pass'd

pass'd the mountain nam'd Onc, and was come to the fortrefs of Zere; these brave warriors assaulted it according to order, and gain'd the victory; the first assault was made, and he had no thoughts of being conquer'd; fought a bloody battle, wherein the greatest part were slain with arrows, and the rest of our soldiers made a mountain of the dead bodies, and with their heads erected a tower.

CHAP. XLIV.

Timur's victory over the Saffarids.

THE emperor having rang'd his army in form of a crown round the place, advanc'd to the gate of the town with a troop of chosen men, in whom he cou'd confide, and got upon a hill of sand. Chahchahan Tageddin Sif-tan, with many others, came out from Chah Chahchahan to meet the emperor, whom they besought Timur to permit 'em to pay him a tribute and the ordinary customs: but during this conference with the emperor, the be-lie'd sally'd out in multitudes with good troops, and prepar'd themselves for the fight. Timur, knowing of their design, plac'd two thousand horse in ambush, and order'd Mehemed Sultan

Near a lake, to Sistan, to which it gives its name.

A town and province. The town, otherwise call'd Zaranje, is situate in long. 97. lat. 32. 20. on the river Senaroad, which is a branch of the Hindkush, which discharges it self into the lake of Zere. This province, which is part of Corassana, is otherwise call'd Soggetan and Nimrouz.

Chah

Book II. Chah advanced with a few men, and begin the fight; but at length, on pretence of flying, to turn to the right with what cavalry he had. This order was executed: and the enemy, who were only foot, growing presumptuous on this flight, fail'd not to pursue 'em vigorously as far as the place where the ambush was laid; but the ambush fell on the victors, and there was a bloody battle. The enemy's infantry wound-ed many of the horses with their swords, and abundance were slain; but the Turks kill'd a great number of the enemy, and the rest were closely pursu'd even to the gates of the town. The approach of night put a stop to the battle: but the next morning, the crys and trumpets were heard on all sides. The emperor in person commanded the main body; and under him Mirza Miran Chah, the right wing, being assisted by the great Emeer, whom we have mentioned before, and other commanders of the royal army; and the left wing was led by the Emir Sar Bouga, who had near him Codadad the son of Hussein. Our troops march'd round the place, and having in a manner block'd it up, beat their kettle-drums, to signify that it was time to begin the attack; they continu'd to sound the trumpet, and having made the great cry, dug a ditch before 'em, and there fix'd palisados, and did many other things till night came on.

Then two thousand of the enemy fall'y'd out to surprize the besiegers; and having agreed to attack the quarter of the Emir Chamseddin Abbas and Behrat Coja, they cross'd the ditch, being favor'd by the night, and advanc'd as far as the tents, and even to the middle of the camp, where they slew some horses and camels. But our captains, who were willing to engage these

these rash fellows, suffer'd them to cross the ditch, and discharg'd so many arrows on 'em, that they kill'd a great number, and wounded the rest, who with great difficulty retreated into the town.

The army march'd the next day to the place, and attack'd it on all sides. The attack was answer'd by those who sall'y'd out to repulse the besiegers; but the standard of the prophet being display'd, the Mirza Ali with five hundred horse fell upon the enemy, and repuls'd 'em as far as the town, which he enter'd with his battalion: nevertheless he was resist'd by the brave men of the country of Zabul, who having no longer any thoughts of saving their lives, but only of performing heroic actions, not only resist'd him with extreme valor, but being succour'd by a troop of others who follow'd 'em, shut the gate upon our warriors, and kept 'em close in the town. This action rekindled the fury of both parties, and reviv'd in the Zabulians the memory of the history of the son of Dastan.

Akramur Behader, having advice that the gate of the town was shut upon the Mirza Ali, ran thither full speed with a thousand horse, the most valiant soldiers of the army. They cut the gate to pieces with their swords, slew the guards, and dispers'd the soldiers who had shut the gate on our men: by which means the Mirza Ali went out of Sistan in triumph, with those who were under his command, and came to the imperial camp.

* Roustem, the son of Zal, surnam'd Dastan, born at Zabul, of which place he was king; the greatest hero the history of Persia ever mention'd.

Book II.

Chah Cobekistan, king of this country, not being able to defend himself against an army so numerous and formidable as that of Timur, found himself oblig'd to submit; he came out of the town to ask pardon of the emperor, and made the following speech: "Great prince, in vain I strive to defend my self against you, while mighty arm is able, if I may so say, to reach mountains. Of what use will it be to me to tempt fortune, who has raised you to such a height, that you seem able to command even her? No, my lord, I see no other means of saving my life than by flight. But what place is there for me to retire to, where I may shelter my self from your vengeance, since every one obeys your power? There is no asylum under heaven in which I can better trust, than your royal clemency. Yes, my lord, I have fled to save my self from you; but to you I have fled."

The emperor not only pardon'd him, but even distinguish'd him from the other princes by his favors.

After this action, Timur having on a plain cuirass without sleeves, mounted his bay horse; and with fifteen men only rode to the left wing of the army to review it; but at the same time he had advice that between twenty and thirty thousand of the populace of Sistan, tho' their prince was gone out of the town, and had presented himself before the imperial throne, being arm'd with bows and arrows, had slid down the walls, holding by one another's hands, and had the boldness to march against the victorious army: which oblig'd Timur to turn towards the body of his army to command 'em; but as the enemy let fly a great number of arrows, Ti-

Timur's
horse
wounded.

timur's

Timur's horse was wounded. The emperor was no sooner come to his tent, than he put Chah Cotobeddin in irons: and having rang'd his army in order, he was about to march in person to the fight; but the most affectionate Emirs took hold on his horse's bridle, and on their knees represented to him, that he had many years to live under his auspicious fortune, and as long as any of them remain'd, he ought to undertake no action, in which the least danger might be suspected. Timur, at the pressing instances of his officers, had no sooner turn'd his horse, than all the Timurids fell furiously upon the enemy, with their arrows and swords, that they cut them in pieces, crush'd a great number of them under their horses' feet, and wounded others, who with difficulty retir'd into the city, the gate of which they shut with the utmost expedition. The victorious soldiers pursu'd their victory, gave a second assault, mounted the breach, and having made many breaches, they made themselves masters of the city, and public edifices, put to the sword those who were not slain in the fight, and in short raz'd the walls of this fine city, the inhabitants of which they kill'd, both men, women and children, from persons of a hundred years old, to infants in the cradle.

The emperor staid there some days, during which time they carry'd away the treasures of the Kings of Sistan, and all the precious stones, other riches, and curious pieces of great price. The soldiers took even the very nails of the gates, and burnt every thing which cou'd be consum'd with fire.

Some fabulous authors report, that in the country of Zabulestan a voice was heard, which

Book II. advertiz'd the soul of Roustem : of all these disorders in these words; "Lift up thy head, behold the condition of thy country of Persia, which is at length reduc'd by the power of the Tartars."

An. Dom. 1383. This conquest was made in the month of Chawal in the year of the Hegira 785, which was that of the mouse; the sun being in capricorn.

They then sent the Chah, that is, the king of Sistan, Cotobeddin, to Samarcand, as also the generals of the army, and governors of the provinces. The town of Ferah was the place of the retreat of the Cadis, doctors, and other lawyers. The brave soldiers who had a share in gaining the victory, enjoy'd the emperor's favors above others; and the government of this province was given to Chachahan.

Arghun had always conquer'd the Tartars, and they could never make themselves masters of any town of Iran when he was alive. He was general of the Persians, king of Zabul under Cyrus and other emperors; and he slew Estendiar, who is thought to have been the same with Xerxes. He liv'd very long, and in four or five reigns. See in the *Chah Namé*.

CHAP. XLV.

Timur marches to Bost.

AFTER the taking of Sistan, the royal standard was carry'd to Bost^{*}; and the troops in their passage conquer'd the fortrels of Tak, which they raz'd to the ground.

And when they were encamp'd on the banks of the river of Hirmen[†], they destroy'd an edifice call'd the bank of Roustem; and left no footsteps of that antient monument.

The army pass'd by Kuke Cala, where they had advice that Toumen Nicoudari, was advanc'd to the quarters of Kidge[‡] and Mecran, which he closely besieg'd. Timur judging it convenient to oblige Toumen to return, the Mirza Miran Chah was nam'd for that purpose; and to destroy this rebel, Mireke Mehemed, son of Chir Behram, the emperor's favorite, sent to accompany the prince the Emir Hadgi Scifeddin, Cheik Ali Argoui Berlas, Sevindgic Behader, and other Emirs. They march'd day and night; and when they had pass'd the desert, they found Toumen with his men of the hord of Nicoudari, encamp'd in the meadow of Coran.

Toumen no sooner had advice that the imperial troops were arriv'd, than he mounted his

* A town of the kingdom of Sistan, on the frontiers of Zabul; long. 100. lat. 33.

† The same as Hermand.

‡ A town in the kingdom of Mecran, long. 99. lat. 37. 50.

Book II. horse, and came into the field ready for battel.

The Emir Scifeddin his old friend, considering his great age, entertain'd him with all possible respect and civility: he enquir'd of him the state of his health, and strove by the most obliging expressions to bring him over to his duty, assuring him he had nothing to fear from the emperor, but might come with courage to the foot of the throne; and he pray'd him to use no hostility. But fate was wholly set against Toumen; he had no regard to his friend's advice, but began the fight, where he was soon kill'd by a lance, and his head was sent to the emperor.

Timur with the army march'd by the upper part of the river of Hirmen; and as it was for the advancement and honor of monarchy, that whosoever should be guilty of disrepect, or commit any insolence against Timur, should receive a punishment suitable to his delinquency, it happen'd that the prince of Mam Caton, who had wounded Timur in the hand with an arrow, when he return'd from Sistan accompany'd by the Emir Hussein, at this time came to the court with presents: but at his arrival, he being known to Timur, whose anger was excited, and who would never let treason go unpunish'd, as soon as he was gone out from his presence, he commanded him to be seiz'd, and sent to death with arrows: which punishment appear'd too mild for so great a crime. The victorious troops in their march made themselves masters of the town of Mam Caton, and of Calasur, which signifies the red fortress.

There were three thousand of Toumen's subjects got together in the town of Hezarpen, the residence of the Sede of Toukai, who had

A company of a hundred men.

up the passages of the mountain, and fortify'd themselves. As they did not observe the Mussulman laws, they committed so many disorders, that the emperor was weary of their insults, and resolv'd to besiege the town.


The troops on their arrival, began to attack it; and at length our valiant soldiers, seconded by the good fortune of the emperor, took it by assault, tho it was thought impregnable. The rebels were chastis'd: some were cast headlong from the top of the mountain, others were slain, and their heads carry'd to build towers, as usual.

Timur march'd from Ilkhan to the citadel of ~~Ilkhan~~ of which the herd of Tagatchi had made himself master. The men of this herd guard'd it with a great deal of care; but their measures were broken by the strength and valor of our troops, who did some memorable exploits at this place. They carry'd it by assault, put all the garison to the sword, and built towers with their heads, to strike terror into other

CHAP. XLVI.

War against the Ouganians, inhabitants of the mountains, south of Candahar.

THE Ouganians had some time ago a man of the mountain of Coub Solyman, to give notice that they were willing to submit themselves to the emperor, and to desire from him a Derogah, which was granted: but as some time after it was brought that they had revolted, the army march'd towards their country, with order to fight 'em. This order was

Book II. obey'd; and there was a bloody battel. The  Mirza Ali Aicoutmur, and some of the troops were wounded; and Nikepei Chah, in losing his life against these infidels, obtain'd the glory of martyrdom *. These sad accidents excited the courage of the valiant Akitmur; he cast himself at the emperor's feet, to beg leave of him to permit him to return against the enemys, that he might continue to employ his life in his service, which he had entirely consecrated to that use.

Timur, who knew his intrepidity, fearing lest he shou'd run headlong into too great dangers, refus'd what he demanded, tho many regiments, which had not had the boldness to withstand the enemy, had left the field of battel. In the mean while, Ramadan Coja, who thought it a crime to turn his back upon the enemy, kept firm in his post, and made a brave resistance. Timur commanded Bachi Coja Uzbek and Cham-scaddin to fall upon 'em; and as they executed this order, Aid Coja, a young man, who had laid in ambuscade on the ridge of rock, dexterously took hold on one of the enemys by the hair of the head, dragg'd him to the ground, and cut off his head, which he carry'd to the emperor: this was look'd upon as an heroic action from so young a man.

At length, all our brave soldiers fell upon the enemys on every side with so much courage and resolution, that thro the assistance of heaven and Timur's good fortune, they made themselves masters of the fortress, and oblig'd

* The Mahometans make it an article of their faith, that those who are kill'd in the wars against the infidels are martyrs.

* The fortress of Couh Solyman built upon this mountain.

the perfidious Ouganiens to come out of it, who were deliver'd to the foldiers, and according to the laws of Genghis Can, put to death. Chap. 25.

From thence the emperor began his march to Candahar, to which place he had already sent Gehan Chah Behader¹, Moubacher, and Eskender Cheiki with troops. Those lieutenants had seiz'd on the avenues of the place at their arrival, and begun the siege; but having had an opportunity to fight, by an effect of the good fortune of our prince, they carry'd the town by assault, seiz'd on the governor of the province, and having put him in irons, sent him to court, where he was hang'd.

Timur being come to Candahar, gave a handsome reception to Gehan Chah Yakou: he honor'd him with several presents, and at length sent him to the town of Calat² at the head of an army. When he was arriv'd there, he besieg'd it, and made several assaults, in which the enemys had sometimes the worse, and sometimes the better; but they cou'd by no means defend themselves against the cunning of the engineers, who, by undermining ruin'd the walls and breast-works on all sides; and by this means the general made himself master of the town, the walls and buildings of which he order'd to be raz'd; and then rejoin'd the imperial camp, at the same time that Mirza Miran Chah, returning from Custer and the Rebat³ of Sultan Mahmood, came before the throne.

¹ Also call'd Gehan Chah Yakou, son of the Emir Yakou.

² A town in the kingdom of Coran near Candahar, different from Kelat in Candahar and Eilat in Armenia.

³ Rebat signifies a post.

C H A P. XLVII.

Timur returns to Samarcand.

SISTAN, Zabulestan, and their dependences, being brought into subjection to Timur, there remain'd no more enemies in these provinces, every one obeying him, which made this monarch desirous, since the charming season was come, to return to the capital city of his empire. He gave both the military and civil government of Candahar to Saïfel Berias Candahari: and he presented Saïef Nicodari with the Toman of that country: and as the Emir Yakou dy'd in the winter, he gave his place to his son Ghera Ghah; and at the same time disbanded the Emirs, officers and troops, and leaving the army, departed with all expedition to Samarcand, where he arriv'd in fourteen days.

The princes and princesses of the blood, accompany'd with the other ladys, and all the great lords, Emirs, Cheriffs, and other principal persons of the empire, perform'd the ceremony of kissing the earth, and wishing the emperor joy upon his conquests. They also made the usual presents, and sprinkled upon his head pearls, precious stones, and gold dust: and gave thanks to God for his happy return, and distributed alms. All these demonstrations of zeal and respect were soon after renew'd on the birth of a prince, who about this time was born to the emperor, and who was nam'd Ibrahim Sultan: and the Emirs distributed among the people a great deal of money, testify'd their joy by magnificent entertainments and publick feasts; and

and in the assemblys of pleasure they serv'd up Chap. 48.
wine to encrease the joy and diversions. But
this prince dy'd very young, and his death
caus'd in the emperor a sorrow natural to a fa-
ther.

C H A P. XLVIII

Timur marches into the province of Mazendran.

AFTER the emperor had staid three months at Samarcand, he resolv'd to march to Mazendran; but first prepar'd to enter Iran: The army during its march us'd extraordinary expedition to get to Fermed; the engineers built a bridge upon the Gihon, which the imperial troops had no sooner cross'd, than all the kingdoms of Iran were in a consternation.

Timur encamp'd at Balc, and staid there some days expecting to be join'd by the troops of the province, pursuant to an order he had before given; and his army was soon considerably increas'd, by the arrival of about a hundred thousand horse, whose commanders were arm'd with cuirasses and bucklers.

We have above *related that the daughter of *Chap. 39.
Gehaluddin Chah, prince of Fars, had been de-
married in marriage for the Mirza Pir Muham-
med, son of Gehanghur, son of Timur: where-
upon in the beginning of the year 785, the em- An. Dom.
peror sent Ghaderi Itou and Hadgi Coja, his 1383.
ambassadors to Fars, to conduct this great
princess to court; which they did accordingly
about this time.

Book II.

The princess Serai Mule Canum, and Touman Aga, accompany'd with many other ladys, went to meet her, and receiv'd her with all imaginable ceremonies and pomp; they sprinkled over her precious stones, pearl-seed, and gold-dust; they prepar'd marriage-feasts; and in short, nothing was wanting that was usual in public rejoicings. After the marriage-feast was finish'd, Hadgi Coja was accus'd before the throne of many crimes committed in the last campaign, with design to raise himself above his quality: he was question'd upon these accusations, convicted, and being condemn'd, was put to death.

Timur then review'd his army, which he had assembled from all parts of his dominions, and began his march as soon as it was ready. When the court was come near the river Morgab, the princess Canzade, wife of Mirza Miran Chah, met 'em, coming from Herat, to receive her spouse; and the Mirza Calil Sultan was committed to her care, in order to be educated by her. Timur left the princess Touman Aga at the camp, and sent the empress Serai Mule Canum, and the other ladys, to Samarcand. He decamp'd at the same time, and taking the road to Burkei Tach, came down from Seracs, from whence he went to Baverd*, and arriv'd at Nefas†, where he learnt that the Emir Veli having fortify'd the citadel of Douroom, had shut himself up in it, and furnish'd it with a good number of soldiers. Then the Cheik Ali Behader, Sevirngik Behader, Mobacher, and other Emirs, who commanded the

* The same as Abiverd.

† A town in the desert of Kivac, between Corassana and Carezem, long. 93. 20. lat. 48. 45.

vanguard of the army, met that of the Emir Chap. 48.
 Veli, in a place nam'd Ghiaoukerch. Each party was rang'd in order of battel; and at the same time advanc'd. Mobacher began the attack with vigor: an arrow which was shot at him hit him on the face, near the teeth, and went out by his neck; but this brave warrior, notwithstanding his wound, rush'd a second time upon the enemy, whose head he cut off, and flung into the middle of the field. This action astonish'd the enemys, and put 'em to flight; and Timur, that he might recompense Mobacher for this heroic action, made these places of Ghiaoukerch and Hourber, Siorgals, and gave 'em to him, that he might enjoy the revenue of these lordships for ever. From this place they departed for Douroun: our men besieg'd this castle, and made several assaults; and at length having taken it, put the governor and the troops of Veli to the sword.

The court having quitted Douroun, went to Tchilaoun, a country full of villages; and having cross'd the river at Ioriana, encamp'd at Chalaman, where the Hazares and Sades had express orders not to separate from their squadrons without leave, on pain of death; that they might employ themselves in building bridges on rivulets and rivers, and doing other useful works, as cutting down trees in forests, making causeways, and clearing the roads.

The vanguard of the two armys meeting, engag'd in a bloody fight. Hadgi Mahmoud Chan Isfari gave marks of an extraordinary valor and strength; but he was wounded in the hand with a sword. Akitmur, and his son Cheik Timur, fought like brave men, and made the enemy's ranks give way. These skirmishes continu'd twenty days: but on the twentieth,

as

Book II. As the army of Timur was passing the bridge of Derwich, the Emir Veli advanc'd, and fought with heroic valor and resolution. But because the power God gives to armies, to whom he assigns the victory, is more than human, this unfortunate prince was vanquish'd, and oblig'd to fly. Our soldiers closely pursu'd him, took several of the bravest of his army, whom they put to death, as also many others, who not finding means to escape, serv'd to fill the country with the dead and wounded.

The troops, after this compleat victory, encamp'd the camp, and then that all necessary precautions for their security might be observ'd, the vanguard and rearward had orders to cause embankments of earth to be call'd up round their own regiments, to make a sort of ramparts with their bucklers, and before those ramparts to fix stakes, which might serve as obstacles.

The Emir Veli attacks the army during night.

The day being almost gone, Timur, who has his great experience always foresaw danger, order'd thirty of the best company's of his army to lie in ambuscade in a certain place. When night was come, the Emir Veli, accompany'd by a great number of soldiers of Malendran, sallied out of the fortress to attack the camp. For which purpose his men made the great cry on the side of the right wing of the army, where the prince Miran Chah was encamp'd. Veli was marching to fall on him, and being arriv'd at the trenches, they struck with their swords and lances against the palisades and palisadoes which had been fix'd there, tho' not without the loss of many of their men who fell one upon another in some ditches.

Then the prince Miran Chah march'd against 'em in person, and order'd that all the troops he commanded shou'd let fly a shower of a-

rows

now together; and at same time the thirty Chap. 48.
company's all prepar'd to fight with sword in hand, and rushing with fury out of the ambuscade, fell upon the enemy; and as the Emir Veli, among other artifices had caus'd a great many pits to be dug in those roads, in which they had drove stakes before they fill'd 'em with water, part of his army, in the flight, fell into these wells, and there miserably perish'd.

The emperor finding the Emir Alcoutimur absent, demanded where he was; he was answer'd, that he was gone to pursue those of the enemy's war who had fled. In the mean while the army, which march'd all the rest of the night, found themselves in the morning at the town of Ester Abad, capital of Mazendran, where they burnt and destroy'd every thing, without sparing either old men, women, or children, or even sucking infants.

This war happen'd in the month of Chawal An. Dom.
in the year of the Hegira 786. Pear seiz'd the 1384-
Emir Veli, who the same night, carrying with him his wives and children, and guarded by some soldiers, went to Dangan by the way of Langaru; he left 'em in the fortress of Chir-decoph, and at length march'd to Rei. The invincible Timur sent troops under the command of Godadad Housseini, Cheik Ali Beha-
-din Omar Abbas, Comari Einac, and other captains; to pursue him; and they made such haste, that they almost overtook him at Rei. This prince was so afraid of losing his life, that he went into the woods of the country of Ruscinda, which were inaccessible, because of their thickets, and the height of some mountains which were near; and at length escap'd from his enemies who pursu'd him.
The

The history of Timur-Bec.

Book II. The Emir Veli was son of Cheik Ali Bisoud, one of the Emirs of Taghitmur Can; and at the time that the Serbedals were so daring as to bathe their hands in the blood of this king, Veli, who was present at the assembly, fled to Nelsa, and his father was massacred with his master. This young lord having found means to make himself powerful in this town, at length went to Ester Abad, of which he made himself master; insomuch that Locman Padi-chah, son of king Taghitmur, being frighten'd by Veli, fled, and wander'd about as a vagabond from country to country, till at length lifting himself in the service of Timur, (who conquer'd Ester Abad) he receiv'd from his liberal hands the government of this town.

CHAP. XLIX.

Timur marches into the province of Irac Agemi.

THE emperor order'd the Emirs Acbouga and Outchcara Behader to pass the winter at Ester Abad with the ammunition of the army; and out of every ten men he chose three to accompany him. He march'd towards the kingdom of Rei, and his troops were no sooner arriv'd in that country, than Sultan Ahmet Cheik Avis Gelair⁴, who was at Sultania, astonish'd at the march of the emperor, fortify'd the castle of this town, and garison'd

⁴ The grandson of Sultan Avis, son of Buzurk Hassan, whose wife Bagdadcarun, daughter of the Emir Tchottah, Sultan Aboufaisd had espous'd. Buzurk Hassan was the first of the Ilkanians.

it with his best soldiers under the command of his son, nam'd Acbouga; and then fled towards Tauris. In the mean while Omar Abbas, at the head of sixty horse, march'd to Sultania, to gain intelligence of the state of the place; and his journey was so successful, that he got there, notwithstanding the terrible snows and excessive cold. Some days before, the enemy having news of his march, resolv'd to fly; whereupon they took with 'em their young prince Acbouga, and departed with all expedition for Tauris: but they were not all gone out of the fortress when Omar Abbas arriv'd with his sixty soldiers; who with intrepid courage, enter'd the place sword in hand, and made himself master of it. He employ'd all his industry to preserve it, till he shou'd receive orders from the emperor who was at Rei, to whom he sent Irmakchi to advertise him of this happy conquest.

CHAP. L.

The emperor Timur marches to Sultania.

AT the beginning of the spring Timur set out for Sultania; and in the mean while Saïd Adel, one of the greatest lords of the court of Cheik Avis, whom Chah Chuja had heretofore brought from Sultania, was summon'd by the emperor to court, being then in the service of Sultan Zein Elabeddin, son of Chah Chuja, who died in the year of the Hegira 786, which number was compos'd out of the letters of the epitaph made on him, which was,

Book II. *Haizer Chah Chuja* : It is pity to great a man
as Chah Chuja shou'd die.

Timur, as a singular favor, order'd this lord to be near his person ; who to obey this order, departed from Chiraz with expedition, to have the honor to kiss the carpet of the throne ; where he was no sooner arriv'd, than he was distinguish'd by the emperor's goodness, and favor'd with many presents ; besides which Timur gave him the government of the province of Sultania, and the countrys dependent upon it, after having order'd Mehemed Sultan Chah to leave him in those quarters with an army, that he might make himself master of the neighbouring countrys.

An. Dom.
1385.

After this expedition, which was in the year of the Hegira 787, and in the year of the Leopard, Timur returning from Sultania, laden with the glory he had acquir'd by his victory, enter'd into the mountains of Ruffeindar. The princes of this country not only had not strength to resist him, nor prudence enough to come before Timur ; but they sought safety by flight before the army arriv'd there. By this means the country was brought in subjection to Timur, and his officers easily made themselves masters of it ; the troops pillag'd it on all sides, and the soldiers were enrich'd with the booty.

The Emir Veli, who was retir'd into a place nam'd Yalous, was so terrify'd at this action, that he fled ; and our victorious emperor turn'd upon the towns of Amol and Sarye, with design to make himself master of them, as soon as he cou'd come at 'em by the way of the mountains of Couhestan. But Seid Kemaleddin and Seid Razieddin, who were the princes of these places, to save themselves from the evil which threaten'd 'em, sent their Nais,

bes,

bes, that is, their lieutenants, with presents of precious stones and gold dust, to lay at the feet of the emperor, with a considerable tribute to be paid him: so that by their lieutenants being admitted to take an oath of fidelity to the emperor, they coin'd gold money which they honor'd with the name and surname of the invincible Timur; and to raise his glory as high as they were able, they made prayers for him in all the mosques of their country. At length Timur commanded 'em to obey Locman Padi-cha, to whom he had given the principality of Ester Abad, that so he might oblige 'em to preserve their fidelity and obedience, and not undertake any thing which this prince shou'd not approve.

CH A P. LI.

Timur returns to Samarcand, the capital of his empire.

WHEN the officers of Timur had got full possession of the provinces of Mazendran, Rei, and Rustembar, as far as Sultania, the imperial standard march'd to the seat of the empire. When the Court had cross'd the Gihon, and were arriv'd at Samarcand, the inhabitants wish'd all happiness and prosperity to the emperor at his arrival; he there pass'd the summer in the pleasures of the season, and the winter at Zendgir Serai, in the delights of conversation and entertainments. During this winter, Tocatnich Can sent to Tauris, by the way of Derbend, an army of near ninety thousand men, who were for the most part infidels, of a cruel and merciless nature, and who had

Book II. been brought to war, that they were almost covered over with wounds and scars. In this army were twelve Aglens', princes of the royal blood of Touchi, the chief of whom was Bic Poulad; there were also several Emirs, as Aza Bei, Yagli Bei, Cazanchi, and others: they march'd to Chirouan, and being arriv'd in Azerbijana, block'd up Tauris.

The governor of this city was not able to manage his affairs in such a conjuncture; whereupon the inhabitants, thro the counsel of the Emir Veli, who after his defeat retir'd into this town with Mahmoud Calcali, fortify'd the walls of this and some other neighbouring places. They repuls'd our troops with vigor, and defended themselves courageously for eight days: but at length the army of Tocatmich Can, being more numerous than that of the besieg'd, made it self master of the town; and the Emir Veli, with Mahmoud Calcali, fled to the country of Calcal. The Can's army pillag'd the place, and exercis'd all imaginable crueltys and abominations: the desolation was universal, and all the riches, treasures, and rarities, which had been amass'd there during a great many years, were consum'd in less than six days in this dreadful pillage. After the army had entirely seiz'd on this booty, and bound all the slaves, it return'd before the winter was past, by the way it came.

The emperor having advice of this devastation, was incens'd at the violence and tyranny which had been exercis'd against the Mussulmans; in the mean time, he resolv'd to conquer the kingdoms of Iran, which he was oblig'd to by his laws, because this great country

* All the princes of the blood of Touchi are surnam'd Aglens.

not being at that time govern'd by any prince who was powerful enough to execute his orders there, every thing was in confusion, by reason of the different sentiments of those who commanded.

And as the ambition of neighbouring princes daily increas'd, he was expos'd to the like evils with those which, as we just now mention'd, happen'd to Tauris.

CHAP. LII.

Timur enters the kingdom of Iran, where he stays three years successively.

IN the year of the Hegira 788, which answers to that of the Hare; Timur having resolv'd to make war in Iran, caus'd orders to be publish'd, that the Tavachis ^{An. Dom. 1386.} should get together, with all expedition, the troops of the army, and that the soldiers of all the provinces, with their officers, should come immediately to court.

This royal order was every where executed, and the army being in a condition to depart, Timur nam'd the Emir Solyman Chah, the son of Daoud, and the Emir Abbas, with two others, whom he left at Samarcand, to govern the empire of Tranfoxiana in his absence.

The emperor having cross'd the Gihon, happily arriv'd at Firoz Couh, after many days march; and then Seid Kemaleddin, prince of Sari, sent his son Seid Cayaseddin to court, with

* A kind of commissarys for levying the troops, like the Chaour among the Turks.

Book II.

many soldiers to guard him, to be enroll'd among the other officers. About this time also our monarch, who was able to discover the most secret affairs of state, and understood the carriage of the princes and governors of countries, had advice of the actions of Malek Azzeddin, prince of the little country of Lor, of the great crimes his insolent people had been guilty of, and of the robbery's he had committed on the highways with impunity, it not being long since his subjects had beat and plunder'd a caravan, which was going thro their country in pilgrimage to Mecca.

Timur had no sooner heard of this abominable action, than he resolv'd at the same time to revenge the pilgrims on these robbers; and when he had advice of the new effects of their further malice, he thought himself oblig'd to chastise these villains, and to deliver the hometans from their tyranny: upon which he order'd that of every ten men of his army, two of the bravest shou'd be chosen, and arm'd to the best advantage; which being executed, this prince quitted his camp, and mounted his horse at the head of his flying camp, compos'd of his most valiant soldiers, and march'd with all expedition to Lorestan. As soon as he was arriv'd there, he caus'd Ouroudgurd and the neighbouring places to be plunder'd; and at length he made himself master of Corram Abad, a fortress almost impregnable, whither the robbers of that country were retir'd. He caus'd it entirely to be raz'd, and the greatest part of 'em being taken, they were flung headlong from the tops of the mountains.

At the same time Akitmur Behader, Omar Abbas, and Mehemed son of Sultan Chah, fell sick

sick thro the intemperateness of the air, or rather by the decree of providence which sent 'em from this world into the other; and Coja Ali Muaid Serbedai, who was wounded in battel, died also some time after. Chap. 53

As soon as Timur had brought into subjection this little country of Lor, and deliver'd it from the disorders of these robbers, he decamp'd, and rejoin'd his army, which came to meet him in the plain of Nehavend.

CHAP. LIII.

Timur marches to Azerbijana, or the country of the antient Medes.

THIS monarch having advice, that the Sultan Ahmed Gelair, who had rais'd troops, was departed from Bagdad to Tauris, again left his camp with some troops under the conduct of Cheik Ali Behader, and the same day march'd with expedition at the head of his army to that city.

But Sultan Ahmed hearing of his march, was not willing to wait his coming, but fled, and made haste to Bagdad.

Timur sent Seifeddin, with the other Emirs, and troops to pursue Ahmed. When they had overtaken his army, he was so terrify'd, that abandoning his led-horses, baggage, and all his furniture, he fled; and as soon as our soldiers had sufficiently pillag'd his baggage, they made the great cry *Souroun*, and return'd.

In the mean while Elias Coja, son of Cheik Ali Behader, having march'd by Nakchivan with a small number of horse; found Ahmed in

Book II. the salt pits of Nemeczar, where this Sultan, guarded by several troops, made a brave resistance, by which many were wounded on both sides. Elias Coja himself receiv'd a wound, which disabled him; and this accident sav'd Ahmed from the danger his life was in. This captain's wound, join'd with his bad constitution, caus'd in him a violent distemper, which had kill'd him, if the good fortune, which always attends Timur's officers, had not favor'd his recovery; and at length he was heal'd, except that he remain'd lame, the distemper being got into his foot.

On this occasion there were many massacres and pillagings at ' Nakchivan. Comari Einac having receiv'd some displeasure from the government, set fire to the great dome of the palace of Ziaelmule, to revenge himself; and in it there perish'd, in a miserable manner, fifteen persons, who were choak'd by the smoke of the straw which was brought thither.

Timur having entirely brought into subjection the kingdom of Azerbaijan, went to encamp in the neighbourhood of Chenob Gazane, where Seid Razi Coja, Hadgi Mehemed, Bendghir Cattat, Cadi Cayafeddin, Cadi Abdellatif, and other great lords and Sheriffs of this country, came to make their submissions to him; and afterwards a sum of money was impos'd on the inhabitants of Tauris*, as usual, for having saved their lives; which the receivers collected.

The court and army staid at Tauris, and the neighbouring places during the summer. Timur

* A town of Azerbaijan, long. 81. 15. lat. 38. 40.

† Capital of Azerbaijan, long. 82. lat. 38.

commanded Sarek Adel^{*} to be put to death, whom they cast down from a wall, after having pillag'd his house; and then the most skilful masters in every art and science were sent to Samarcand. Chap. 23.

In the mean time Mahmoud Calcali seiz'd in the province of Calcal on the Emir Veli, who, flying to save his life, wander'd from country to country. He was deliver'd to Comari Einnac, who put him to death, in conformity to the laws of Genghiz Can; and his head was laid at the foot of the throne. Death of Emir Veli.

In autumn, the government of Tauris was given to Mehemed Sultan Chah, and the imperial standard was carry'd to Nakchiran. The army then march'd to Merend^{*}, and to the defile of mountains nam'd Dez; then it cross'd the river Ourous^{*} on the bridge of Ziaulmulc, and encamp'd on its banks. There is not a more magnificent bridge in the world than this: it is in the territory of Nakchivan near the town of Youlaba, where the Ourous run at the foot of a mountain. The bridge is built of stone, and is of vast strength: it is flat at top: the stones are so well join'd, and all the building is so just and perfect, that the most skilful architect can't view it without admiration. Among the arches of this bridge there are two so high and broad, that the breadth of one is more than sixty Ghez^{*}, and of the other more than fifty five; they having been measur'd at low water: and because when the waters are highest the stream of this river

^{*} Adel fled for refuge from the court of the Ilkanian kings to that of Timur.

^{*} A town of Azerbijana, long. 80. 45. lat. 37. 50.

^{*} Ghez in Persian signifies a cubit.

Book II. runs thro' the great arch, which is contiguous to the mountain, the lower part being empty, they have there made a Caravansera. At the two ends of the bridge there are gates made out of the same rock, of unparallel'd beauty.

The army having decamp'd from this post, arriv'd at the citadel of Corni, which they immediately attack'd, and took by assault. They seiz'd on Cheik Hassan the governor, and brought him, with a chain about his neck, to the emperor.

They afterwards came to the town of Surmalu, situate on the bank of the Ourous: and having invested it on all sides, they took it by storm sword in hand. They immediately raz'd it, and seiz'd on Tontan Turcoman, the leader of this people, whom they bound with cords, and laid before the throne.

From Surmalu the army came to Cars, a town strongly built with stone, and which in that country was thought impregnable. A certain Turcoman, nam'd Pirouz Baç, was governor of this country: The strength of the place, and the difficulty of coming at it, because of its situation, made him proud; insomuch that after having well fortify'd the citadel and walls of the town, he imagin'd himself able to resist the army of the emperor, who order'd all the machines to be got ready, and that as soon as the Gourghes shou'd be beat in all the quarters, and the great cry Souroun made, the place shou'd be invested on every side.

The enemy wanted not courage and resolution to defend himself: tho' he was briskly assaulted, yet he gave marks of his intrepidity and valor; but at length perceiving that victory declar'd her self by degrees for the imperial army, Pirouz Baç submitted with a thousand

tes-

testimonys of his obedience, tho the wrath of Chap. 34.
the victorious troops cou'd not be appeas'd but
by the pillage of the town, which was at length
raz'd to the very foundations.

CHAP. LIV.

*Timur enters Georgia at the head of his army.
The description of the Persian way of hunt-
ing; as also of the Gerke and Nerke.*

GOD hath recommended to Mahomet to
excite the Musselmans to make war on the
enemys of their religion, because it is the most
excellent of all actions; and the Alcoran prai-
ses above all others, those who risk their for-
tunes and lives in such a war.

This was Timur's only aim, from the begin-
ning of his rise to his death; but he particu-
larly executed it at this time by beginning a war
which he had a long while projected.

His zeal exciting him to march to Teflis, when
he was decamp'd from before Cars, he mounted
his horse in a rising ground nam'd Ac Bogra, at a
time when the violence of the cold was extraordi-
nary, and the air was full of ice and frost.

He continued his march by Kitou, and at
length arriv'd at Teflis. The strength of the
walls of this town had render'd the Georgians
proud and insolent, in imitation of the other
infidels; insomuch that confiding in the citadel,
which they had very well fortify'd, they pre-
par'd for a vigorous defence.

? Capital of the kingdom of Georgia, long. 83. lat. 43.

Book III. The emperor gave orders for the Emirs and other officers prepar'd with all expedition the arms and machines necessary for assaulting the place. After having put in order the baggage, the body, and other parts of the army, they enter'd the town; and at the same time cry'd out, *Allahou Echer*, God is great, which is the cry call'd *Souroun*, already spoken of. Then the emperor took his sword in his hand, and our soldiers cover'd with their great bucklers made a general assault on the town. All the brave men of the army gave marks of an extraordinary valor; and apply'd themselves so briskly to their duty, that thro the assistance of heaven this royal town was conquer'd, and prince Malek Ipocrates taken prisoner, and brought to the emperor: he was bound in chains, and carefully secur'd.

Explication of the Gerke and Nerke, in the Persians hunting.

After this conquest, the emperor departed from Teflis, and resolv'd to follow the diversion of hunting: so the Emirs receiv'd his orders, and the troops form'd the *Nerke*, that is, being rang'd in a circle to hinder the passage of the beasts, they surrounded a great space of ground full of plains and hills; and some time after was the *Gerke*, that is, the men who form'd this circle, constantly approaching one another, the stags, deers, lions and other wild beasts of all sorts, were shut up and brought into a narrow compass.

When the emperor, the princes his sons, and other princes of the royal blood, were enter'd into the circle according to the customary rules of the chase, and had taken their diversion in killing many wild beasts, the soldiers who enter'd in

* King of Georgis, a Christian, who afterwards turn'd Mahometan.

their turn into the inclosure, took all they cou'd Chap. 31
with their hands, of which they kill'd the best,
and let go the others: in short, there was more
game kill'd than the troops cou'd carry away,
and they were oblig'd to abandon a great part
to the maw of the birds of prey, and other
savage beasts*.

C H A P. LV.

Timur returns to Carabagh.

TIMUR departed from this country with
such good fortune, that thro the divine
assistance, his troops in the road, and the neigh-
bouring places, made themselves masters of ma-
ny towns and castles, which were in the hands
of the infidels: they releas'd the country from
their tyranny; and having pillag'd all the places
which these men had with so much difficulty
conquer'd, they enrich'd themselves with a vast
booty.

The victorious army encamp'd at Cheki, from
whence the emperor sent several bodys of troops
against the infidels. The Emir Gehan Chah
had orders to fall upon the Lekezians, who
were entirely pillag'd and the major part slain.

The Emir Mehemed Dervich Berlas enter'd
with a body of troops into the mountains of
Cheki, where he took many fugitive rebels,
whom he put in irons, making 'em slaves; and
the foldiers seiz'd on every thing they had.

* A more complete account of this way of hunting prac-
tis'd among the Eastern nations, may be seen in the history of
Genghiz Can. Book III. ch. 7. p. 260.— 266.

Book II. Argoun Chah, and Ramadad Ebn, with other troops march'd with expedition to the province of Tencgout, where they perform'd several warlike exploits: they kill'd a great many men, plunder'd all the places, and carry'd away to many captives, that all the country was surpris'd.

The Emir Mehemed Bei, and the Emir Moussa, also brought their troops into the country of Acdgeb, and made themselves masters of it: and Timur at the head of a victorious army caus'd the standard of the holy war which he undertook, to be fix'd at the foot of mount Alburz, where he made known the purity of his intentions, and the strength of his faith, by hymns and psalms, which he sung to the praise of God, in token of the triumphs of the mussalman religion, and the destruction of that of the infidels.

The Emirs at length return'd, after they had fully executed their commission, by the conquest of the castles and towns of the infidels, the greatest part of which were razed, for the chastisement of their disorders, and by the booty which they brought away. These generals join'd the imperial camp in a place nam'd Cabale, or Cambale. They also made themselves masters of the red castle, and razed it: from thence they came to Carabagh Surcab*, from whence the army march'd to encamp on the banks of the river Cor†, over which they built a bridge, which was carry'd on by the means of floats of reeds and little sticks, which the emperor had order'd to be made. He cross'd this bridge at the head of the army, and march'd to Berda‡, the inhabitants of which submitted without making any defence.

* Calasurk.

† Cyrus.

‡ In the province of Aran, between the Black-sea and the Caspian, joining Georgia, long. 83. lat. 40. 30.

Timur being at Carabagh, order'd Ipocrates, *Chap. vii.* prince of Teflis, to be brought before him, whom he had before imprison'd and put in irons. He had a conference with this prince concerning the mahometan religion, invited him to be a Mussulman, and gave him a thousand good reasons to persuade him to it; and he communicated to him so much light in relation to the law of Mahomet, that thro a special grace, that of the vocation enter'd into his mind, which had been hitherto full of darkness. In short, Ipocrates quitted his error, and turn'd Mussulman. He declar'd there was no other god than God; and that Mahomet was not simply a man as others, but that he was the envoy of God, and the seal of the prophets: and in fine, having confess'd the divine unity, he was rank'd among the true Mahometans.

This man had a coat of mail, which was reported to have been that which the prophet David had forg'd in a smith's shop, and which he had made proof of by several times soaking and drying it.

He presented this piece to Timur, with other curiosities remarkable for their antiquity. This monarch receiv'd 'em, and not only permitted him to be of the number of his favorites, but thro the zeal which he had of winning over to him the hearts of others, he permitted him to return home, after having honor'd him with several presents. All this good treatment from Timur, was the cause that most part of the people of this kingdom embrac'd the mahometan religion.

* In this passage we see a specimen of those trifling ideas the Mahometans have of ancient history: there are many more ridiculous in the following part of this work.

Book II. At this time the Emir Chir Miran, prince of Chirvan⁷, who by his power, reputation, honesty, and noble descent, was distinguish'd among the kings of that time, came to court; and as he was a man of good sense, he submitted entirely to the emperor; and by this means he had the honor to kiss the carpet of the throne. He offer'd handsom presents; and among other things several parcels of rarities, each of which, according to custom, was compos'd of nine pieces.

Among the other galant actions of this prince to render himself agreeable to Timur, the following was most pleasing to this monarch: After having brought out all the parcels of rarities, which shou'd have been nine pieces of each sort, he presented him with eight captives which he had bought; and as some one said that the ninth piece was wanting, he presented himself to make up the number: which so highly pleas'd Timur, that he not only loaded him with favors and gifts, but even gave him the kingdom of Chirvan with its dependences, and the title of king of Chirvan, under which title he became famous in the world.

Timur also receiv'd tokens of submission from the sovereigns of Ghilan⁸, who for several ages, confiding in the strength of their walls, and the difficulty of access to their mountains and woods, as also in the number of their marshes and sloughs, had not obey'd any king. The princes who then reign'd sent their children and

⁷ A province near Armenia, which has for its capital Chiraki, long. 84. 30. lat. 40. 30.

⁸ A province on the south shore of the Caspian sea, whose capital is Derbavend, long. 87. 20. lat. 36. 30.



officers with presents to the foot of the throne, who promis'd for their masters not only a ready obedience, but also the payment of a tribute.

Then the *Qhan Ali Behader*, who had the care of the emperor's baggage, arriv'd at Carabagh by the way of Ardevil; and the emperor pass'd the winter on the banks of the river *Oron*.

CHAP. LVI.

The march of Timur to Berda. The motion of the army of Capchat. Defeat of the troops of Tocatmich Can.

AS soon as winter was gone, that is, at the beginning of the year of the Hegira 789, which among the Moguls is call'd the year of the *Goordule*, the invincible Timur march'd to Berda, having receiv'd notice that Tocatmich Can of Capchat had rais'd a great army into the field, which he had sent by the way of Derbend*, contrary to the counsel of Ali-Bei Gencograde, Orone Timur, and Acbouga Behrine. These three Emirs, famous in the empire of Tofchi Can, were remarkable for their prudence, candor, and nobleness of mind; they daily endeavor'd to shew the falsity of the sentiments of Tocatmich Can, and represented to him the way he ought to take: they counsel'd him to preserve the rights of the emperor Timur

An. Dom.
1387.

* A town of Armenia, on the W. shore of the Caspian Sea, long. 59. lat. 41. It is also call'd *Behabibon*.

Timur's Father is Capchat.

in full force, to treat his officers with civility, and to acknowledge the obligations due to this monarch, who had put him in possession of the empire of Touchi, and of the throne of his ancestors, by his power, favors, and extraordinary goodness, without which he could never have attain'd to that grandeur and majesty to which he is at present rais'd; that thus he was oblig'd always to remember the favors he had receiv'd from this great prince, and to give marks of his gratitude, since the thoughts of it always occasion'd joy, and it is sometimes the sole cause of the rise of a kingdom. "Who knows, say they, but that in some change of fortune, (from which God preserve the Can!) he must not be oblig'd to have recourse to the protection of the great monarch Timur, as to an asylum?" In short, the sincerity of these lords, who only sought his good, was of great service to the kingdom. Till Caranek, who had kill'd his own father, found means to approach him, together with Ali Bei: but as soon as these disturbers of the state had an easy access, Togatmich, at their persuasion, turning from the right way, broke off the good correspondence he had kept with Timur, proudly declar'd himself his enemy, and brought an army into the field, which he sent into Azerbaijan.

Timur had speedy notice of these things; and there was no sooner advice brought him that they perceiv'd on the other side of the river Can a great body of strange troops, than he order'd Chah Ali Behader, Aincotmur, Osman Abbas and other Emirs, to cross the river, and to observe the disposition of affairs in that country, and to inform him of it: tho at the same time he prohibited their attacking the troops which were seen there, if they belong'd to the army of Togat-

Tocatmich, because of the treaty made with that prince. When these Emir's were departed from the camp, Timur, moved by his good fortune, sent after them the Mirza Miran Chah, Hadgi Seifoddin, and other princes, with troops to assist 'em, but they shou'd be attack'd. In short, Chacotto went first, coming up to the enemy's army, knew it to belong to Tocatmich Can: wherefore upon serious reflection they dissembled their desire of fighting, and immediately retir'd; but the enemy's attributing this action to cowardice, grew proud, and fell upon 'em, discharging all their arrows. Then our men perceiving themselves forc'd to it, bravely defended their lives: and a bloody fight ensu'd, tho' our Emir's were not prepar'd for it. The field of battel was near a wood, which hinder'd our men from fighting after their own manner, so that they cou'd not dogg the enemy, as they desir'd; and this situation was the reason that about forty horse were kill'd, and our Emir's, who were always admir'd for their valor, were put to the rout.

In the mean time the Mirza Miran Chah, who had cross'd the river of Cor, arriv'd with the troops he commanded: he saw this tragical spectacle, and at the same time fell upon the enemy. All his brave men fought 'em both on the right and left, killing all they met; insomuch that not being able to sustain the attacks of our warriors, they shamefully fled. Our soldiers pursu'd 'em as far as Derbend: they took a great many prisoners, whom the Mirza Miran Chah put in iron, and sent to court. Choride, brother of Mohacher, who was wounded in the fight, was of that number, and was brought to the imperial camp: but Timur affecting an air of gravity and resolution, did not only not punish



the wickedness of these miserable people, but rather chose to pardon 'em. He enquired of 'em concerning Tocatmich Can, as he had done before the last action, and shew'd the good will he bore to him by these words: "How could it be that your prince, whom I regard as my son, should treat me so ill, as to send an army into this country, without any provocation given him? For you know there is between us a certain right of fatherhood and sonship. And why is he the occasion of the loss of so many thousands of Mussulmans? It is requisite that for the future he abstain from this method of acting, which will bring shame upon him; and on the contrary, he must punctually observe the articles of alliance which we have sworn to, instead of rekindling the war which was laid to asleep." After our monarch had thus spoken to 'em, he set 'em at liberty, ordering 'em clothes and money, and a guide to conduct 'em; that they should pass thro' the midst of the army, and be sent back to Capchac, where they ordinarily dwelt.

The verses which the celebrated Cheik Sadi applies to God, may be properly refer'd here to Timur: "How can he deprive his friends of his favors, who so liberally distributes 'em among his enemys?"

After the Mirza Miran Chah, had repass'd the river Cor, he return'd to the camp by the banks of that river, and at length decamp'd to march to Gheuciche Tengkiz, which signifies the blue sea.

* The author of *Gulistan*, or *Rosarium Politicum*, a book of morality, translated into latin by Gessius.

CHAP. LVII.

The arrival of the empress Serai Mule Canum, and the princes her sons.

WHEN the court was at Ghenetche Tengkiz, the emperor had advice that Serai Mule Canum was coming thither with the young princes, the Mirza Charoc and the Mirza Calli, his sons, from Samarcand. He was so overjoy'd, that leaving his court at Ghenetche Tengkiz, he took horse, and went with expedition to meet 'em. He met this charming company at Merend, where the princes, with their mother, sprinkled, according to custom, gold and precious stones upon his head, in so great quantity that the officers were fatigu'd in gathering 'em up; and they then spread out their rich presents, ~~consisting of the most singular rarities.~~ Afterward the emperor departed from Merend to return to his camp, and at length march'd to the castle of Alengic, where there was a fortress commanded by the lieutenants of Sultan Ahmed.

Three days after his arrival, he order'd that the Emirs with their soldiers, shou'd in the night ascend the mountain which join'd this place, and as soon as it was day attack it. They executed this order, and making themselves masters of the lower citadel, with sword in hand they ruin'd it. Those who guarded it, being afraid, fled to the top of the fortress, the inhabitants of which were so bold as to refuse to surrender, tho' they wanted water. Yet at length thirst reduc'd 'em to despair; for being ready to perish, they capitulated, and promis'd with an oath to depart

ook II. depart out of the place, and going up to the besiegers: which was the reason that the siege ceas'd attacking it, and came down from the mountain. But the minute the besieg'd were ready to go out, there came a great cloud, follow'd by a large shower of rain, which in twenty four hours fill'd all the cisterns and reservoirs of water; and they had no sooner quench'd their thirst, than they broke their wood and treaty.

Timur hereupon order'd Mohamed Minke and Outchcar Behader to begin the siege; and this prince retir'd into the camp. He had sent before this enterprize the Chah Ali Behader against the fortress of Bayazid; but as soon as he arriv'd there, not thinking himself strong enough to carry the place, he was follow'd by the Emirs Haulgi Seifeddin and Aieoutman, at the head of a great detachment. At length they besieg'd the place together; attack'd it on all sides, beat down the walls, and ruin'd back the waters in so much that in a short time having taken and raz'd it, they put the governor in chains, and brought him to the emperor.

C H A P. LVIII

Timur's army marches against Cara Mohamed, prince of the Turcomans.

AT this time the emperor Timur having advice that the Turcomans were always molesting the Mussulmans, whom they attack'd not only in the ordinary caravans, but even in those of Mecca, to which the name of holy was given; and that no one cou'd pass safely by the places where they dwelt; he departed from the province of Nakchivan, and march'd towards
em,

em, after having sent orders to Mehemed Mi-Chap. 68.
 rere, whom he left at the siege of Alengic, to
 come immediately to the camp. He also or-
 der'd in the road, that the baggage shou'd
 march to Alengic, and stay there.

Then the emperor march'd with expedition at
 the head of his army, and as soon as he arriv'd
 at the castle of Dayazid, formerly call'd the fort
 of Hain, the troops pillag'd it, and plunder'd all
 that the inhabitants had left in that country. Pas-
 sing further, they arriv'd at the castle of Avenic,
 where Meier, son of Cara Mehemed, resided:
 they pillag'd all they found belonging to the
 Turcomans in the mountains and plains of those
 provinces, and in the neighbouring places.

From thence they march'd to the town of Er-
 zerum, which they took the same day they
 came; and Timur encamp'd on the banks of the
 river of Chiachour, from whence he sent an
 ambassador to Arzendgian, to persuade Tahar-
 ter, the sovereign of it, to make his submission
 to him. The ambassador was receiv'd with ma-
 ny honors and ceremonies. Taharter gave him
 a favorable reception, and treated him with all
 imaginable respect; he obey'd the emperor, and
 consented to pay the Carage; and having
 charm'd the ambassador by a thousand civilitys,
 he sent him back to his master.

Then our prince appointed three of his best
 squadrons, under the command of Mirza Miran
 Chah to go in search of Cara Mehemed, father

* *Tosfama's Van*, situated in the upper Armenia.

* A town formerly call'd Arzen-Arroum, and Erzerom, si-
 tuate in Bilad-Arroum, i. e. Anatolia, or lesser Asia; long. 77.
 lat. 39. 40.

* A town of Armenia; long. 74. lat. 38.

* A tribute which the Muscovite princes exact from the
 Christians and Jews, who dwell in their dominions.

† The chief of the monarchy of the black-sheep.

Book II. of *Cara-Turkoman*. *Cara* entered with his brave warriors into the lands of these disturbers of the people's peace, and after having plunder'd their cattle, horses, mules, sheep, and other goods, made the greater part of their wives and daughters slaves, which they brought away, and then rejoin'd the court.

Mehemed Mireke was also sent into this country on the same account with a body of men: the road which he took brought him by chance into the mountains, where he found a narrow passage stop't up, into which he march'd. The enemy perceiving him, oppos'd his passage; so that our brave men were oblig'd to draw their swords. Nevertheless, thro Timur's good fortune, they escap'd out of this dangerous place after a bloody conflict; and return'd with expedition to the camp.

Soon after, Cheik Ali, son of *Amir*, *Icbalcha* *Bargougi*, and *Kaly* *Contehun*, all valiant and intrepid men, put themselves at the head of another Squadron, to go in search of *Cara Mehemed*: they march'd every where with extraordinary diligence, and at length discover'd him; where he was retir'd to the top of an inaccessible mountain among steep rocks: nevertheless they attack'd him; our men did surprising actions, and *Lala Coja*, who had been the emperor's governor, was slain in the fight. At length the enemy got upon the ridge of the mountain, where he was out of our reach; upon which the Emirs thinking all their attacks wou'd be in vain, immediately return'd, and brought their troops to the imperial camp.

Timur then sent thither some other chosen troops under the conduct of *Geshm Chah Behader*; this captain also enter'd their country, which he plunder'd, bringing away a great number

ber of their cartel, arms, and other goods, which were distributed among the troops, who return'd to the camp in triumph. Chap. 38.

In the mean while Chah Malek, son of Caya-seddin Berlat, who was gone another way without the emperor's order, was found dead in a desert, where he had been slain by these robbers.

The emperor decamp'd, and march'd to the plain of Mouche, all the houses of which he caus'd to be plunder'd. He at length arriv'd at the city of Eclat, where the people submitted to him; and after having given 'em skilful commanders, he departed for the town of Adalgiaour, the prince of which came out to meet Timur, to whom he submitted; and having the good fortune to kiss the carpet, he laid at the emperor's feet as much gold and precious stones as he was able; he also made other presents, and at length being assisted by his good fortune, he was rank'd among the officers of this prince, who according to his wonted clemency loaded him with gifts. He not only cherish'd him, but gave him a large tract in the principality of his country and all his lands.

Timur continu'd his march by the lake of Van, and march'd to Bend Mahi, from thence to Afatac, where the baggage and body of the

A village at the foot of a mountain, from whence springs a little river; it has a plain twelve days journey long, call'd Sabrai Mouche, i. e. the plain of Mouche. It is in the lower Armenia, two days journey from Mia Farekin, and three from Eclat; long. 75. 50. lat. 39. 50.

The capital of lower Armenia, long. 75. 50. lat. 39. 20.

A place from whence a little river discharges it self into the lake of Van, and where are caught a great many little fish call'd Tarric.

The author of this work hath wrote a particular description of the lake of Van.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR

Book III. Chapter IV. In the first year of the reign of Timur, he sent his army to conquer the city of Van, and the lake of Van, which is a very famous place, and is the source of the river of Van.

CHAP. IV. The letter which Chub Chaja king of Persia wrote to Timur at his death.

THE victorious standard of Timur was carried to Van and Vastan; and Malek Azzeddin, who commanded there, being afraid of the army, shut himself up in a castle, which is a strong citadel, situate on the ridge of a mountain, and border'd on one side by a lake. The army us'd all their art to take it; they invested the fortress on the land side, and admitted nothing which is practis'd in sieges; they also attack'd the walls of the town. Two days after Malek Azzeddin was inspir'd by his good genius to obey Timur; he came down from the fortress, and had the honor to kiss the carpet of the throne; but the inhabitants, by reason of their hatred, revolted from their prince, and wou'd not receive him; they fortify'd the avenues of the fortress, and put themselves in a posture of defence; whereupon our troops erected battering rams, got ready their machines for casting of stones, and assaulted the place.

This famous fortress, which had never been conquer'd by any sovereign, was taken by the

A town S. E. of Van, and at six leagues distance, in the lower Armenia, on the bank of the lake of Van, long. 77. 50. lat. 34. 50.

arms of the great Timur on the twentieth day of the siege; and our troops enter'd it sword in hand: they slew a great number of the rebels, and cast down several from the top of the mountain, after having ty'd 'em neck and heels. And thus they clear'd the world of these villains, who had no other employment than that of committing disorders and robberys.

Then there arriv'd at court an ambassador from Arzendgian on the part of Taharten, who sent presents of abundance of curiosities, silver money, the finest horses, and mules of a particular breed.

The prince's letter contain'd a testimonial of his respects and obedience, offers of his service, and a resolution to be always firmly attach'd to Timur's interest.

The emperor gave a very favorable reception to the ambassador, and dispatch'd orders, wherein he confirm'd the principality of Arzendgian to Taharten, as heretofore, and dismiss'd him with a present of a fine garment, with which he was very well pleas'd.

The emperor order'd the castle of Van to be demolish'd. There are several incredible things related concerning this fortress, and among others, that it was built by Cheddad son of Aad, on the brink of a very steep mountain, and that Yaghiyar Andcondi, who was prince of a Toman, having one day undertaken to raze it, he could not so much as loosen a stone tho' he employ'd a great number of soldiers.

Timur departing from his camp, happily arriv'd at Semraz, where after having gratify'd Malek Azzedin by his favors, he left him in

A town of Azerbijana, long. 29. 42 lat. 37. 40.

Book II. the government of all Persia, and at the same time began his march.

The prince of Ermitizec had at that time the honor to kiss the imperial carpet; and after having made his submission, he acquitted himself of the duties a servant is oblig'd to perform, and gave great marks of his obedience. His first submission was the reason that Timur left him the principality of Ermit, and made him a present of a young slave, of extraordinary beauty.

The emperor at length march'd to Meraga*, and from thence to Ghilan, where he staid some days; he had before that sent a man nam'd Merahem to Zein Elabeddin, son of Chah Chuja prince of Chiraz†, to summon him to come to him, with order to tell him that his father was particularly attach'd to the emperor, with whom he had made an alliance; that at the time of his death he had wrote a letter to the emperor to recommend his son to him; that which now it belong'd to him to make appear his willingness to continue this friendship; and shew some marks of his zeal; and that as a testimony of this union, he ought to come with expedition to the emperor's court, which was not far from him, there to receive the favors of this monarch, and have a handsome reception; that he might at length return home with all the satisfaction he can possibly expect, not only as to himself in particular, but what might procure the advancement of his friends, and abasement of his enemies.

As we have had occasion to mention the letter of Chah Chuja, we have thought proper to insert a copy of it here, that the reader may have a detail of all the circumstances.

* A town of Azerbaijan, long. 82. lat. 37. 20.

† Capital of Fars, not so ancient as Esfazar, the Persopolis of the ancients, long. 88. lat. 29. 36.

*A letter writ to the emperor Timur by Gela-
leddin Chah Chaga, king of Persia, and
prince of Cabul, just before his death.*

"**G**OD is truly living; there is no other
" God than God: every thing is done by
" his order, and you must return to him.
" May it please God that this letter come
" safe to the hands of him, whose majesty and
" power extends as far as heaven, which is the
" support of empire; who is the most accom-
" plish'd of all those, who make profession of
" practicing justice and mercy: the liberal pro-
" tector of the greatest kings, the most equitable
" and just of the emperors of the earth, and of
" this time; whom God always favorably re-
" gards, because he is the Pole of truth; **THE**
" **EMIR TIMUR GOURCAN**: whose
" reign and empire may God establish for ever,
" and who may be the masters of the world,
" and who may be the masters of the world,
" for refuge. God grant that this emperor may
" always be aiding in the execution of the di-
" vine orders, and in rendering all due respects
" to the commands of the Almighty: and lastly,
" may this prince, who has no equal in the
" world, arrive to the highest pitch of his de-
" sires.

" Then having thus wish'd you all happiness,
" and given you all the praises which are requi-
" site to maintain union among true friends;
" we put you in mind that great men esteem the
" world as the theatre of inconstancy, and the
" place of the most strange events; and that
" men of learning are never attach'd to trifles,
" nor transitory pleasures and beautys, because
" they

“ they know that the corruption of all things
 “ being necessary, the duration of creatures is
 “ impossible; for which reason they have pre-
 “ fer’d the delights of eternity to the possible
 “ things of this world. In short, I have em-
 “ ploy’d, poor and indigent as I am, as far as in
 “ me lay, these few days which I have receiv’d
 “ of God, to exalt the standards of the faith,
 “ to observe the order of the law and of justice,
 “ and to execute the commandments of our pro-
 “ phet in all those things which the Creator has
 “ put into my power; and infine, I have only
 “ apply’d my self in the sight of God, and for
 “ the love of him, to preserve the people under
 “ my protection in perpetual peace; and by the
 “ divine grace, I have carry’d my self with all
 “ the world, as well as I was able, in the man-
 “ ner your highness cou’d expect.

“ As to the treaty of peace and alliance made
 “ between us, designing never to break it, I re-
 “ gard the gaining of the imperial friendship
 “ as a great conquest; and the chief of my
 “ wishes hath been to remain firm and constant
 “ in this peace, and, if I dare say it, to have
 “ in my hand the treaty I have with you at the
 “ day of judgment, lest you shou’d reproach me
 “ for having broke my word.

“ You have continually loaded me with favours
 “ thro your goodness; they have drawn upon
 “ you the praises and approbation of every one;
 “ and the manner in which you have bestow’d
 “ ’em is the cause that they are known through-
 “ out the world.

“ As I am at present call’d before the tribunal
 “ of the sovereign master of the universe, I
 “ thank his divine majesty, in that I have done
 “ nothing wherewith my conscience can re-
 “ proach me, notwithstanding any thing I can

“ with

“ with for; because notwithstanding the faults
 “ and sins I have committed, which are infe-
 “ parable from human life and the deprav’d na-
 “ ture of men, God hath liberally granted what-
 “ ever I could desire: and I have had all the
 “ pleasures I could expect, during the fifty three
 “ years I have staid on earth.

“ Thus with a spirit full of confidence, at-
 “ tending that the beneficent and merci-
 “ ful God will pardon my faults, I have an-
 “ swer’d, whensoever he hath call’d me, that
 “ I am ready to obey. In short, I die as I have
 “ liv’d, only carrying with me the word of the
 “ unity of God, and burning my eyes and my
 “ desires towards the Creator alone, who finds
 “ nothing agreeable in us except our good
 “ works; and I have abandon’d all the vanities
 “ of this world.”

“ I pray God to give his blessing to this mo-
 “ narch, who is as wise as Solomon, and as
 “ great as Alexander; to preserve for a long
 “ time his life and empire, to augment the
 “ bounds of his empire, and to stretch out further
 “ the name of his dominion: that all men
 “ may be under the protection of his justice.

“ In consideration of the sincere union be-
 “ tween you and us, I thought it my duty to let
 “ you know the state of all things. Tho it be
 “ not necessary to recommend to you my dear
 “ son Zein-Elabeddin, God grant him a long
 “ life under the shadow of your protection; for
 “ I leave him to the care of God and your ma-
 “ jesty, as well as my other children and bro-
 “ thers, having always regarded your alliance
 “ and friendship as the greatest treasure I can
 “ leave to my successors. I don’t doubt your
 “ performance of the treaty, not only as the
 “ maintaining of treatys is a point of religion,
 “ which

Book II. " which we are oblig'd to have regard to, but also
 " because of the good-will you have always
 " shown to any who belong to me on every oc-
 " casion.

" I therefore beseech your majesty to look upon
 " on all the princes who wait upon his person
 " with an eye of distinction, according to your
 " usual custom, and to grant 'em your protection
 " in all their affairs; so that the people of this
 " present time may see the marks of it, and it
 " may be declared to all future generations:
 " and that the envious, who for a long time
 " have wish'd my ruin, may have no cause to
 " rejoice at my death, nor to take advantage of
 " my family; but on the contrary, be oblig'd
 " to pay respect to my memory, and your majes-
 " ty's merit.

" I also beg of you to say the *Patibha** and
 " other prayers for your sincere friend, who has
 " the happiness to depart out of this world in
 " peace and alliance with you, that thro' the
 " blessing of the prayers of a prince so great and
 " happy, my people may know that God hath
 " been merciful to me, and rais'd me up among
 " the saints. This is what we pray your ma-
 " jesty to execute, as our last will, of which
 " you being the depositary, it will answer in
 " this world and in the next.

" Lastly, I beseech the Almighty, that be-
 " cause of your majesty's good works, he will
 " assist you always with his favors, and make
 " the rest of your reign happy."

* The first chapter of the Alcoran, which the Turks call,
 as we do the Lord's-prayer.

Timur-Bec, after the death of his father, Agem, the good fortune and prosperity of Zein Eddin Elahodda was almost at an end; he would appear before the emperor, Timur, and in an extravagant manner, he would make an avowal of this, and would be brought into the presence of the emperor, with his hands and rebovs crossed, and to Fars and Irak. In the autumn of the year of the Crocodile, which answers to the year of the Hegira 789, this monarch prepar'd to conquer these two kingdoms. He compos'd the vanguard of his army of the best troops, which he sent before; and as well as the baggage, to march in the winter, at Sarek

An. Dom.
1387.

and the other to guard the baggage, and the imperial standard, with the rest of the army, march'd towards the kingdom of Fars, whose capital is Shiraz, an agreeable city, which had formerly been the residence of the kings of Persia for many years.

The emperor having march'd thro the country of Hamadan, arriv'd at Gerbadecan,

* A town of Chahabian, a province of Persia, long. 86. lat. 25. 25.
* The town of Persepolis, long. 88. 20. lat. 30.
* A town of Chahabian, long. 85. 27. lat. 38.
* A town of Chahabian, long. 85. 25. lat. 34. It is also call'd Ghilpaighan.

his army the order of battle; and thence he went to encamp before the city of Ispahan.

Said Muzaffar Cachi, uncle of Sultan Elbeddin on the mother's side, and governor of the city for this prince, came out, accompanied by Coz Ruknaddin Saadi and all the lords, Cereiks, doctors of the law, and other principal inhabitants of the city, to implore the emperor's mercy. They had the honor to lift the imperial carpet: Timur received them favorably, and treated them with friendship and clemency.

Timur enters Ispahan.

The troops having seiz'd on all the ayes of the city, Timur enter'd it in triumph, and retir'd into the fortrels of Tabarruk. He then sent a garison to Ispahan, the command of which he gave to Akkourtly, and return'd to his camp, where he regulated the number of soldiers which should be left in the city, and the order of the garison. He then gave the city to the hands of his officers, which order was put in execution.

The chief men and elders of the city went into the imperial council, where the sum settled which was to be paid to redeem the lives of the inhabitants, to whom quarter had been given. They consented to it, every one tax'd to pay his share of it; and they sent commissariys to collect the money.

The quarters of the city were shar'd by the Emirs, and it was order'd that every one should send one of his men as a commissary to collect the money.

* A city of Chouhistan, the present capital of Persia.
86. 40. lat. 32. 25.

* The fortrels of Ispahan is thus call'd.

commanders collected should be resorted to the court of Shahr-Muhammad and Mehemmed Sultan Chah. Timur heard of this, and the grandees of Ispahan.

He sent into the city to see what was the matter.

But he told him that a rash young fellow, the son of a merchant of Ispahan, named Ali, by trade a smith, came in the night to be beat in the city, and at this time a company of rabble, got together, which design'd to show their disobedience. They surrounded the quarters of the merchants, and the commanders, and cut their throats, and then they went to the quarters of each quarter, who were wife and brave men, defended against the attacks of these villains.

Several soldiers, who were gone into the city on particular occasions, were massacred in the night, and Mehemmed son of Catai Behader was of this number. In short, there were more than ~~thousand~~ of our men kill'd in this sedition.

But the sword of the city, which was the sword of the city, and endeavor'd to destroy, and as long as they were masters of 'em, that they might hinder the passage of our troops; and thus these seditious fellows laid the foundation of a grievous rebellion, to execute the designs with which their chimerical imaginations had flatter'd 'em.

The next morning the circumstances of this rebellion were made known to the emperor. He fell into a violent anger; so that he immediately order'd the army to march against the city, and take it.

Our brave warriors at the same time executed this order. Instances were made to hinder the effects of it; but the affair being begun, they

Back it was their retreat from it. By the inhabitants more constrain'd to fight to defend their lives; and Beian Timur Aebonga was killed at the occasion, which so animated our troops, they carry'd the town by assault. Timur sent to guard the quarter of the Cheriffs, and the street of the Turkes, where the doctors of the law dwell, and particularly the house of Coja Imammedin Vaez, tho' this great preacher had been dead a whole year.

The emperor order'd that all the inhabitants should be put to the sword, and that they should be chastis'd with all sorts of punishments for their revolt, and the massacres they had committed.

The houses of the honest men, who during the disorders had sav'd our warriors from the insult of the rebels, were preserv'd, by which means a great number of lives were preserv'd, and any of the rebels who were taken alive were put to death.

Timur's rage was so great, that he order'd the Tomans, Hezares and Sedes, to furnish a certain quantity of the heads of the inhabitants that every one might share in the punishment these perfidious persons; and Tavatchi of Divan were nam'd to be the controllers and depositaries of those heads that were cut off.

It was reported by men of credit, that the soldiers of our army, who were not willing to kill the Mussulmans, bought heads of the executioners, and carry'd 'em as if they had cut themselves. At first a head was sold for 10 Dinars: Cupeghis; but when every one was furnish'd with the number they were tax'd, a head was sold for no more than half a Dinar; at last no one bought any. Thus every one

* A sort of money at that time in use among the Tartars.

they met was slain; and a great number who had quarter in the day-time, and who fled in the night, found the way cover'd with snow, and had the misfortune to be surpris'd next day by the foldiers, who, upon revenging the death of their companions, follow'd the track of these fugitives, brought 'em out of the places they were hid in, and put 'em to death: which is a token of the depth of the divine decrees, and that God will finish whatsoever he has begun.

The least computations, which are writ in the registers of the Divan, of the number of the men who were slain, amount to seventy thousand heads, which were laid in heaps upon the walls of the city, and of which there were at length built towers in several parts of the city.

In short, since the war began, God has not made any people feel a more cruel effect of his wrath than this, to revenge the deaths of three thousand innocent Mussulmans kill'd by this insolent rabble.

The great Siege happen'd on monday, the 10th day of the 10th year of the Hégira. An. Dom. 1387.

If we are agreed, that in consequence of the strange effects of the infinite providence of God, the things which happen in this lower world by generation and corruption, have any relation to the motion of the heavenly bodys; we may say that all this happen'd very near the time when the seventh of the celestial triplicitys was in Gemini, and the conjunction of the two unfortunate planets, Saturn and Mars, was in the sign of Cancer.

C H A P. LXI.

Timour marches to Chiraz, the capital
of Fars or the great Persia.*

TIMOUR after his victory and the conquest of Ispahan, appointed Hangui Bei and Nounan Chah to govern this city for a year, and march'd towards Chiraz. Zein Elabeddin, prince of Persia, had no sooner receiv'd notice of his coming, than he fled to one of his conspirators call'd Mansour, who was governor of Tollar†, tho' they were at variance. Zein Elabeddin said in this to that man who'd do, who to avoid the fear of the conqueror, was the first. He went to Mansour, and put out considering that he who indiscreetly trusts his enemy, still does his own good fortune, exposes himself to the blame of all the world. Zein Elabeddin being arriv'd at the bank of river Doudanke*, Chah Mansour bring'd his troops over to his side.

* Chiraz was capital of Persia before Ispahan, the present capital of the province of Fars. It was the seat of the Sassanid kings, after they had abandon'd Ecbatana or Persopolis. Formerly call'd Cochir, a town of the great Indus, which is part of Chirchik, long. 54. 12. N. Here is a great river, over which Timur king of Persia built a famous aqueduct a mile long, by which water is carry'd up to the town. Abulfeda says this was the most ancient in the world.

† Capital of the province of Sapor, which is part of Fars, long. 87. lat. 29. 15.

* A river which runs by Tollar.

And as, according to the Alcoran, the temper of soldiers, or rather the carnal nature of men, tends to insubordination, the soldiers of Zain Elabeddin, having been informed of the obligations that were laid upon them, came over to Chah Mansour, and there remained but few with Zain Elabeddin, which was the reason that Mansour sent other soldiers to seize the prince, and bring him to Tostar. They put him in bonds in the castle of Selaf, and at length Chah Mansour caus'd those soldiers to be imprison'd, who had so much lately abandon'd their master, and in the mean time they had

The emperor arriving at Chiraz, fix'd his standard on the first day of the month of Zil-hadge, in the year of the Hegira 809; and at the same time his orders were observ'd by all the kingdom, which without opposition was brought in subjection to his officers, and registered in the dominions of Timur.

An. Dom.
1387.

The emperor's army was much commended, in gaining the possession of the kingdom without resistance; and that what is not attain'd by fatigue and labor ought not to be call'd a conquest.

The victorious standard was erected, and all the governors and Kelivis of the kingdom had the honor to kiss the ground on which Timur stood, at a place nam'd Fast Carage, without the city. They agreed to pay a thousand Toman's Ransom, and to convey 'em with expedition to the royal treasury.

A Toman is worth twenty French crowns.

to receive the sum, which he paid into his hands.

At this time they kept a feast, which was held with Timur's presence. They took the Countess in his name; and after he had perform'd the duty of prayer and sacrifice, he retir'd to his camp.

Chah Yabak, prince of Lerd, nephew of the deceas'd king Chah Chuja, with his son-in-law, and his eldest son the Sultan Mubarak, as also Sultan Ahmed prince of Kirman, and brother of Chah Chuja; and Abou Ishac, grandson of Chah Chuja, who came express from the town of Sardjian; and all the neighboring sovereigns; as also the Atabecs of Lor, and Gourghin Lar, who are said to have been of the race of Gourghin Milad; having all made their submissions, had the honor to be present at the feast; they made presents, and were treated with magnificence, and us'd 'em with all imaginable civility; while in the mean time the troops went to layge some countrys which were not yet brought under subjection.

When the kingdom of Fars, with its dependencies, was entirely subdu'd, and the name of Timur establish'd in it, the sacra

* A kind of bounty, where the Countess presents with the praises of the prince then reigning.

* The publick sacrifice is a custom, and is performed with sheep. The sacrifice of the oxen is most common in a town of Fars, long. 30. lat. 29.

* A kingdom in the middle of Coressana, At present it is only a province of Persia. Its capital is Sardjian, long. 90. 20. lat. 29. 25.

* A nation in Coourestan.

* A town of Fars near Kirman,

who are call'd Mimbach, and the Debirs, were employ'd in recording the great exploits and actions done at that time. They wrote letters, which they sent to Samarkand, in the most acceptable manner possible; and after having seal'd them with the imperial seal, they sent them by couriers call'd Mobaches, who are employ'd in carrying of good news, to Samarkand, the capital of the empire, in Cochen, and to all the other countrys and provinces in subjection to Timur; which great actions were publish'd in all the mosques, where the Coran was read.

CHAP. LXII.

Reasons which induc'd Timur to return to the capital of his empire.

It is observable, that this last

affair'd to him his authority and authority. As the most perfect things are more easily alter'd than others, there soon grew disturbances in the

A courier, who came from Transoxia in seventeen days, brought advice that a war was rais'd in that country, and that Tocatmich had violated the treaty, and sent a powerful army thither. This army of Capchac, the commanders of which were Bick Yarok Aglen, Bick Yarok Aglen, Aifi Bei, Satgan Behader, and other leaders, having march'd by the town of Sa-

Secretaries of State in Persia.

ganac,

Book II. ganac^a, came to that of Sabran^b, and Timur Coja Acbouga, who was Governor of it for Timur, did his duty in the defence of the town, and vigorously resisted the besiegers, who us'd all their efforts to take it; which notwithstanding their valor they cou'd not do; being constrain'd to raise the siege, they went to ravage other places.

The Mirza Omar Cheik, who was at Andecan, got together all the troops of this quarter, and march'd against 'em; the Emir Solyman Chah and the Emir Abbas, with the troops that remain'd at Samarcand, went to join Omar Cheik, having left to guard that city the Emir Lal, brother to Tagi Bougai Berlas, and Cheik Temour, brother of Akimur, Behader. They cross'd the Sihon together, and met the enemy's army in the field of Juclik, five leagues from Orrar. This expedition was order'd in the autumn of this year. The Persians were rang'd in order of battle, and began the combat, which continu'd till night. Omar Cheik, the most valiant and dauntless man of the rash'd into the very middle of the main body, he pass'd thro' all the enemy's army, and was at a great distance from his own. When his followers no longer saw him, they began to melt their strength, and were defeated; and the Emir Abbas was wounded with an arrow. In mean while the Cheik, accompany'd by a good fortune of the invincible Timur, retir'd safely from the midst of his enemies, and with expedition to Andecan, where he rall the troops which were dispers'd.

There then came news that Ancatours, nephew of the Emir Hadgi Bei Ircanout^c, being

^a Towns of Capchac.

^b A herd of Tartars.

ful of the favors he had receiv'd from the emperor, had also violated the peace; that he was departed from ~~the~~ ^{the} head of an army, which ~~was~~ ^{was} in Scramand ~~Tachkent~~ ^{Tachkent}, and that the troops having committed great crueltys, had ravag'd the country.

Omar Cheik had advice of it, and at the same time assembled the troops of Uzkont, and came to Cogende, where he learns that the enemy were gone to Andecan by the road of Chackcham. He immediately return'd to cut off their retreat, and came up with 'em on the banks of the Sihon before Aesiker. The troops of both partys having secur'd the passes, encamp'd in view of one another, and march'd in the same posture for some days upon the banks, till they found an opportunity of coming to blows.

One night Ancatoura made use of a stratagem of war: he left a thousand men in his camp, and march'd at the head of the rest, ~~to the south of the river,~~ ^{to the south of the river,} to induce the others to believe that all the army was yet there. He made so much haste, that he found a proper place to pass the Sihon, which he cross'd, and at the same time Omar Cheik march'd against him. The two partys being in view, there ensu'd a battel, in which the prince behav'd himself with courage: but being far surpass'd him in number, he was ~~defeat~~ ^{defeat}, and enter'd Andecan. Anca-

* I believe the author is mistaken, and has put Mogolistan instead of Geng, or that he thinks them the same, as is imply'd in other places.

? A town, N. of the Sihon, long. 101. 10. lat. 42. 20.

toura pursu'd him thither, and was resolv'd to have made himself master of all the avenues of the town to besiege it; but Omar Cheik, excited by his valor, and trusting in the divine assistance, immediately sallied out sword in hand, and like a lion fell upon the army of the Getes, who were far more numerous than his own. In the mean while his valor made him rush into the midst of his enemys, whom he fiercely attack'd with his lance and sword; but Tonkel Behader made after him sword in hand, laid hold of the bridle of Omar's horse, and led it out of the field.

Ancatoura was not willing to fight any longer; he return'd, and took the road of the country of the infidels. The prince Omar sent troops to pursue him; which they did for three days, insomuch that a great many dragoons of the Getes were slain. The Emir Solyman Shah, the Emir Abbas, and among the chiefs of Couchons, Temourtach, Bazar-Beg, and others, who retir'd after they had been vanquish'd in the fight of Juclik, staid to guard Samarcand. They made the inhabitants of the suburbs and the neighboring places enter into the city, and sent Temourtach to Termed to secure that. When the enemy arriv'd in those countrys, they only pillag'd the towns; but some of their troops, which went to Becara, and were there join'd by others of the army of Tocatnich, who came by Garezem, resolv'd upon besieging that city.

Tagi Bougai Berlas was then in the place with Atilmich Couchin, and Derbi Coudel who had fortify'd the walls. These defended themselves, and vigorously repuls'd the

* A company of a hundred horse.

enemies; inasmuch that in the several attacks they made, the best of them had always the worst, and defeating them, they rais'd the siege, and march'd by Carachi and Cuzar, as far as Kionten on the banks of the ... The Emir Abbas at this time died of a wound he receiv'd from an arrow in the battle of ...

C H A P. LXIII.

Timur returns to Samarcand; and gives the government of Fars and Irac to the family of Mouzaffer..

Timur being at Chiraz, on advice of ... sent to Samarcand ... the Emir Chah Abbas ... the army, commanding him to make haste.

The emperor gave the government of Chiraz to Chah Yania, nephew of Chah Chuja; that of Apahan to Sultan Mehemed his eldest son; and that of Kirman to Sultan Ahmed brother of Chah Chuja. He invested the Sultan Abou Ilah, grandson of Chah Chuja, in the government of the province of Sirdgian, as also in the town and castle, which we shall hereafter have occasion to mention. It was made a principality by this measure, as also a Siorgat, that is a lordship, which he gave to him and his heirs for ever; and he honor'd all these princes with his letters-patent, seal'd with the imperial signet, which

Timur's march on Samarcand

Book II which is called Altomga, that is, the mark of the red hand.

The emperor then commanded the governors and learned lord, the Cheriff Gorjan, to go to the country of Fars, and reside at the royal city of Samarcand. He gave the same orders to the principal Emirs of the empire & king Chah Chirak to the Emir Aladin Buzak, and to many other lords who were the principal men of the state; and he sent to the same country the workmen and artists with their families, whom he found to be most expert and skilful in their respective trades. Then having resolv'd to return to Samarcand, he took horse at the end of the month of Muharrem, in the year of the Hegira 790, at a most lucky moment.

An. Dom.
1388.

When Timur was arriv'd at Herat, the brave Pehlevan Muhadded Corasani, governor and prince of Abrecoun, sent an ambassador to inform him, that it not being proper to leave the town without a governor, he besought him to send a Deroga, that he might have the happiness to kiss the ground in presence of the emperor; in which case he would come with expedition to court. Timur sent this Toukel-Baquir Chah, who was no sooner arriv'd than Muhadded readily went to meet this monarch; and by the procurement of the Emirs, he had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet. When the victorious standard was arriv'd at Abrecoun, Muhadded paid his humble respects to Timur and after having offer'd presents suitable to his ability, he gave him a sumptuous feast, and was treated with all manner of civility by

* A river which passes by Chiraz.
* A town of Fars, dependent on Esfacar, long 87. 30.

emperor, who confirm'd him by letters-patent in his principality of Aghor.

The court at Samarcand sent to Buzhan and Tadjikistan, and other parts of the empire, to inform them of Timur's success. They fear'd before, they now thought less of him; some went to Carezem, others to the desert of Capchac; and the victorious standard having cross'd the Gihon, and reaching at the seat of the empire, was set up in the city of Samarcand.

Timur immediately sent Codedad Husseni, Cherk, Ali, Begler, Ghans Khan, and others, in pursuit of the enemy.

These princes march'd day and night to come up with 'em: they drov'e 'em as far as Bilen; and after having put abundance of 'em to the sword, they return'd to court.

Timur then sent a messenger to the king of India, to inform him of his success.

The king of India, who was then at Calicut, sent a messenger to Timur, to inform him of his success.

Timur then sent a messenger to the king of Persia, to inform him of his success.

The king of Persia, who was then at Isfahan, sent a messenger to Timur, to inform him of his success.

Timur then sent a messenger to the king of China, to inform him of his success.

The king of China, who was then at Peking, sent a messenger to Timur, to inform him of his success.

Timur then sent a messenger to the king of Japan, to inform him of his success.

The king of Japan, who was then at Kyoto, sent a messenger to Timur, to inform him of his success.

Timur then sent a messenger to the king of Korea, to inform him of his success.

The king of Korea, who was then at Seoul, sent a messenger to Timur, to inform him of his success.

Timur then sent a messenger to the king of Siam, to inform him of his success.

The king of Siam, who was then at Bangkok, sent a messenger to Timur, to inform him of his success.

Timur then sent a messenger to the king of Cambodia, to inform him of his success.

The History of Timur-Lac.

On the 11th of May, Couketchach, who on this occasion
showed no marks of that valor which is usual
in the hero of a triumphant army, had his beard
shav'd; and after having receiv'd severe re-
proaches for his cowardice, they painted his
face with vermilion, and put on his
head a conical cap, and made him
march in the front of the army.

On the contrary, Khatib, who had
shewn an heroic courage to the
enemy, and with thirteen men, kill'd
in the night three hundred infidels of
Kora's party in Yatchal near Cogende, and had
deliver'd out of their hands several of the inha-
bitants of Cogende and the countrys adjacent,
whom they had made slaves, and w^ho after-
wards sent to their country, I say, receiv'd, as a reward,
a country.

after many other considerable favors and ca-
resses from Timur, he was honor'd with the
priviledg'd order of Tercan.

And the Mirza Omar Cheik, who had
incontestable proofs of his valor by his
exploits, had the pleasure of being rais'd
to dignity and power by the favors of
the glorious emperor his father.

There is no greater reputation than to have the beard shav'd, and the
same is still much the greater in the common language.

Tercan is a dignity which whoever enjoys has great pri-
vileges confer'd upon him, and is observ'd in the history of
Genghis Can.

The end of the second book.

A MAP
OF
MOGOLISTAN,
one part of the Kingdom
OF GÖTÖ,
and the adjoining Countries.

League is to a Day.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10
11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20
Day Journey of 6 Leagues.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20



BOOK II.

Three bloody wars against Tocatmich Can
king of Gurgan. The conquest of his
country. The plundering of Muscovy,
Circassia, Bulgaria and Georgia. The
conquest of Persia, Mesopotamia, and
Coudistan. The war against the
Getae, and the ravaging of all Mogo-

Timur-Bec. began for his fifth expedition into
the kingdom of Carezem.

IN the year of the Crocodile, which answers An. Dom.
to that of the Hegira 790. Timur began 1388.
his march towards Carezem: he encamp'd
at Bagdad from whence he sent Condag Aglen,
and Tuglac Aglen with the vanguard:
these two princes had abandon'd Tocatmich
Can, and fled to the court of Timur.

Book III. When they had cross'd the river of Bagdadec*, they sent Aid Coja to discover the condition of the country; who meeting on the road a shepherd of Illicmich Aglen³, seiz'd him; and having question'd him concerning the condition of the enemy, sent him to court. Timur being inform'd of all he desir'd to know, continu'd his road to the river of Oednis⁴; which when he had cross'd, there came a deserter from the enemys, who said that Illicmich Aglen and Soliman Son had abandon'd the Kingdom of Carezem to save their lives, and were fled to Pocatmich Can, emperor of Capchac.

On this news Timur sent Mirza Miran Chah, with five other Emirs, follow'd by their regiments, in pursuit of the two princes. These Emirs march'd with such expedition by the road of Comline⁵ and Kiz⁶, that they overtook 'em, attack'd 'em, and made a terrible slaughter of their men: and having pillag'd their baggage, return'd in triumph laden with the spoils of the enemy.

Ruin of
the capital
of Carc-
zem.

Timur staid some days in the capital city⁷ of Carezem; during which time he order'd the inhabitants to go and live at Samarcand, and carry their goods with 'em. Then this great city was raz'd even to the very foundations, and sown with barley, to punish his enemys for their daring to raise war against him. Thus our prince ha-

* A river which falls into the Gihon below Bikunt.
† Prince of Capchac, King of Carezem, with Soliman Son whose sister he espous'd.

‡ A river which falls into the Gihon, and serves as a frontier to the kingdoms of Zagatai and Carezem.

§ A town of Transoxiana, long. 97. lat. 42. 50.

¶ A town of Transoxiana, long. 97. lat. 43. 50.

‡ Corcange minor, situate in Transoxiana on the Gihon, long. 94. 55. lat. 42. 10.

ing reveng'd himself, march'd towards his capital city, where he happily arriv'd in few days; and at his entry order'd the ensigns to be display'd in token of victory.

Now following Timur's wars, as his inclination and designs always tended to make kingdoms flourishing, and his subjects happy by the advantage of justice, every one call'd him the father of the people. But imagining he could not entirely make em happy but by being the sole ruler of the universe, he was oblig'd like other conquerors to strike terror into all parts, and severely to chastise those who resisted him; by which means his army's were so formidable, that they were compar'd to the tempests of heaven, because of the desolation they brought with em. Wherefore three years after this conquest, in the year of the Hegira 793, Timur resolv'd to continue the war in Capchac, and send Moulik, son of Timur Couthin, into Carezem, to reduce the whole of that kingdom, and settle it in its former state, according to his command. Moulik accordingly march'd, and brought it up to its ancient situation, and even surrounded with walls the towns of Cat and Kivac, and all the domains of the Caan, that is, that part of Carezem which Genghis Can join'd to the lands of Zagatai Can when he shar'd his empire among his children.

An. Dom.
1391.

Of the state of the most famous and illustrious houses of the Moguls.

Long. 95. Lat. 40. 38. near the Gihon.

S. E. of the Gihon, long. 95. 35. Lat. 39. 20.

C H A P.

CHAP. II.

Some accidents during Timur's expedition into Caucasus.

Rebellion
of Mehe-
met Mi-
reke.

As soon as Timur was departed for Carezem, Aboul Patch, younger brother of Mehemet Mireke, abandon'd Timur, he fled from Samarcand, and at night came to the great desert of Capchac; which he could not do so secretly, but Lalam Behader Coutechin perceiv'd it: wherefore he pursu'd him with much diligence, that having made use of all the horses of the army which he found on the road, he overtook him at Hissar: he found him sleeping on a horse, and demand'd that he should be deliver'd to his master. He went to seek his brother Mireke, who had quit- ted Timur, and sent for him. Lalam Behader took him by the collar, laid him on a horse, bound with cords, and brought him back the same way he came; and at Bocara deliver'd him up to Mirza Omar Cheik, to whom he told all that had pass'd between him and the prisoner.

Upon this the Mirza immediately wrote to Timur at Carezem; and in the mean while came with expedition to Samarcand, where he cho-

* Governor of Capchac, and son-in-law to Timur, having espous'd the Princess Sahar Bekt Begum, daughter of Timur: he was son of Chir Behram, and relation of Kai Cosru Carlan.

† Also call'd Hissar Chaduman, a town of Sagaman between the iron-gate and the river of Vacach, near the kingdom of Carlan; long. 100. 50. lat. 38.

Chap. 3

rowly examin'd the circumstances of this rebellion. He had advice, that Mehemet Mireke, not considering that Timur had honor'd him with his alliance, flatter'd him with the princess Sultana Begum his daughter, who was now big with child, nor reflecting on the loss of so great an Emperor's favor, of whom he had the government of the kingdom of Catlan and the neighbouring places; seduc'd by a flattery, which leads men into disorders, and blind at his good fortune, had neglected his duty to Timur, and was led away with a desire of making himself independent, notwithstanding the misfortunes several of his equals had fallen into, who had endeavor'd the like. Indeed Mireke's conscience reproach'd him a long time for his crime; but his ambition gaining the mastery of his reason, he at length resolv'd to revolt, and declare war against the emperor, at the same time bringing into his assistance the troops which were at Samarcand, and then march'd out of this town. The rebels pass'd by the town of Goleg, the troops of Catlan had already pillag'd the province of Termed, and all the neighbouring places; but that they were not able to force the town, because Fenour Tach, the governor, had courageously defended it, and plac'd chains cross the streets, to preserve it from the insults of these rebels.

When Mirza Omar Cheik was assur'd of the news, he departed from Samarcand, and came to Ilgazigage; he there got together the troops, with which he march'd in

* A village without Samarcand, on the road to Carchi in Transoxiana. There's another Ilgazigage in Corassana.



purport of Mireke. This latter having plac'd his men in order, had already plunder'd the houses of Dadmure Berlas, and Akimur Behader, governor of those countrys: he had made himself master of their effects, and had caus'd the arsenal to be open'd, from whence he had carry'd away all the arms and machines of war, and distributed 'em among a company of robbers whom he had assembled, and to whom he also gave horses and clothes. This rebel, being prepar'd to maintain the war against his prince, was so confident in this state of independency, and having got a sumptuous equipage, that he look'd upon the sun, if one may say so, but as an atom, not considering that enterprises and projects against the decrees of providence, have never any other effect than that which the rods of Pharaoh's magicians had in the presence of the rod of Moses.

It is true, that these rebels had no longer heard of the approach of Mirza Omar Chien, and his expedition in marching, than their insolence was chang'd into a shameful cowardice: a dread of coming to blows with so valiant a prince, seiz'd the hearts of these cowards, who fled, and were dispers'd upon the sole rumor of his approach.

This accident broke all the measures of Mireke, and put a stop to his designs: he had the affliction of seeing in a moment that power, with which he had been blinded, disappear: and he knew, tho' too late, upon what bottom it was founded, and what chimeras his pride and self-conceit had form'd in his imagination.

The rebel being frustrated of all his intentions, and reduc'd to a deplorable condition, was oblig'd to pass the river of Vacach, on

the stone bridge, call'd Fachlapru', and to fly into the kingdom of Catlan. He was pursu'd with extreme diligence by the Mirza, who having pass'd by Akhar and Firzani Gandigai', came to the bank of the river, which he swam over. And Mireke went to the narrow passage, nam'd Derci Dervaz', to seek the protection of Chah Gelaleddin', who refus'd it him, and prudently prohibited his entrance into the castle. He only told him the contents of a moral distich, which his father, a very prudent man, had learnt in his old age, to wit, that we ought to avoid, as far as in us lies, the company of the unfortunate, and to seek those whom fortune favors; in which number was the great Timur, on whom heaven continually shower'd success.

Mireke depriv'd of this protection, departed from the straits of Dervaz, to go in search of another asylum; but he was in very great affliction, because most part of his domestics accompanied him.

In the mean while, our men having gone over all the mountains and plains to seek Mireke, without hearing any news of him; the Mirza Omar Cherk went to encamp in a town nam'd Capchac, in the kingdom of Catlan; and he lodg'd in the palace of Mireke, nam'd Acferai. He staid there many days, hoping that some unforeseen accident, such as usually happen'd to Timur, wou'd bring him with honor out of the intricate affair this rebel had involv'd him in.

* Long. 101. 20. lat. 38. 30. It is call'd in persian Palsenghin.

* A village near the river Vacach, long. 101. 20. lat. 38.

* A defile of mountains leading from Catlan to Teber.

* Prince of the frontiers of Teber.

Book III.

He was not deceiv'd in his expectations; for Osman son of Arocu Omar, going to Samarcand with some domestics, and having pass'd the mountain Boutatou', luckily arriv'd at the brink of a fountain, where he observ'd the marks of the horses feet, which were gone out of the common road. He was inspir'd with a desire to pursue 'em, and he had no sooner pass'd some hills than he perceiv'd Mehemet Mireke, sitting with four valets, who had taken off their horses harnesses that they might feed on the grass: he immediately surrounded 'em, lest they shou'd get away; and Osman seizing on the horses, stopt the prisoness Mireke and his men, whom he put in irons: he then dispatch'd a courier to the Mirza, to give him advice of it, and forthwith return'd with the prisoners. He was on the road when he receiv'd orders to put Mireke to death, which he readily obey'd; and Mireke and his brother Abdul Fetch were executed. These traitors were punish'd for an example to others, and to verify the text of the Alcoran, which says, *That traitors and ingrateful persons are accur's'd by God.* The Mirza having put an end to these disorders by the death of Mireke, departed for Samarcand, where he had the honor to salute the emperor his father. At the time when Mireke revolted and departed from Samarcand, the Emir Gehanghir also went from Condor, to join the imperial camp with the Tomen of Bourouldai, Taican, and Aperi, besides which he was join'd at Balc by the Emir Yaghian Berlas at the head of the troops of Balc and the neighboring places. As they were marching together, the Toman of Bourouldai revolted

Death of
Mehemet
Mireke.

† Near the river Vacach in Caian above Ghulec.

and

and turn'd back. Gehancha inform'd the court of it, and return'd to pursue the rebellious Toman, in conjunction with Coja Toulief son of Oladgia Iton, brother of Bouroulai, and Pir Altaz, chief of the troops of Balc; they march'd with their expedition day and night, till they join'd the rebels at Bacalan, and burnt their houses and goods. The Emir Gehancha had receiv'd news of the revolt of Miran, and had learnt that he was encamp'd in the territory of Elisar Chatumian, with the troops he had lifted. This Emir march'd against him with his men rang'd in order of battle; while Coja Toulief came to Arhenk to take care of the troops which he commanded; and Pir Altaz went to Balc to bring away those which remain'd there; after they had all agreed to meet again on the bank of the Gihon.

Gehancha got there first; and having built some floats, cross'd the river, and encamp'd on the other bank at the head of his Squadron; when the rebels came, Isoud Bouroulai and his brother Isoud, at the head of the rebels, revolted with the thousands they commanded, which consisted of three thousand horse. They fell suddenly on Gehancha who had no more than sixty men; but this valiant general, excited by the good fortune of Timur, far from being troubled at the sight of so strange an accident, tho with so few attendents, put his trust in God, and with this small number of men fac'd the enemy, having the river at his back; and he and his men being cover'd with the great and small bucklers which they ordinarily us'd, they march'd courageously against the rebels. The combat was violent; they began with their arrows, and when they were

empty'd, they had recourse to staves and swords.

In the mean while Coja Youlef sent a man by the river to Gehancha to advise him to stand his ground, because he shou'd look to his assistance. This news did not a little strengthen our soldiers, who with a handful of men, resisted so great a number of the enemy: it rekindled their valor; they kept firm all the day, and when night was come, Coja Youlef, and Pir Alitaz, with 2 hundred horse, having join'd 'em, after they had swam over the river, they fell so vigorously upon the enemy, that they made 'em feel the effects of their courage by a hundred glorious actions; and the sun was no sooner risen, than victory declar'd her self on their side. The enemy shamefully turn'd their backs, notwithstanding the advantage of their number, which was twenty to one; they fled towards the river, which they cross'd, and return'd to Bacahan. It is remark'd in the Alcoran, That twenty brave men of resolution and courage alway defeat their enemys, tho they be two hundred in number. Our men pursu'd 'em and kill'd several; and the Emir Gehancha encamp'd at Condoz with his soldiers, very well contented with the victory. The fugitives of the hord of Bourouldai believing themselves pursu'd, past on farther; and having gone over the mountains of Hendoukech, they march'd to Cabul, where they found Aboufai'd Bisoud. The governor, thro an unheard-of ingratitude, which made him forget all the favors he had receiv'd of Timur, revolted also with 'em.

During these transactions, it happen'd that Abouga Bisoud, enemy of Aboufai'd, whom Timur had order'd to be seiz'd and sent to Mogolistan near

near the mountains of Eltai, having attempted to escape and get to his own country, was again seiz'd and brought to Timur with his feet and hands bound. The Emperor, hearing of the revolt of Aboufaid Bafond, was favorable to Achougar, and his chains to be taken off, and having given him the command of the hord of Bafond, which this rebel possess'd, sent him to Gehancha; and on his return to Samerand he even dispatch'd recruits to him by Hamadan Coia and other generals, ordering him to go seek the enemy whithersoever they were retir'd. Thus Gehancha and Coia Youtaf departed for Condoz and Bacalan; and having pass'd Hendoukech and Cabul, they join'd Junaid and Aboufaid at Lagaman; they pillag'd the houses of their hords, and ravag'd the country; and those who cou'd avoid the fury of the scymitars, fled into the country of Sende. The Emir Acbouga, having advice of it, departed from Herat with design to hunt them out, and was join'd in the way by Soudi Candahar, and the troops of Candahar, which he had got together: they pass'd many mountains and forests, and at length overtook these unfortunate persons; and having block'd up all the passages oblig'd 'em to fight, and so smartly repuls'd 'em, that Junaid, Bajazet and Abou-

Mountains in Mogolistan, long. 138. lat. 60. Here the Mogul emperors are ordinarily bury'd.

Langan or Langan, a town of the kingdom of Cachmir, frontier to Candahar.

A town of India, frontier of Persia, and at present under the dominion of the king of Persia; it was taken from the Moguls by Chah Abbas the second, father of the present king. It is situated in long. 105. 20. lat. 23.

faid,

...the loss of a great many of their soldiers, and the pillage of the little baggage they had left, had a deal of trouble to escape from our men, and fly to the town of Delhi. Our troops return'd in triumph to the place of their residence with all possible satisfaction.

Death of the grand Can, install'd by Timur.

When Timur was in the way to Carezen, Siorgatnich Can fell sick at Bocara where he died: his body was transported to the field of Kech, and bury'd near Goubecan Isage, under a mausoleum which himself had caus'd to be built there. After the reduction of Carezen, Timur return'd during the autumn to Samarcand, which city was magnificently adorn'd to receive him: and he immediately establish'd the Sultan Mehemet son of Siorgatnich Can in the place of his father.

Sultan Mehemet install'd grand Can of Zagatai

Then Timur excited by a fatherly love to his children, took an especial pleasure in practice to them, and the Sultan Mehemet, who says we ought to marry that we may have children, and multiply the species; wherefore he gave orders to his prime officers to make all necessary preparations for magnificent nuptial-feasts and the ceremonies of marriage: he even order'd a most solemn publick banquet, in which the inhabitants shar'd, and testify their joy: they adorn'd the great city with the most magnificent stuffs, and hung out branch'd candlesticks in all the streets: they prepar'd high and spacious tents in the delicious garden of Baghi Behridj, that is, the garden of paradise: they cover'd the ground with rich carpets, and stuffs of all colors enrich'd with em-

* Capital of India, long. 120. lat 20.
? A village in the territory of Kech.

broderys, and adorn'd with pearls and precious Stones. In this beautiful and magnificent garden, the great Emperor, according to the mahometan religion, was buried by the Sultan, and his bones

Mirza Ghasem with the princesses who were chosen as their brides, and who were as beautiful as the flowers. It was in the year of the

It was in the year of the
1800, that the crown of this vast empire
was settled in his august family by these happy
marriages. After the solemnity was said

Timor dismissed his troops; the Mirza Miran Chah returned to his quarters; the Mirza Omar Chah to his tent. Timur paid in the winter of 1402 and with all possible felicity and contentment.

Florida State University

STATE OF OREGON : IN THE COURT OF COMMON PLEAS

CHAPTER III.

1967-1968

2. ALLEGATIONS AND ISSUES

10-10-68

A scar had marked on the forehead of the
catholic Generalissimo of Castile.

misfortune which must necessarily happen to

him, and excited him to despise the gifts and
 things he had received from Timothy.

gave marks of his ingratitude on several occa-

inasmuch that he sent officers to levy

he was minister. This party was composed of the

* The Mahomedans believe there will always be in paradise

Young women who are not heavy will not like. They
are call'd Hoggs.

troops

1998, 1999, 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021, 2022, 2023, 2024, 2025, 2026, 2027, 2028, 2029, 2030, 2031, 2032, 2033, 2034, 2035, 2036, 2037, 2038, 2039, 2040, 2041, 2042, 2043, 2044, 2045, 2046, 2047, 2048, 2049, 2050, 2051, 2052, 2053, 2054, 2055, 2056, 2057, 2058, 2059, 2060, 2061, 2062, 2063, 2064, 2065, 2066, 2067, 2068, 2069, 2070, 2071, 2072, 2073, 2074, 2075, 2076, 2077, 2078, 2079, 2080, 2081, 2082, 2083, 2084, 2085, 2086, 2087, 2088, 2089, 2090, 2091, 2092, 2093, 2094, 2095, 2096, 2097, 2098, 2099, 2100, 2101, 2102, 2103, 2104, 2105, 2106, 2107, 2108, 2109, 2110, 2111, 2112, 2113, 2114, 2115, 2116, 2117, 2118, 2119, 2120, 2121, 2122, 2123, 2124, 2125, 2126, 2127, 2128, 2129, 2130, 2131, 2132, 2133, 2134, 2135, 2136, 2137, 2138, 2139, 2140, 2141, 2142, 2143, 2144, 2145, 2146, 2147, 2148, 2149, 2150, 2151, 2152, 2153, 2154, 2155, 2156, 2157, 2158, 2159, 2160, 2161, 2162, 2163, 2164, 2165, 2166, 2167, 2168, 2169, 2170, 2171, 2172, 2173, 2174, 2175, 2176, 2177, 2178, 2179, 2180, 2181, 2182, 2183, 2184, 2185, 2186, 2187, 2188, 2189, 2190, 2191, 2192, 2193, 2194, 2195, 2196, 2197, 2198, 2199, 2200, 2201, 2202, 2203, 2204, 2205, 2206, 2207, 2208, 2209, 2210, 2211, 2212, 2213, 2214, 2215, 2216, 2217, 2218, 2219, 2220, 2221, 2222, 2223, 2224, 2225, 2226, 2227, 2228, 2229, 2230, 2231, 2232, 2233, 2234, 2235, 2236, 2237, 2238, 2239, 2240, 2241, 2242, 2243, 2244, 2245, 2246, 2247, 2248, 2249, 2250, 2251, 2252, 2253, 2254, 2255, 2256, 2257, 2258, 2259, 2260, 2261, 2262, 2263, 2264, 2265, 2266, 2267, 2268, 2269, 2270, 2271, 2272, 2273, 2274, 2275, 2276, 2277, 2278, 2279, 2280, 2281, 2282, 2283, 2284, 2285, 2286, 2287, 2288, 2289, 2290, 2291, 2292, 2293, 2294, 2295, 2296, 2297, 2298, 2299, 2300, 2301, 2302, 2303, 2304, 2305, 2306, 2307, 2308, 2309, 2310, 2311, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2316, 2317, 2318, 2319, 2320, 2321, 2322, 2323, 2324, 2325, 2326, 2327, 2328, 2329, 2330, 2331, 2332, 2333, 2334, 2335, 2336, 2337, 2338, 2339, 2340, 2341, 2342, 2343, 2344, 2345, 2346, 2347, 2348, 2349, 2350, 2351, 2352, 2353, 2354, 2355, 2356, 2357, 2358, 2359, 2360, 2361, 2362, 2363, 2364, 2365, 2366, 2367, 2368, 2369, 2370, 2371, 2372, 2373, 2374, 2375, 2376, 2377, 2378, 2379, 2380, 2381, 2382, 2383, 2384, 2385, 2386, 2387, 2388, 2389, 2390, 2391, 2392, 2393, 2394, 2395, 2396, 2397, 2398, 2399, 2400, 2401, 2402, 2403, 2404, 2405, 2406, 2407, 2408, 2409, 2410, 2411, 2412, 2413, 2414, 2415, 2416, 2417, 2418, 2419, 2420, 2421, 2422, 2423, 2424, 2425, 2426, 2427, 2428, 2429, 2430, 2431, 2432, 2433, 2434, 2435, 2436, 2437, 2438, 2439, 2440, 2441, 2442, 2443, 2444, 2445, 2446, 2447, 2448, 2449, 2450, 2451, 2452, 2453, 2454, 2455, 2456, 2457, 2458, 2459, 2460, 2461, 2462, 2463, 2464, 2465, 2466, 2467, 2468, 2469, 2470, 2471, 2472, 2473, 2474, 2475, 2476, 2477, 2478, 2479, 2480, 2481, 2482, 2483, 2484, 2485, 2486, 2487, 2488, 2489, 2490, 2491, 2492, 2493, 2494, 2495, 2496, 2497, 2498, 2499, 2500, 2501, 2502, 2503, 2504, 2505, 2506, 2507, 2508, 2509, 2510, 2511, 2512, 2513, 2514, 2515, 2516, 2517, 2518, 2519, 2520, 2521, 2522, 2523, 2524, 2525, 2526, 2527, 2528, 2529, 2530, 2531, 2532, 2533, 2534, 2535, 2536, 2537, 2538, 2539, 2540, 2541, 2542, 2543, 2544, 2545, 2546, 2547, 2548, 2549, 2550, 2551, 2552, 2553, 2554, 2555, 2556, 2557, 2558, 2559, 2560, 2561, 2562, 2563, 2564, 2565, 2566, 2567, 2568, 2569, 2570, 2571, 2572, 2573, 2574, 2575, 2576, 2577, 2578, 2579, 2580, 2581, 2582, 2583, 2584, 2585, 2586, 2587, 2588, 2589, 2590, 2591, 2592, 2593, 2594, 2595, 2596, 2597, 2598, 2599, 2600, 2601, 2602, 2603, 2604, 2605, 2606, 2607, 2608, 2609, 2610, 2611, 2612, 2613, 2614, 2615, 2616, 2617, 2618, 2619, 2620, 2621, 2622, 2623, 2624, 2625, 2626, 2627, 2628, 2629, 2630, 2631, 2632, 2633, 2634, 2635, 2636, 2637, 2638, 2639, 2640, 2641, 2642, 2643, 2644, 2645, 2646, 2647, 2648, 2649, 2650, 2651, 2652, 2653, 2654, 2655, 2656, 2657, 2658, 2659, 2660, 2661, 2662, 2663, 2664, 2665, 2666, 2667, 2668, 2669, 2670, 2671, 2672, 2673, 2674, 2675, 2676, 2677, 2678, 2679, 26

* The Mahometans believe there will always be a paradise young women whose names are heavy will enter it. They are call'd Houris.

The great emperor of India, Circassa, Bengal, Cachar,
 Gila, Cassa, Eran and Azar, as also of Bakh-
 gerd, and even of Muscovy, and many more for-
 midable in appearance, that poets have com-
 par'd it to the leaves of the thickest trees, or
 the drops of rain in the most impetuous
 storms. Tootmich brought this great army
 into the field, and march'd against Timur at
 the end of the year 790. The emperor had
 no sooner advice of it, than he departed
 from his capital at the head of the troops of
 Samarcand and Keesh, and went to encamp
 at Sagridge. He sent Pavatchis into all the
 provinces of his kingdom to levy troops, and
 bring them to the place of rendezvous. This
 winter the cold was so violent that the earth
 was cover'd with snow, and the men were almost
 froze to death. In the mean while news was
 brought, that the army of Circassa, commanded
 by Datchan, had cross'd the River Sihon
 over-again, the town of Cogende, and was en-
 camp'd near Ajouc-Zernouc. Timur forthwith
 resolv'd to give him battel: the lords of his
 council fell upon their knees, and made plea-
 sing instances to hinder him, and particularly
 besought him to wait till the troops of all the
 provinces arriv'd: but as he was not ignorant of
 the proverb, which says, *This delay is dangerous*,
 and that we ought never to put off till to-morrow what
 we are able to do to-day; their remonstrance was
 useless; and without waiting for other troops be-
 sides those of his household which he then had

An. Dom.
 1489,

* A village six leagues from Samarcand.
 * King of Circassa, who fled to Tootmich.
 * A village in Transoxiana, near the Sihon, towards Cogende.

with

319

* In Transfoxiana.

Book III. Bacchia, who was made prisoner of war; and he was immediately cut off his head, and he had made himself known. So they brought him alive to Timur, who inform'd himself from him of the state of affairs of Togatmich Can, and at length pardon'd him: he even gave him a gift, which he accompany'd with many other civilities, and incorpor'd him into his service; insomuch that he who was before but a slave, became in a moment a great lord. Timur decamp'd, and march'd towards his capital; and in the month of Sefer, in the year of the Hegira 791, he encamp'd at Acar, where he staid some time.

Feb. 1389.

When the spring appear'd, all the troops of the empire of Timur arriv'd. The Mirza, Miran Chen, came at the head of those of Corasgan, and join'd the imperial camp. The troops of Bal, Condoz, Bacalan, Bedachen, Cahan, Hiar, Chadoman, and many others, came to him in great numbers. He sent the Emir, Sultan Selim, and the Emir, Alcontmur, to cause a bridge of boats to be built over the Sihon near Cogend. The Emirs obey'd, and built others in many places, to facilitate the passage of the troops, and they gave advice of it to the court.

An. Dom. 1389.

At the beginning of the year of the Serpent, which answers to the month of February, 1389, this prince departed to continue the war in Cathac. When he arriv'd at the bank of the Sihon, accompany'd by the princes his sons, he

Secretaries of the Timur Emirs, who write in the Tartar characters.

A village near Samarcand and Feck.

A kingdom between Transoxiana and Tibet; it is near Zagatai, is border'd by the Gihon towards the kingdom of Cadan.

cross'd

333
The soldiers who heard of it, were so
alarmed and well informed, which might have
been it self formidable to all the nations,
was created by a single report, and scattered
here and there like grasshoppers on the plain.
In short, the name and arms of the conqueror
Timur were so known to his enemies, that
as soon as they heard of our approach, they
made such haste to get away, that we could
not perceive even the dust which their horses
raised. The victorious conqueror, instead
of the rout of the enemy, here found a second
din with the furniture of his household, and
camp, while he march'd with diligence in the
pursuit of the fugitives. He sent before him, to
gather intelligence. One Chert, a brave
man, with a lance and a bow, and a
Gorget, with forty chosen men, and
two horses.

Some
fled.

Our victorious warriors were in the desert
and about to return home, when they met Kisha
Detran, encamped with the hundred families
which he was with. They were so surpris-
ingly, that Chert, one of our best
him by the collar, and took him with
took all his people to drive his
flocks, which were conducted
of fatigue as far as Attock.
The army was encamped at

A line on the river Atch.

A village of Zang, toward Capat.

The History of Tamerlane

323

defeat by him, and a
rival at
Ouzan
Ald

with the nations of the country of Kafir-
Tans, whereupon he sent thither Miran Chah
thither, who departed at the head of the main
body of the army. He made great haste, and

The Serpents reigned forty five years in
to 728, of the Hegira. The last
of the Serpents, who reigned for himself in Sebzuar,
was of Tans.

much that there remain'd not one of the family of these Courdes princes.

This young Mirza at length departed from Samarcand for Corassine; and as he pass'd by the fields of Bababek, he met the Serbedin kings, who affecting to shew their bravery on all occasions, came to meet him at the head of their army. These desperate men, who had resolv'd to conquer or die, fell furiously upon Timur's son, who sustain'd the onset with unparallel'd resolution; and having given a thousand marks of his great courage in this bloody action, his right and left wings advanc'd, and he was surrounded by the Serbedins, who found themselves taken like beasts in a net. Then all the army of Timur's son, with their

guards, who comforted him in his misfortune. The Emir, Arbouge, who was departed from Herat to quell this rebellion, had heard of this, and took it after Hadgi-Bek, brother of Ali-Bek Yenn-Garban, was sent off to fly into Persia; but when he was near Semnane, he was seiz'd by the Hezaregheri, and sent to the Mirza, who put him to death according to law.

After the Mitz-Bek had put down the rebels, and put an end to the rebellion by delivering the Mirza from the rebels,

* A town near Ispahan.

* A town of the province of Coonetz, between Mazendran, long. 88. lat. 36.

* A town near Semnane.

...at the approach of night they
The next morning they re-

General Gorty, lang. 114

of G...

with a guide
 took the road of
 Coragan, Coragan
 places having
 Omar
 army
 he met
 of
 and
 and
 on both
 which began
 was formed
 and

incomparable be-
 fell into the hands of the conqueror, so that
 that the illustrious Mirza, contented with
 advantage he had gained, returned in triumph
 and laden with spoils, to Samarkand, in
 which he had the honor of being received
 As it was a long time since the
 Behader, and as they had had no news of him,
 they had had no news of him, the Mirza
 near Cheik was ordered to march with a

A town of Gerg. A town of Gerg. A
 well. A town of Gerg. A town of Gerg.
 temple of the Moguls. A town of Gerg, long 115.
 An ancient castle on the frontier of Gerg.
 kestan, long. 115. lat. 55. A village

The first of these is the fact that the
 second of these is the fact that the
 third of these is the fact that the
 fourth of these is the fact that the
 fifth of these is the fact that the
 sixth of these is the fact that the
 seventh of these is the fact that the
 eighth of these is the fact that the
 ninth of these is the fact that the
 tenth of these is the fact that the

Rough soldiers who made head against
put the captives in chains, and test
the conduct of Mir Lai, father of
Berlas, Temour B...
the city of S...
from the...

16. The main reason for the
 depart. from the country is
 Abdul Gaffar. The
 Serat Chandra. The
 the whole thing is a

56. 56. 42. Formerly called Aukh, a river which runs through the
country of Goss and Mogolistan, and falls into the
river Oby, which falls into the northern
Capital of Goss, frontier of Mogolistan, 1842.

the other men, which he was in hopes of putting around to the refoly'd that the army shoud

plaz

And

of Yulduz

is of all the commanders

The Mirza Omar Chaili Iwbo

of Andecan had for his guide

Barhan and Hasan Emir Koni

guides he was in the most most of the

mountain peaks both to the right and

mixed every thing he saw and put to the

sword all the enemy of the

mountain Doubeckan Andecan

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

and the

Garrison
 and H
 prov'd
 with

road of
of Bob
which
long

...returning to the state with

... who has off-
... he has no former
... and those who were
... who were defeated in the
... and the
... his proofs.

Daban
signify's a
hill.

It is to be noted, that when Timur marched
Tombulien Gov. he left

which he had been ordered to do. He then turned to the west and saw a large number of soldiers on horseback, who were the soldiers of the Moguls, that they might find in the destruction of the Geres who were there. They obeyed these orders, entered into Mogol

The great forest of
A mountain, May. 124. 12. 53.30.

liftan,

Gates; and after having spent many days
 not being able to do anything, they then
 over the river. The town of Sutghon
 is a town of the Chinese, the inhabi-
 tants of which were all killed. The
 caught with him. The town of
 to Hsienan, and the town of
 of the Chinese, the town of
 Chinese, and the town of
 Tsin.

king of Mogolistan, my
 my.

for by their arrows on the enemy, in
 hinder'd their gaining any advantage in
 The fight lasted forty eight hours, during
 time our men kept fix'd back to back
 about on all sides, no one being able to
 whatever number of Chinese, and the
 manders of the Chinese could not
 not advance, and the Chinese were
 both sides in loss. Every one of the
 point of honor that this battle was fought.

* A town of the Chinese, long 117.

* A town of the Chinese, long 117.

* A town of the Chinese, long 117.

* A town of the Chinese, long 117.

* A town of Mogolistan, long 125.

* A town of Mogolistan, long 132.

and passing by Capatzen, he came to Yulouz, where

The Emir, accompanied by the chief of the army, who had been sent to take all the quarters of the army, proceeded to the Gatai Khan's place, where he found an immense quantity of capars, and had the honor of laying the imperial carpet in this great rendezvous.

Yulduz is a place of great delight and pleasure: the many delicious fountains, and abundance of pasture, render the living therein so very agreeable, that poets have compos'd verses in its praise. The beauty of its fountains is the reason of its name; for Yulduz signifies the morning star: the grass there is so strong and nourishing, that the leanest horses, when they have been a week in its meadows, become fat and strong.

From whence Timur sent the Mirza Omar
with a numerous attendance, to his go-
vernment, and to his capital, the city of Samarkand.
and to the city of Herat, and to the city of
in those quarters. This prince rode on a grey
and as soon as he had paid the visit to the
and the prince Coubluc, one of the great Emirs
of the Gates. On the noise of the great cry
Samboun, and the great trumpet Kertona, the
and the Mirza and Coubluc began to move;
the march was made at the same time; and all

the field was declar'd with the sword and wound-
ed Mirza; Coubluc was taken, and his head cut off, ac-
cording to the law of Genghiz Khan. The
Mirza, after he had made himself master of all
Coubluc's horses, sheep, and other goods, and ex-
terminated his subjects, continu'd his road by Cam-
zan, Gutohermano, and the great city
Caghar, and at length successfullly arriv'd at
Andecan, the place of his residence, and the
seat of his government.

CHAP. VII.

Timur returns to the seat of his empire.

TIMUR having made himself master of all the
inhabitants, multitudes of whom were slain,
and others taken captives; and having enrich'd
his soldiers with the spoils, (in which expedition
he had march'd above a thousand leagues) hav-
ing at length continu'd with his victories, he
resolv'd to return to the imperial city of Samar-
cand. He departed from Kerschid, leaving
the head of his army; and when he was ar-
riv'd at Oluc-Yulduz, he appointed a feast,
and order'd preparations to be made for
a magnificent entertainment, which was to be
set off with the most exquisite diversions, and

* A town of Teber.

* A town of Turkistan.

* Capital of Turkistan, long. 107, lat. 45.

* The lesser Yulduz.

* The greater Yulduz, mention'd in the foregoing chapter.

pleasures. All the plain was cover'd with tents and pavilions, and the pavilion on which the imperial tent was fix'd, was surrounded with flowers of gold. A throne enrich'd with precious stones, was set on white marble, and the emperor sat on it in his robes and the crown on his head, the diamonds and rubies of honor, and belts adorned with precious stones, to the princes, Emirs, Generals, and all the lords and officers of his army; he also honor'd with his favors the generals and captains of his troops, as a recompence for their fatigues, and in joy of his victories. The satisfaction which the brave warriors receiv'd, when Timur applauded their actions, was inexpreffibly great; in this charming retreat he sent 'em in cups of gold the most delicious wines by the hands of the most beautiful women in the world.

After they had pass'd some days in this joyful season, they decamp'd from this delightful place, and march'd on towards the Emir Gohar, who was then at the head of his army.

After he had march'd some days, he receiv'd intelligence that he should the seventh of Ramadan, at Bagdad, that is to say, in twenty two days, be at Bagdad, the capital of Persia. This journey is generally accounted two months journey by the caravan. He render'd to the inhabitants of this great city, by his happy arrival, and the news of his victorys, that joy which his absence had depriv'd 'em of. The ladies, the children of the queens, the princes of the blood, and the officers of the city, testify'd their pleasure by the quantity of gold and precious stones, which they sprinkled over his head, the magnificence of the public feasts, and the

Aut. Dom.
1389.

prefents, which they had the power to make
 them, they adorn'd the city, and beautify'd it so
 splendid that it seem'd as if the season was
 turn'd into spring.

When winter was come, Timur went to Bo-
 cara, and pass'd that season at Ghenlfehan,^{*}
 where he order'd several little houses to be
 built in form of a dome for the lords and
 officers of his court. And as there were here sever-
 al fine ponds, in which were a vast number
 of all sorts of birds, and particularly swans, he
 resolv'd to divert himself with fowling. He
 encamp'd on the banks, and the officers took
 floats, on which they enter'd these ponds, and
 with great crys and the noise of drums and
 kettle drums, fear'd the birds, and constrain'd
 'em to fly; and while they pass'd from one
 pond to another, the fowlers cry'd out to en-
 courage 'em, but they would not fly far, for
 the noise of the drums, which was made by the
 soldiers, and the noise of the drums, which was
 made by the soldiers, made 'em fearful
 so that in a short time they caught 'em in vast
 numbers. These birds are here in so great plenty
 that the author of the Mogul annals, call'd Ge-
 buch, writes, that the princes Zagatai and Ge-
 tai, sons of the great Genghiz Kan, pass'd
 whole winter in this sport in this country, from
 whence they sent every week fifty camels
 laden with swans, to be distributed in the gene-
 ral camp, which was without Samarcand: and
 this distribution of the birds is call'd by the
 Tartars Chirilga. But no other author makes
 mention of this particular custom. During the
 winter, Soliman Chah was elevated to the
 highest degree of fortune, and was pre-eminently

* A bird
 unknown
 in France.

* A pond near Bocara.

ly favor'd by Timur, who gave him the illustrious princess Sultan-Begum in marriage; for whom he had handmaids prepar'd, and the most magnificent presents.

After that Mirza Miran Chah had finish'd, according to the emperor's intentions, the affairs for which he was sent into Corassana, he began his march to return to court: the Emirs and other lords went to meet him with great ceremony, and he paid his respects to Timur in his winter-quarters at Bocara. He was very handsomely receiv'd; Timur readily embrac'd him, and having kiss'd his face, he entertain'd him, and convers'd concerning all the circumstances of his journey. The Mirza entirely satisfy'd him in his answers; having kiss'd the earth, and made supplications to God, according to custom, he offer'd his presents, which very much pleas'd Timur, who applauded him in every thing, and order'd him to set down in a rank worthy of his greatness. The joy at his arrival was universal, and it was apprehended that this prince would contribute to the glory and felicity of the empire.

The emperor was desirous that during this winter the young Mirza Aboubece, son of Mirza Miran Chah, shou'd be betroth'd to the daughter of the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin. The princess Camzade prepar'd the marriage-feast. But as there is no happiness without a mixture of sorrow, and 'tis the divine appointment that we must weep in the midst of joy, the illustrious lady Camzade Catoun, wife of Timur's father, pass'd from this transitory world to eternity. Timur shew'd much affliction at the loss

of this venerable lady, prepared a funeral banquet, and gave much alms to the poor, the lame and the orphans. The body of the princess was carry'd to the town of Kech, where it was inter'd.

After winter, Timur departed for Samarcand with all his court, hurried in his march; and having pass'd by Carchi, went to encamp at Aliar in the agreeable meadow of Kech, on the bank of the river of Cochen. The ground on which the royal tent was prepar'd was cover'd with brocade, as was all the field with standards and umbrellas.

CHAP. VII.

AS the valor of Timur, and the power of the Turks*, especially of the soldiers of Zagatai, was now arriv'd to a very high pitch, so they were not only independent and self-reigns, but even made all the other people from the east of Asia, to the west of that part of the world, to tremble; and by the large booty the soldiers had gain'd in the several campaigns, they were become so rich, that the officers, to maintain their own power, seem'd to employ themselves only in giving only the protection of their power.

* A river which runs into the Toun, which discharges itself into the Gihon.

* The author here calls the Zagataian soldiers Tatars, in other places he gives 'em the name of Moguls.

who they suppose should one day be their masters. Timur thought it advisable to enlarge the number of his commanders, and diminish their riches, which might lead them from their obedience. In the year 792, which answered to that of the horse, he sent orders to all parts of his dominions for holding the Courtes at Akhar, where he was encamp'd.

An. Dom.
1390.

All the Emirs and generals of the army, the chiefs of the Tatars, and Hozars, the commanders and captains of ten thousand, as also the governors of the provinces, came to the solemn banquet, which was usually made in that assembly; the ceremonies whereof were observ'd with so much prudence and regularity, that it seem'd as if they were once again in the times of Feridon^s or Afrasiab^s. When the order for augmenting the regiments of the army was signify'd, all the commanders fell down, and kiss'd the emperor's robes of obedience; they agreed to contribute to the service of the emperor according to his pleasure; they all gave it under their hands, that they would bring to the general rendezvous the number of troops they were tax'd at. The Favachis^s, who took their subscription, were the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, the Emir Gehancha Jacou, and the Emir Chamfeddin Abbas. At the dissolution of this numerous assembly there was another magnificent feast made

* Com.
missarys
general.

* The overthrow of the Persians about the time of the deluge.

* The name of the King of the Tatars or Scythians.

In this story were several names which the author has taken from the history of Shah Nameh, one of the kings of Persia, by Ferdowsi.

Book III. In this order, the expenses of which were
 great. The princesses and boys were
 adorned with the richest jewels of the earth
 and cover'd with carpets of gold, cloth bro-
 cades, and embroider'd pieces of work enliven'd
 with pearls, rubys, and other precious stones.
 The cups, which were presented by the most beau-
 tiful women in the world, were of pure rock-
 crystal, work'd with all the delicacy and fine-
 ness which can be expected from the skill and
 industry of the most ingenious artists of per-
 sian. Timur laid hold on this occasion, when
 the joy was so general, to give in marriage
 princesses: Sovindge Cotelue Aga, daughter of Ul-
 rinobai Aga, who was exceedingly handsome and
 much lov'd by him, to the prince Omar
 Chah his grandson; and after the solemnity
 of the nuptials was over, the prince
 Chah was order'd to return into Persia, and

to their respective go-
 vernments and hords. The emperor also depart-
 ed home, and some days after came down to the
 meadow of Ilgazigage, situate without the town
 of Samarcand, after having put the affairs of the
 empire in all necessary order.

C H A P. IX.

*Timur sends his troops into the country of
 the Gers.*

AT the beginning of the same year the em-
 peror sent into the country of the Gers
 the Emirs Soliman Chah, Godaded, Haccini,
 Chamseddin Abbas, and his brother the Emir
 Osman

Osman; and among the colonels of the regiments and the officers of his household, he sent Saddictaban, Sultan Sultani, the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin, Hassan Jander, Emir Couchin, Aid Coja, Tamer, and Emir Camari, who commanded twenty thousand horse. As soon as they had cross'd the Sihon at Tachkent, they march'd to Issighen¹, where they met the Emir Malich Aperi and his son Beikech, with Badir and Sadir, Turcomans, at the head of five thousand brave men who came from Andecan from Mirza Ghaz Cherk, and join'd our army. When they arriv'd at Ghendropa², they sent messengers to inform themselves of the state of the country; they took the road of the mountain Aristan³, met many of the enemy, of whom they slew several, and took others prisoners; they carry'd away their wives and children, pillag'd their goods, and destroy'd the country. Thus they went thro all the provinces of the Gotes, and advanc'd as far as Almalegh, where they arriv'd at the river Abcile⁴; they sent messengers to inform the Emir Camareddin of the family of the Couchins, who were before 'em at the head of four hundred horse to gain intelligence, had met Camareddin in a hunting-country; that our men had been worsted, and that the greatest part of the soldiers on each side were kill'd on the spot. Upon this news the Emirs sent Hassan Jander, Malich and Beikech, to inform themselves more truly of this event. These captains, whose prudence and va-

¹ Issighen is a city in the Gotes.

² A lake near Berke in Gotes, long. 100. lat. 43.

³ A hill in Gotes, long. 101. 20. lat. 43. 25.

⁴ A mountain of Gotes near Almalegh, long. 100. lat. 44.

⁵ A river which discharges its waters into the Sihon.

Book I

for were soon known, immediately collected, and
arriv'd at the field of battle, saw many
dead on the earth; and among 'em one of our
men of the hord of Matangou, in whom
remain'd a little life, he having eat nothing but
herbs for forty days: they comforted him, and
brought him to the Emirs. He assur'd 'em that
in this place they had fought Camareddin, that
there were many soldiers slain on both sides, and
that ours fled after having been sufficiently
maul'd, and that Camareddin march'd toward
the fields of Itchna Bourchna. The Emirs im-
mediately departed in search of him, and having
pass'd by Itchna Bourchna, they arriv'd at Ouker
Kepchagui, where they left their baggage, and
departed thence post; and when they were ar-
riv'd on the banks of the river Irich, they learn'd
that Camareddin had cross'd it, and was going
toward Toulou. They then march'd on, and
and found the rafts and boats the enemys had built to cross the
water. The Emirs staid some days at this place,
and cross'd the river, to engrave their arms and
red characters with fire on the pine-trees of the
woods; which they did, that succeeding ages
might see the marks of the arrival of the army
of Timur on the trees of the forests of his ene-
mys, and as an assurance of their conquests be-
yond the river Irich.

But as there were six months past since they
came into these deserts, where they wanted pro-
visions, and most of 'em liv'd on what they got
in hunting, and on wild roots; and as the air
became extremely cold, they resolv'd to return

* A town of Turkestan, long. 127. lat. 47.
* A town of Turkestan, long. 100. lat. 38.
* A town of Tartary, long. 127. lat. 60.

which

which they did not leave behind, where there is a road made on the bank of the great lake call'd Issyk-Kul, and making great haste, they happily arriv'd at Samarcand, where they had the honor to kiss the imperial carpet.

CHAP. X.

Timur marches into the desert of Capchat.

DURING the summer of the same year An. Dom. 1390. Timur took up a resolution to make a campaign in Capchat; for this purpose he regulated his troops, turn'd all his foot soldiers into cavalry, equip'd em with arms, and provided em money and every thing necessary. He departed from Samarcand at the head of his army; and having caus'd a bridge to be built over the Sihon at Cogende, he cross'd this river, and arriv'd in the winter at Tachkunt, be-

cause he mean while his army had been oblig'd to visit the tomb of Ghengis Khan, where they say many miracles are perform'd. Timur knowing this visit was due from him, not only on a religious but even on a political account, in that it wou'd further the accomplishment of his designs. He came to Cogende for that purpose, which he did with shew of extraordinary devotion, distributing among the poor ten thousand Dinars, and at length he went to Tachkunt,

A town on the bank of the great lake of Turkestan.
 † Great lake in Turkestan on the frontiers of Mogolistan.
 ‡ The Dinars Capchat are pieces of gold, worth seven livres, and sols of French money, where

Book III. where he lay dangerously ill for the space of forty days; during which time the Emperour and great lords were in the utmost consternation. This prince was in a manner the soul of the world; and the fear of losing him made many persons tremble. In short, the people believed that his sword wou'd no longer be able to protect the weak, and keep the powerful within bounds: that the security of families wou'd soon be lost, houses plunder'd, and the cloysters broke open, wherein true chastity is preserv'd. Whereupon every one address'd themselves to God by prayer; and the vows made for his health were so ardent and efficacious, that the Almighty re- stor'd him, because it was absolutely necessary for the publick weal. This good news caus'd every one to rejoice; and they render'd solemn and public praises to God for the recovery of the emperor's health.

After which Chan arriv'd at the head of the troops of Corasana; and paid his respects. The emperor review'd his army and put it in order; he made presents to the generals and other Emirs, and distributed among the soldiers all the silver money which was in the treasury; which distribution the Turks call Okulga, as the distribution of the birds taken in the chase is call'd Chirilga. He also gave horses, arms and clothes to those who wanted 'em, and assign'd goldest to the several generals.

The guides of the body of the army in which the imperial standard was fixt, were Temour Cotsuc Aglen, son of Temour Malec Can of Capchac, Condge Aglen, also prince of Capchac, and Aidecon Uzbeg.

An. Dom. On thursday the twelfth of the month Safer, 1391. in the year of the Hegira 793, the sun being then

when the eighth degree of Aquarius, Timur departed from Tabriz, with his court, and left Mirza Pir-Mohamed Gharibkhan, and Mirza Charoc, to govern the empire of Tabriz in his absence, and sent for lieutenant-governors, Rais-Lal and Mohamud. Timur sent away all the ladies, except his favorite Sultans, Tchulpan-Bek, and daughter of Hadgi-Bey of Gers; who in this journey had the honor of privately conversing with the emperor. As soon as the imperial standard began its march, the Emirs of the Barmans and Hezars, and the colonels of the regiments, departed at the sound of the trumpets, and the army came to Cara-Suman.

At this time ambassadors came from Tocat-mur-Cas; they were conducted with all the usual honors and ceremonies, by the Emirs in the highest stations. The great snows and rains oblig'd the court to stay some days at Cara-Suman. Timur order'd that the ambassadors should be brought to him with freedom, and that they should enter by the great gate of the imperial pavilion. The permission was given, and they entered the ground with their hands in token of submission to the emperor; and they us'd nothing but the most respectful compliments, by which they begg'd pardon for their misdeeds, and ascrib'd a thousand praises to Timur. At length they pre-

Hadgi Bey Ircanour, prince of the Gers.

A man of Caschac, long 99. in 44. The custom at the entry of ambassadors sent to the Tartar emperor, is that, as soon as the gate of the imperial pavilion is open, and a sign made to advance, they run to cast themselves at the feet of the throne.

scnted

Timur answer'd the ambassadors in these terms: "When your master Torminch was wounded and hit with his arrows, and came for refuge to me, every one thought that I rank'd him among my children, and us'd him kindly. At length looking upon his treachery in my own, I made war on Oorouz Can, and march'd my troops against him; which was the reason that great part of my country, and an infinite number of campages and riches entirely perish'd by reason of the cold which this winter was extremely violent. Now pretending that I was his friend, I engag'd him in friendship, and defend him against those who I fear'd he would attack. I recover'd his country and subjects from those of Oorouz Can, and put 'em into his hands; at length I render'd him so powerful, that he was crown'd emperor of Capchac, and ascended the throne of Touchi. Truly I confess that this good fortune comes from God, but I know at the same time I am the friend of his enemy."

Timur-Bec then said, "I was myself powerful, and having had begun to be favorable to him, he forgot the obligation he ow'd me, and without thinking in what manner a son ought to behave towards a father, he took the opportunity, while I was gone into Persia, and was employ'd in the conquests of the kingdoms of the Persians and Medes, to betray me and commit acts of hostility against me. He sent forth his troops to ruin the places near my kingdom. I seem'd to take notice of it, that he might consider with himself, be ashamed of his action, and for the future abstain from the like extravagances. But he was so drunk with his ambition,

Book III. Timur did not distinguish good from evil, he thought since sent another great army against them, the vanguard of which, composed of a considerable body of horse, is entered into my country. It is true, as soon as we put ourselves in a readiness to march against this vanguard, they fled before they could do more than put our horses to flight: and now Toca-mich having advice of our march, begs a parley, because he knows no other way to save himself from the punishment he deserves. But since we have seen him so often violate his oaths, and treatys, it won't be prudent to rely on his promises. We will exert our strength with the assistance of God, the resolution we have taken, and the design for which we have levy'd our army, that all the world may see that God punishes the ungrateful in the most severe manner.

Timur, who was full of truth, and sincere desires peace, he must send to meet us. Bei; that he may negotiate it with our great Emirs; and we will do whatever is consistent with our dignity, and the present conjuncture. Timur then order'd the ambassadors to be receiv'd, and gave 'em vests of gold stuff; he settled their expences, and commanded that they should be handsomely treated. But that his officers shou'd have an eye upon their actions.

March 5.

The sixth day of the month of Raby-ul-Hijrah, Timur held a council with the princes his sons, and the great Emirs, and it was resolv'd that the ambassadors of Toca-mich shou'd follow the

army, which at length march'd to the conquest of the empire of Tocatmich, and arriv'd by Sam, Caratenc, and Sarc, having gone a long way, and encamp'd in the desert three weeks in the hot plains of Tocatmich, the horses were so distressed with the great heat, and had gone to the scarcity of water, that they were brought to extremity. At length on the first day of the month of Jumazynlevel the army arriv'd at Sarc Ouzan, where the horses quench'd their thirst, and the soldiers render'd thanks to God; they employ'd some days in crossing the river, because the waters were very high: but finding found an easy passage, they became bold, and swam over the river. During the night two servants of Aidecou Uzbek fled, and pass'd the desert to find Tocatmich Can; they pursu'd 'em, but were not able to overtake 'em. The army continu'd its march in the great desert, and encamp'd in places where there were wells, that they might not want water.

March 19.

On the first day of the month Jumazynlevel, the army march'd from Sarc Ouzan to the town of Capchat, and went to encamp at Ouzon Taz, where Timur would have the pleasure of seeing this great desert of Capchat: he ascended a mountain, and saw with admiration those vast plains, which for the space they took up, and their verdure, resembled the sea. He staid there all the day, and order'd the soldiers to bring stones to that place, where he caus'd a very high obelisk to be erected; and skilful engravers engrav'd on it the date of the year

April. 9.

* A town of Capchat between Yenghikunt and Sabran.

* Mountain in Capchat, between the rivers Arich and Hau-jou.

When I had seen that the
 of my army, that this structure might be
 as a lasting monument to posterity. The
 decamp'd, and while they march'd fol-
 low'd the chase; they arriv'd at the banks of
 the river Hahic, where they encamp'd;
 when they had cross'd the river, they continu'd
 their march, and in eight days arriv'd at
 Capchac. And as it was four months since they
 came from Taohing, the army was weary
 and what was more strange, in what locusts
 of the desert they march'd, tho they had
 six or seven months journey, they met with
 not any cultivated land. There was
 only a few small fields in the country, a few
 people, and a hundred Dishes Capchac and
 Man of wheat or good wheat; besides
 the royal Mans, was a few small fields.

As also all the Emirs of the
 Tartars, the colonels of thousands, the cen-
 tions and decurions, to make proclamation
 no one on pain of death shou'd bake in the
 either bread, pastry-work, mutton, pi
 or any thing proper for boiling; but
 one shou'd be contented with Bouldag, which
 is commonly bak'd. The Emirs themselves began
 to live in this manner, for as much as was
 in so much that a Man of wheat of British
 weight, equal to eight royal Mans, with
 herbs added, wou'd make a dish of meat.

* A river which runs into the Tie-in Capchac.

* A hord in Capchac, long. 100. lat. 54.

* A Mith weighs a pound and a half French weight.

* Meat fricass'd and stuf'd, with a white sauce, like a
 fricass'd of chickens.

Baraja, and each soldier had a dish allow'd him every day. But as the month they were not in a condition to hunt for much, many soldiers were depriv'd of it, and were oblig'd to live on only some eggs of birds and small animals, with what herbs they found to eat; of which they cou'd scarcely find means to sustain life. Timur order'd a general hunting on Sunday: the first of August: the Tawachis gave orders to the leaders of the right and left wing of the army to find out places to fow the fowls; so they went in quest of land, wherein they found a number of beasts and birds; and the next day made a slaughter of the beasts, which is call'd Camarmachi. Timur rode on horseback in all parts of the circle, and slew a great number of fawns, antelope, does and roe-bucks, till his dinner-time. — two hours and a half he

was in the field. The abundance of animals which were destroy'd by the army was so great, that they fill'd the mountains and the plain. Among this game they found a sort of stag larger than buffalo, which Timur had never seen the like before: these animals are call'd Candaga by the Moguls, and by the inhabitants of Cachet: they slew a great many of 'em, and the army subsisted a long time on their flesh.

THE HISTORY OF THE CONQUESTS OF TIMUR THE GREAT

CHAPTER XLII.

Timur reviews his troops.

AFTER this morning's fight, Timur, with a desire to take an exact view of his troops, he order'd them to be plac'd by Companies and squadrons, and that every soldier should have his lance, war-club, poniard, and bow ready for use, and that their horses should be cover'd with tiger-skins; he also took care that each of them should have a sabre on his left side, and a belt of iron on his right. Timur mounted his horse close to his royal robes; he had on his head the crown of gold encircled with rubies, and held in his hand a golden parasol, and a pair of

gloves. Before the first rank of the Toman, of Bardi Bei. The general leap'd off his horse, and took notice of Timur of the looks, stature, armor, and number of his soldiers; he fell on his knees holding his horse's bridle, kiss'd the earth, and made supplications for Timur; (for the custom of Persia is, that at that time every commander should make supplication for the emperor, and bestow an eulogium on him even in his private life.) "All the world," said he, "be obedient to Timur, our heads and our lives are at his disposal, and we are oblig'd to sacrifice to him, as we are now sacrific'd at the foot of the horse of his Majesty." "Ay," Timur answer'd, and applauded the Bei, wishing that thro the valor of this brave man and of those who are like him, the empire might continue always flourishing. This passage

and at the same time he examined all the companies belonging to him; he then rode towards the camp of the Mirza, which he found surrounded by a great number of soldiers, as well as the Mirza himself. He observed the order of the camp, and the manner in which they kept their arms and baggage, and made a discourse in praise of his bravery, and of his great power for his greatness. The Mirza answered him with the same complaisance, and he went to the Mirza, the Mirza's friend, and commended him for the good order in which he saw his army. Chien-Taimur, son of Alikhan-Bek, at the head of the Hiezars of the herd, came next in order of battle; there were in their arms, bows, arrows, and next to each man, belies a kymitar and sub. Chien-Taimur also made supplication on his knees, and paid his respects. Timur approved of his conduct, and return'd him thanks, and gave him a great reward. He then went to the body of the army of Alikhan, and found Chien-Taimur, all whose camps were in order. He had there a long time, because this body was more numerous than the others. The Mirza then paid his respects to the emperor, according to the maxims of war, which was highly suitable to the son of so great a monarch. He fell on his knees, as the rest had done, and made his vows for the prosperity of his majesty; he congratulated him on his conquests, which extended from the frontiers of China to the Caspian Sea. The emperor was very well pleas'd with the body of the army commanded by the Mirza; his son, prais'd him exceedingly, and with a great deal of goodness said, "I pray God that your fortune be at your disposal, and always give

"was the advantage of
the oil, and, advanced towards
the Emir's Can; and at ten
o'clock of the Emir's Can.

Emperor who cared and heard em
good sense of their situation. He
of the matter with the
a long time. This year
alliance as the others had done. He
were the grandmothers, looking forward
prosperity, which were well received. And
the day after tomorrow, 1125, 1126, 1127
which a link is you have
among in behalf of and in

This great prince encouraged em, and offered
wulf'd em by applauses furable to the order

observ'd their soldiers in. In short, the review
continued a long day, till evening
and the emperor himself, with his numerous army
was in the field, and order'd on at the Cour-
tal or Camp, which was held in the
meadow, and which the emperor
was writing. At length they heard
the great cry sounding
of a drum, and got on their ho-
rsemounts that every one, seeing the
front of this great army, could not but
admire the power, valor, and good conduct
of the invincible Timur.

CHAP. XII.

Timur sends the Mirza Miran Shah to
the head of the scouts.

and finish'd this story.



and brought his father to honor him with that
employ. The emperor approv'd the deed
and at length an aged and weary man re-
solv'd, and having caus'd him to receive the
command of the body of the scouts, letting him
know that by reason of the employ he had in
charge, the generals and soldiers of the army re-

part of the confidence in him, and that he had
 great presence of mind, a strong confidence
 and perfect activity to acquit himself
 worthily of an employ which was the principal
 part of war, and on which the security of the
 army entirely depended. The astrologers having
 fixed the hour and moment of his departure
 went on the twenty fourth of April: the
 Emirs immediately put himself at the head of
 the troops, and the great Emir, with his
 accompany him every where. They had
 news of the enemy; but the Mirza, who
 went north with the Emirs, found a kind of
 the road, and came to the place where they had
 made fires in five or six places.
 They immediately sent advice of it to
 order d'exp

hooting, but we all necessary
 to discover the enemy, and to be
 of every thing. The Mirza and the
 having received their orders, immediately
 and marched day and night, exerting
 to improve themselves of what they
 They came to the river of Toupal, and as they
 crossed it, the boats caught fire, and
 had been fire in forty places. The boats
 had burnt every where, but had not found
 them. They immediately set out, and march
 extreme diligence. When he was arrived at
 river of Toupal, he found the passage very

by the scours, and sent the soldiers to get faggots and great pieces of wood to mend it; and at length he crossed the river with all his army, and pitched his former camp.

All these things were sent to gain intelligence, whether the vagabonds in that vast desert were seeking one footstep, or learning any news of the enemy. Timur order'd the Cherk order'd a Turcoman to come before him, and sent him with a convoy to gain intelligence. He was a man of courage and experience, who had pass'd part of his time in these deserts, and there suffer'd extreme fatigue, to finish several important affairs, and had with'd the cold and heat of seasons. The Cherk departed according to these orders, and after two days and two nights march, discover'd some hamlets of little consequence; he went with his guard behind a hill, and on the next morning they perceiv'd a horseman who came out of these hamlets on some business, they waited till he had

and
him handfast, and took
several presents, and among the rest a good horse
to hold a quiver, and a rich and curious vest.
He demand'd of the prisoner news of Toca-
mar Can; who answer'd, that it was a month
since he and his comrades came out of their
own country to dwell in that place, but that
they heard no news of the grand Can, tho' he ca-
me in armor, unknown to them, came six days
ago, and retir'd to a wood at a small dis-
tance from these hamlets. Timur order'd Aid
to go with sixty men to make the inhabi-
tants of these hamlets decamp, and bring 'em to
court, which he did. Comari Yesaoul was at
length sent with twenty horse, to bring away by
force

Book III. The Success of Toclathien Camp, and in that
place he and his troops were come to the camp. He
divided the two wings in order, and commanded
they should all have ready their great and little
Bucklers; that they should draw lines round the
camp, and make divisions of it, that the ene-
mies might be cut off round the camp. This order
was such, that every one was ready, and used
the same place, and they put the night
in the same place. The next day the camp was
camped, and continued its march. And the
night officers of the same rules. I must observe
all the Sains to come before him from the
ancient of Toclathien to the centuries, he spoke
to all with a great deal of civility, to make
their children, and he gave them as well as
some of armor, as also some of

way with many foughs and marshes, which they pass'd with extreme fatigue; after which they encamp'd to rest themselves.

In the mean while the scouts brought word that three regiments of the enemy were there; then came further advice, that there were a great body of soldiers; Timur sent his horse and advanced again, and sent his army to march in order of battle; then one of our scouts brought word of the Mys whom he had taken; they inquired of him concerning every thing they were desirous knowing, and then put him to death; tho they had seen some regiments of the enemy, yet the army did not approach; and as the regiments disappear'd, Timur sent Sevin, Behader and Argoun Chah to gain intelligence, and

thoroughly to examine into the condition of his Army. That he might succeed, and learnt that the remainder of the army themselves were return'd, he sent them off without being able to give them any advice. He then sent a detachment of his army to search out certain rows of the enemy. He then departed with a good number of the most valiant horse of the army, and a great hall; he arriv'd at a wood, from whence at some distance he perceiv'd a burning fire, he observ'd a stirr'd up, he heard voices, and immediately sent some men to learn from them what was the matter. Who brought him word, that they were some of the enemy, of whom there was a troop in those quarters. He thereupon prepar'd for battle, and went to fall upon 'em: these men seeing there was no other remedy, than fighting, flood their ground to save their lives; thus the fight began, and the war was soon reviv'd again; they resisted

Mobacher
company of him; he inform'd himself from the prisoners of the condition of Tocatumich Can. They told him he had caus'd it to be proclaim'd that the army shou'd assemble at a certain place; that in consequence of that order they were there, and found no one, but knew not the reason why they fail'd of coming to the rendezvous; that they wander'd as vagabonds in the woods and desarts, while they had the misfortune to miss Mobacher, and be taken prisoners! After they had learnt from 'em what they most desir'd, they were put to death by

ought to
son of the prince or
wounded; he felt on
that he was upon his road to
the Can, but that he did not find him
rendevous, and that he could give no other
count. Timur the Great, son of Emir F-
with his army, having Sainte Maure,
other brave men in quality of tents, with or-
der, that as soon as the enemy's troops were
lost of any of the enemy's troops, they should
take care, if the others were the greatest num-
ber, to show themselves and immediately
march away, by that means to deceive
the enemy, and that they should
not fail to give him the same
should happen. The Emir then
march'd according to it.

With this power, and advantage upon our men,
Sainte Maure also advanc'd against 'em, spake
to 'em himself, and return'd flying. The Emir
immediately gave notice what had pass'd to
Mouli, who join'd Timur with all expedition,
and gave him an account of all that had
and of what had pass'd, with the names of the
nests.

* A province bordering on that of Samarkand.

* Capital of Capchar on the Volga, page No. 44.

Barak having received this advice, he and the Emir Aikout-Beg, with some of the best of their army, advanced to meet the enemy.

Our men having received this advice, the Emir Aikout-Beg, with some of the best of their army, advanced to meet the enemy. He was particularly enjoined to use great prudence and exact preparation. This Emir halted his departure, cross'd the marshes and rivers, and join'd Emir Gelal Hamid, and the other scouts. From there he advanc'd, and perceiv'd on the top of a hill, who seem'd diverting them-

west, upon ascending the hill, perceived on the other side, thirty companies of horse in armor, rang'd in order of battle in a valley, who watch'd in this ambuscade an opportunity to surprize us. Our men stopp'd in this place, and sent advice of it to Aikout-Beg, who immediately departed, all order'd the best of his army, all precautions to view the state of the enemy, but as there was a great number of em, he thought it not proper to attack 'em, but imagin'd it better to return without noise, and repass the waters and marshes. He sent back his soldiers, while he remain'd with some horse behind the enemy, who observing the Emir

... .. and that
s and marshes were so small, and
d hinder the bringing any more, they
This valiant hero
ly sustain'd their attack with unparalleled
tion: he kept back with his arrows and
pany, while he and his companions made a
brave resistance, to give time to his followers
and comrades to pull these arrows and marshes,
which himself had also done, if his horse had
not been unfortunately shot, and him with
an arrow; and while he was remounting
a second, that was also shot, and immediately
died. Then the enemy charg'd the king on
all sides: but this intrepid person, the
wounded himself against the
rounded him: he won't stop
fighting, till his enemy, who
cut him down.

... .. Warriors.
... .. was follow'd by that of Herin
Ton of Yadhgar Berlas, an illustrious man
well for his birth, for he was a relation
mur, as his merit, being of the most
men of that age. The famous Ramade
and the celebrated Mehemet Erdat, w
slain in this fight: these were the
rains Timur had. On this sad day
army of Tocatmach Can was
lamp which is going out, and
last effort, casts a light greater than
in the room it is in. It is from this
the power of Tocatmach continually
as will be related hereafter.

Timur then arriv'd at the bank of the
having near his person the Emir Hadgi
and the Emir Gehancha: he got off his horse
well.

well as his guards, and cross'd the river with Chagatai
 them, notwithstanding the arrows of the enemy,
 which made an extraordinary noise while they
 flew thro' the air. Our men having cross'd the
 river, follow'd the enemy as lions with their prey:
 the screams of the invincible Timur loud, the
 preparations, and artifices of these foxes, they
 were noted, and constrain'd to fly, leaving on
 the spot the greatest part of their soldiers. Ge-
 lal-Hamid was remarkable above others: he at-
 tack'd with thirty men three companies of the
 enemy who stood in his way, whom he exceeding-
 ly gain'd; and he acquitted himself of this action
 with so much skill, valor and courage, that he
 obtain'd all the glory a warrior can expect from
 the most noble and vigorous enterprize. Nedila
 also fought like a brave man, and made appear
 his merit, which he had the happiness of doing in
 Timur's presence; as also Chah Malek, son of
 Logamurken, who did not shoot one arrow
 without wounding or killing him he aim'd at.
 Timur's army was six leagues on each hand, also
 the army of the enemy, which they
 surpris'd three of the enemy, whom they brought
 to Timur.

Then this prince return'd to his camp, and or-
 der'd the brave men to come before him, a list
 of whom had been drawn up. He highly prais'd
 them, and that posterity might be put in mind of
 their valor, he not only load'd 'em with favors,
 but made 'em of the order of the Tercans, and
 coron'd the Yefauls to receive 'em whenever
 they came to the palace, and admit 'em to his

¹ Yefaul and ²Chagatai signify the same. They are door-keepers, and have ³keys to enter into the chamber and closet of the grand Can.

He also order'd that no man they nor
 their children shou'd be condemn'd or even
 question'd for any crime, except they have con-
 fessed it nine times.

Timur declar'd that these privileges shou'd be
 preserv'd to their successors for seven generations.
 He granted several other favors to the relations
 of the Emir Arcoutmug, who had the honor of
 martyrdom; and among the rest to Ghah Malek
 son of Calagigai. He gave him the posts and
 titles of honor which belong'd to his father, as
 also the great seal, as well as the seal of the
 butterfly.

And as it was near six months since the impe-
 rial standard set out, and it always advanc'd to-
 wards the north, the army came to a place so
 near the pole, that in the evening, before the
 sun was entirely set, the rays of the sun shon'
 westward in the east.

Timur, in consequence of this, was not permitted,
 according to the ordinance of the Mahometan

law, that the evening prayer shou'd be made.

Timur departed from that place with his stan-
 dard display'd, and went to encamp on a neigh-
 boring mountain; where he staid till next
 morning, and then decamp'd. Tocatmug can
 never expect the arrival of our army, but his
 scouts appear'd every day to skirmish with us,
 and surprize us if they found an opportunity: yet
 as soon as our soldiers oblig'd em to give battle,
 they fled with all speed into the desert.

In the mean while Timur held a council with
 the princes his sons, and his generals, and as it
 was there resolv'd on, he order'd the Emir

* A little seal in the shape of a butterfly, which the
 Persia makes use of to this day.

Qamar Cheik to put himself at the head of twenty thousand horse, and to march with expedition to engage the enemy, and if possible to secure his victory. He nam'd the Emirs Sevinidgie, and the Emir Soudger, the Emir Osman, Hasan, and some others, to accompany him: and at the same time the twenty thousand men departed: and the Mirza made em march so expeditiously, that on the morrow they had advice that the scouts of both parties were met. Timur immediately got ready his army, and imploring God's assistance who had always made him victorious, he was full of fury, if one may so say, and march'd to fight the enemy. The air was so dark, the clouds so thick, and the rains so great, that one cou'd not see three paces.

C H A P. XIV.

The Mirza's army was defeated in a battle which was fought on the 15th day of the month Regeb 793, and the Mirza fled thereupon.

THE fifteenth day of the month Regeb 793, which answers to the year of the Moon, the air clear'd up after six days bad weather. Timur rang'd the army in order of battel; and because the affair was of great consequence, he us'd the utmost care. He divid'd the army into seven bodies, which was never before practis'd among his troops; but it was believ'd this was done by inspiration from God, to make Timur victorious, because the number seven is esteem'd sacred and mysterious. But as this knowledg

The History of Timur Beg

Book III. belongs only to those who are acquainted with the septenary and cabalistic numbers, we will say no more of it. Timur gave the command of the first body to Sultan Mahmoud Chan, which was to serve for the vanguard; and the Emir Soliman Chah was his lieutenant general. He plac'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan at the head of the second, which was more numerous, and pass'd for the main body; and this prince had the most skilful officers to serve under him. The third, which serv'd as the rear, or body of reserve, was compos'd of the regiment of guards, and twenty companys of soldiers, chosen out of the bravest of the army, and those who had been us'd to war; and it was commanded by Timur himself, who kept his post behind the second body, at a distance from the others, that in the heat of the battel, if any part of the army shou'd be overpower'd, fresh

might be sent to succour it. The fourth, which serv'd for a right wing, was under the command of Mirza Miran Chah, who had for his lieutenant general the prince Mehemet Sultan Chah. He prepar'd this party of troops in battel, after having made all the soldiers ready their great and little bucklers. The fifth body, which serv'd for a vanguard to the right wing, was led by the Emir Hadgi Sultan, a person who was usually in the greatest dangers, and on the most difficult affairs, out of which he wou'd bring himself with glory and distinction. The sixth, which consisted of the troops of Andecan, compos'd the left wing of the army, and had for its leader Mirza Omar Chah. The seventh body serv'd as a vanguard to the left wing, which was commanded by Birdi Beg, son of Sar Bonga, and by Godabad Hafsi, two Emirs who had on a hundred occasions given

given marks of the greatest valor, and the most unblamable conduct.

All the Emirs and followers of the Tomans, Hezares and others being thus fix'd in their posts, every one according to his rank; the cavalry and infantry march'd in order of battel, under their respective generals; and the motion upon the march of this numerous army resembled the waves of the impetuous sea. Some soldiers were arm'd with bucklers, swords and arrows; others had in their hands war-clubs and partizans; others lances and pikes; most of 'em were cover'd with cuirasses. The princes and Emirs had coats of mail, or breast-plates of iron, and all of 'em wore on their heads helmets so neatly polish'd, that the great number of 'em dazzled the eyes of the beholders. On the other hand, they perceiv'd the enemy's army, the soldiers of which were compleatly arm'd. Tocatmich Can had divided 'em into three bodies according to custom, that is, into a main body, a vanguard, and a rear-guard. All his generals and captains were of the race of Turchi; among the rest Tach Tach Aglen, Aglen Aglen, Ilcimich Aglen, Bic Pouda Aglen, Ali Aglen, Chinta Aglen, and others; as also Emirs of great esteem, as Ali and Sofimān Soufi Gangorat*, Norouz Gangorat, Actro, Acbouta, Oroufione Cayat*, Aisa Bei eldest brother of Aidecou, Ajan Bei, Serai, Kuke Bei, Yagelbi Behrine, Congourbi, and other great Emirs of Capchac; they rang'd themselves in form of a half-moon, and then came in view.

* Gangorat is an illustrious royal family among the Moguls.

* Cayat, a Mogul lord. Behrine a Mogul lord.

Then Timur, thro' an exact survey, and
discovering Tocatmich, order'd all his army to
dismount, and to prepare their tents as if they
would encamp: which Tocatmich perceiving,
he was surpriz'd at the little regard our monarch
to his troops. This action made him alter his
measures, and he rang'd his army with greater
care than he commonly us'd. Thus the two
partys being in view of each other, it was ob-
serv'd that the army of Capchao surpass'd ours
by some companys. Timur, who confided more
in the assistance of heaven than in the multitude
of soldiers, and the abundance of arms, am-
munition, and pages, got off his horse, and
address'd himself to God by prayer, as he al-
ways did before a battel. He turn'd his
head towards the ground, and pray'd to God,
who was the distributer of laurels and crowns.
Having remounted his horse, he look'd
up to heaven, and said, O God, thou art great;
and displaying their ensigns and standards,
they beat their drums, as well as their great
and little kettle drums. They made the
great cry call'd *Souman* to begin the
battel at the sound of the terrible
trumpet *Kerrenai*; and it may be said,
never was so great a confusion between
heaven and earth. Then the excellent *Imam*,
Said Bereke, of the race of Mahomet, who had
formerly predicted to Timur his ascent to the
throne, lift up his hands to heaven, uncover'd
his head, and humbling himself before God, he
sought victory for the emperor: he recited with
extraordinary zeal a passage of the Alcoran

* This passage of the Alcoran, according to the
Cabalists, is full of a secret and mysterious sense.

Chap. 10

obtain it; and at length he took up some dirt, which he flung in the enemy's faces, saying, "Your faces shall be blacken'd thro' the shame of the defeat." Then he said to Timur, "Go where you please, you shall be victorious."

At the same time the bravest men on both sides began the fight with half-pikes, swords and bow-clubs. The Emir Hadgi Seifeddin was most active in the service of his prince. He was the first who with sword in hand rush'd violently upon the left wing of the enemy, which was over-against him. This wing sometime disrupted the victory; but by his good conduct he at length overthrew it, and destroy'd all the measures the enemy had taken. As their soldiers exceeded ours in number, they advanc'd to attack the squadron of Hadgi Seifeddin in the rear. But Gehancha Behader, who perceiv'd their motion, advanc'd towards them with his regiment, which he had detach'd out of the body of re-
 main'd, and fell on 'em with sword and
 and made 'em fly to return
 other side, and made 'em return with the
 precipitancy. The Mirza Miran Chah, who
 commanded the right wing, at the same time fell
 upon 'em; and his attack was so successful, that
 having put the cavalry into confusion, he over-
 came whatsoever stood in his way, and routed
 the enemy's left wing. Osman Abbas advanc'd
 at the head of his regiments of Caprac, and at-
 tacked the companies of the enemy; but he fell
 from his horse in the midst of 'em, and had been
 in great danger, if he had not found means to
 remount. Then he return'd to attack the three
 companies of skirmishers, whom he put to the
 rout. Cheik Ali Behader on this occasion per-
 form'd

former exploits of the utmost valor. On the other hand, the Mirza Mehemet Suleiman advanced at the head of the main body, and broke thro' that of the enemy. The Mirza Omar Ghori, at the head of the left wing, also perform'd whatever cou'd be expected from a skilful general and a valiant soldier, defeating and cutting to pieces all who resist'd him. Birdi Bei and Codedad Huseni, so briskly oppos'd the right wing of the enemy, that they oblig'd it to give ground and fly. All the Emirs resist'd those who oppos'd 'em, and the field of battle was cover'd with blood.

Then Focadmich observ'd how his troops decrased. He found he cou'd not be long able to withstand the squadrons which Temour commanded in person, for which reason he turn'd his horse another way. He then sent the Mirza Omar Ghori to oppose the advance of the army, and he himself, accompanied by a great number of the bravest Emirs of his empire, attack'd Chah Temour with the utmost vigor: and tho' the latter, with his lieutenant Fomanich, defend'd themselves with courage equal to that of Focadmich, and let fly great showers of arrows on their enemys; yet the soldiers of Focadmich, imitating the Fedais of the Ismaelites, who sacrific'd their lives at their prince's order, without fear of death, fought with so much fury, that the brave resistance of their men was soon frust'ed and heartening 'em, that it even serv'd to animate 'em. They behav'd themselves with

! Those who were formerly call'd assassins.

so much courage in every attack, with their Chakrams
 swords and half-pikes, that they gain'd the ad-
 vantage of our army, and almost defeated the
 whole host. They rush'd into the
 very midst of our army, and were about
 to push us back behind our army, with design
 to keep their ground and gain the victory. But
 the Mirza Omar Cheik perceiv'd their motions,
 and with his cavalry fell upon Tocatzmich; eve-
 ry man, holding his buckler before him, fought
 with resolution. On the other hand, Timur,
 who was in pursuit of the enemy's main body
 which he had routed, was told by Tchoko Tar-
 vaphi, that Tocatzmich had travers'd our army
 with many squadrons; and had form'd some
 ranks behind ours, having resolv'd to maintain
 his ground. Timur reflecting on this ad-
 vice, which was confirm'd by an express from
 Mirza Omar Cheik, desist'd from the pursuit of
 those he had defeated, to make Tocatzmich re-
 pent of his rashness. He carry'd with him his
 army, but Tocatzmich on sight
 of the great army, and
 being surpris'd with fear and despair, he con-
 sider'd the desire and ambition of reigning, to
 save his life, so that his reflection only on oppo-
 sing his benefactor, oblig'd him shamefully to
 fly. The lords and generals of his army, not
 being able to make any farther resistance, fol-
 low'd their master's example, and their standards
 were cast down. Our soldiers on this defeat
 were encouraged against the conquer'd, and
 closely pursuing 'em, made a terrible slaughter;
 so that nothing but confusion was seen in the
 Mogul troops. All the army of Capchac were
 dispers'd; and for the space of forty leagues
 whither they were pass'd, nothing could be
 seen

THE DEATH OF TIMUR

He still found his armor of blood, and his garments cover'd
with dead bodies.

The rashness and ingratitude of Tamerlane being thus punish'd by the justice of God, Timur having reveng'd himself on the perfidy of the king of Capthac, he got off his horse, and fell upon his face, to return thanks to the King of kings for his victory, acknowledging that he had obtain'd it thro his goodness and clemency alone. The children of Timur, the princes of the blood, the generals, and all the great Emirs and officers came to him; they fell on their knees, congratulated him on his success, and sprinkled gold and precious stones upon him, according to the custom of the Moguls, in token of their joy, at this important victory. Timur embrac'd the princes, Emirs, and gave many testimonys of affection to the Emirs and great officers; and praising their valiant actions, he made them all rich and happy by his grandeur. He then chose out seven horse out of every ten in the army, to go in pursuit of the fugitives. These brave conquerors departed with expedition to overtake the conquered. But as these miserable people having before the Volga, and behind 'em the vengeance of our men, they cou'd not fly far, despairing of passing the river, or of obtaining any quarter. Thus few of the enemy escap'd their hands. The women, children, baggage, and goods of the conquer'd fell into the hands of the conquerors; and it wou'd be difficult to enumerate the quantity of spoils which our soldiers brought away.

We have related that Condge Aglen, Tamerlane's Cotluc Aglen, and Aidecon, three princes of the royal blood of Fouchi, bore an inveterate hatred to Totatmich; that they had fled from him,

him, and seeking refuge at the court of Timur Chap. 10
 were attach'd to his service both in time of peace
 and war. This prince always treated 'em
 favorably, and with great marks of distinc-
 tion. He gave 'em, in presents of hawks, pre-
 cious stones, robes of honor, and horses of great
 price. After Eocatumuch was vanquish'd, but he
 had the good Fortune to save his life from a
 thousand dangers; these three princes, seeing
 the empire of Touchi brought so low, and the
 people dispers'd, fell on their knees before Ti-
 mur, and told him, that if he approv'd of it,
 they wou'd go in search of the hords, which they
 formerly commanded, and bring 'em over to
 his service.

Timur consented to it, and gave 'em letters-
 patent, that no one might molest 'em, or any
 who belong'd to 'em; and he exempted their sub-
 jects from the right of paying the Gan, which is
 a kind of tax. These princes, after their or-
 ders were given 'em, went in search of their
 hords, with a great deal of joy. Timur
 when he was at the bank of the Volga, he encamp'd on the
 plain of Ourtonpe, which for its verdure, fresh
 and pure air, surpasses all others. Here the
 tent and imperial throne was fix'd, to give a
 magnificent entertainment to the Emirs. All
 the camp, which consisted of a great number
 of tents and pavilions, was compass'd with a
 curtain of brocade with gold flowers, which ap-
 pear'd more magnificent, in that this camp
 was three leagues in length every way, and a
 man's voice cou'd not be heard from one side
 to the other.

Temour Cochuc Aglen, who was gone in
 search of his former subjects, found 'em; and

Revolt of
 prince Te-
 mour Cot-
 luc Aglen.

Revolt of
Aidecou.

He had no sooner got out of the city, than he had the ambition to think of ascending the throne of Tounchi. He forgot the obligations he owed to Timur; and instead of keeping his promise of returning to court with his subjects, he led 'em into the midst of the desert. Aidecou was not more sincere than the other; for having found his men, he march'd with 'em on his side the country, notwithstanding the agreement he had made. A natural enemy will never become a true friend; a thistle will bear no other fruit than thorns; the seed of the bitter apple will not produce balm; a reed for mats will give no sugar; nor a female pearl become a male; he who is by nature vicious, will never be made virtuous. There was only Condge Agies, who having found part of his subjects, return'd to court according to his promise. This prince had always been extremely favor'd by the emperor, and was his favorite, having liv'd with him in his most secret pleasures; for which reason he met with a handsom reception.

All the Emirs and warriors, whom the emperor had sent out to pillage the country, return'd victorious, loaded with booty, as horses, camels, oxen, sheep, and a great number of captives of every age and sex. They took all the enemys who had hid themselves in the hills of the Volga, and brought 'em laden with chains, and put 'em all into the hands of Timur, to distribute 'em as he thought fit. All the poor men who were in the service of the army, and who by labor and the sweat of their brows, could scarce find subsistence, on this occasion got together so many horses and sheep, that when they had a design to return to their country, they could not carry with 'em all their goods,

goods, but were oblig'd to leave part behind. Chap. 10
 em.

Among the slaves were a great many beautiful girls, some of whom were plac'd in Timur's seraglio, and the rest distributed among the Emirs. They also chose five thousand handsome young men, who were put in the Seraglio, to be instructed in the particular service of the emperor, and to have the care of the officers and posts in his household. Then Timur order'd that preparations shou'd be made for a solemn and magnificent feast in the meadow of Guntoupa, on the bank of the Volga; which was more sumptuous than any that had ever been in the country of Touran. The several sorts of meats, as well as of liquors, were serv'd up in vessels of gold, or of precious stone, by the hands of the most beautiful women in the world, which made every thing appear more agreeable. The songs, which celebrated the victory of Timur, were at the same time sung on the banks of the Volga, and us'd in songs of triumph. The emperor, who us'd to sit on a throne of gold, and was surrounded by his officers, sat on a throne of silver, and was surrounded by his officers. The Volga was the seat of the empire of Touchi, son of the great Genghis Can; and his successors have always made it the place of their residence. Timur had the satisfaction to continue his diversions on their throne. The most beautiful ladys of the seraglio attended him; and each of the lords had his own with the cop in her hand to accompany the voice and airs of the musicians who sung in the tune Ochac, which was only perform'd when the assembly was inclin'd to amorous conversation. All the army had a share in the diversion, which made the soldiers, who

CHAP. XV.

Timur returns from the desert of Capchat to the seat of his empire.

AFTER this famous victory, there remaining no more enemys in the desert, or in the isles of the Volga, Timur began his march to Samarcand with the army, followed by a great train of captives of both sexes, which exceedingly pleas'd the soldiers, who had their share in the goods, money, and slaves. The inhabitants of the desert of Capchat dispos'd their portable tents, which need not be pack'd up at decamping, and set them up again at an encampment. When they decamp, they plac'd these tents upon camels, and march in that manner to the place where they wou'd encamp next. Our soldiers in the way diverted themselves with the conversation of their beautiful slaves. Tho' in other conquests the goods and slaves were brought away, yet in this, even the houses were carry'd home; which made the camp become so spacious, that if any one lost his tent, it wou'd require a long time to find it again.

When the army arriv'd at the river of Oxus, the love of his country made Condge Aglar, who was a native of Capchat, fly from the army with his men. Which verifiy the maxim of men of sense, that one ought not to trust strangers; for sooner or later we shall be betray'd by 'em.

Some days after the army had cross'd the Tic, Timur, leaving the Emir Hadgi Serfeddin and other Emirs, to conduct the body of the army and the baggage, went before the rest of the army, without considering the danger he ran, so that in the month of Zilhadge 792, he came to Sabran, thence to Otrar; and at length cross'd the river of Sihon, from whence he arriv'd at Samarcand, where the inhabitants receiv'd their joy, as well as the princes his sons, the queens, the princesses, and the Magistars, who sprinkl'd upon him gold and precious stones, and congratulated him on his victory and happy return. Then public feasts were prepar'd, accompany'd with comforts of vocal and instrumental musick, perform'd by the finest voices and instruments; in which the newest airs, and charming songs compos'd on the victorys of this great prince, were often sung. This feast lasted many days, and there was nothing wanting which might demonstrate a compleat joy. At this time Mirza Miran Chah arriv'd at the city, who had just before his departure from Tachkent, cross'd the great plain of Barfin, in the beginning of Muharrem 794, which answers to the year of the Monkey, the Emir Hadgi Serfeddin, whom Timur left at the river of Tic to conduct the body of the army and the baggage, arriv'd at the plain of Barfin. The army which rendezvous'd at Tachkent in order to go to Capchat, departed from that town in the month of Sefer 793, and arriv'd at Barfin in the month of Muharrem, we may say that this important campaign continu'd eleven months.

September
1391.

* Foreign
princes.

December,
1391.

January,
1391.

As there was a great quantity of booty, and the vast plain of Barfin was cover'd with the flocks

He took the flocks and cattel taken from the enemy: the emperor was willing that the prince, his sons, the princesses, and ladies of the court, the Chieffs and chief men of the state, who were not at the war, should share in the booty. He distributed among 'em several beautiful girls and boys: gave 'em sheep and cattel in abundance, and a great many fine horses. All the odds pass'd the winter in this place with Timur: and in the beginning of the spring this prince return'd to Samarcand. He repair'd the river before Cogende, where he entertain'd this charming court with a general chase, because this place was full of all sorts of beasts, of which a vast number were kill'd.

CHAP. XXV.

Pir Mehemed, son of Gehanghir.

WHEN Timur with all his court arriv'd at the plain of Akiar near Kech, he appointed the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Gehanghir, governor of the kingdom which formerly belong'd to the grand Sultan Mahmoud: that is, all the country from Gaxna* and Cabul as far as India; and from Candahar to the river Indus*, call'd in Persian, *Abfend*. He order'd several officers, great Emirs and Nevians to at-

* A town between Zehel and Candahar, long. 100. lat. 33. 30.

* Otherwise call'd *Abfend* and *Mehran*. It springeth from the lake of Behre, near Lahor. long. 105. lat. 32.

and this prince: of which number were the famous Cotobeddin, son of the Emir Solyman Chah, Behloul son of the Emir Dervich Berlas, Islam son of the Emir Berlas, and many other lords. These princes, with the Emirs went at the head of a great army to take possession of the government: and Timur departed from Khar to Samarcand, where many princes and great lords begg'd leave of him to marry their children with princeesses of their rank and birth: to which this prince not only consented, but he wou'd also be himself at their feasts, to let 'em see that he shar'd in their joy. He went out of the city to encamp in the delicious meadow of Caughenl, where he gave orders that preparations shou'd be made for the magnificent entertainments and diversions which shou'd accompany these marriages. A royal banquet was provided, at which the tables were set in form of an army rang'd in order of battel, Timur plac'd at the head of 'em on a throne of state. The ladies and damsels were on one side, and the lords and gentlemen on the other, all clothed in the richest

by the greatest lords of Asia: so that they imagin'd themselves in the reign of Ebrahimb, an ancient emperor of Touran, whose great actions are recorded by historians.

There was the greatest plenty imaginable at the banquet: the musicians even surpass'd themselves on the lutes, Ochac and Ozzal. And to render this joy more pleat, the Mirza Pir Mehemed, son

* Ebrahimb, emperor of Touran, was the enemy of Roustem, celebrated in the ancient history of Persia, which contains one hundred thirty thousand years.

* Oriental tales for numerous songs.

Book II. of ~~the~~ ~~history~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~emperor~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~East~~ ~~Indies~~ ~~and~~ ~~his~~ ~~brother~~ ~~the~~ ~~Mirza~~ ~~Rou-~~
by the emperor's order, the ~~same~~ day mar-
ried the daughters of Cayaseddin ~~the~~ ~~son~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~emperor~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~East~~ ~~Indies~~ ~~and~~ ~~his~~ ~~brother~~ ~~the~~ ~~Mirza~~ ~~Rou-~~
the Mirza Aboubecre, son of the Mirza ~~the~~ ~~son~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~emperor~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~East~~ ~~Indies~~ ~~and~~ ~~his~~ ~~brother~~ ~~the~~ ~~Mirza~~ ~~Rou-~~
Chah, espous'd the daughter of the Emir ~~the~~ ~~son~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~emperor~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~East~~ ~~Indies~~ ~~and~~ ~~his~~ ~~brother~~ ~~the~~ ~~Mirza~~ ~~Rou-~~
Seifeddin. They had apartments prepar'd for
em, and particular officers assign'd 'em.

C H A P. XVII.

*Timur departs for a war of five years con-
nuance.*

WE have a tradition of Mahomet, where-
in he assures us that he was the bearer of
the sword, and that the most happy of
which he said, ~~the~~ ~~word~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~emperor~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~East~~ ~~Indies~~ ~~and~~ ~~his~~ ~~brother~~ ~~the~~ ~~Mirza~~ ~~Rou-~~
~~the~~ ~~word~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~emperor~~ ~~of~~ ~~the~~ ~~East~~ ~~Indies~~ ~~and~~ ~~his~~ ~~brother~~ ~~the~~ ~~Mirza~~ ~~Rou-~~
the protection of the sword :
which demonstrates that kings are not peaceable
possessors of the throne, but when they are vic-
torious; and that subjects can't enjoy quietness
their families, but by the protection of the sword
of their prince. The scepter and crown
a certain poet, are the reward of that prince
who undergoes the fatigues of war, and arrives
at the head of his army, that he may arrive at
grandure and glory. Thus Timur did not gain
an empire before he was master of the siege of
the capital city of Sistan. When this prince was
on his return from the toilsome but glorious cam-
paign of Capchac, his ambition prompted him to
repass by the kingdom of Iran, which he had
before conquer'd, to suppress the disorders which
had got footing there, thro the presumption of
some rash fellows, who during the absence of the
court

The History of Timur-Bek.

- Book III. the nation among the poor. The people's prayers, and the charities of the grandees soon had their desired effect; and what is writ in many places prov'd true, that alms prolong life: for the night before the fifteenth of Chaban, which is call'd Chebeberat, or the night of breves, God restor'd the emperor to his health. The joy at this good news was universal: and Timur order'd the Mirza Mehmed Sultan to return to the command of his vanguard; while himself took here the twenty-four of Chaban 724. He shew'd himself to the people, who wish'd him health and prosperity.

CHAP. XVIII.

- June 26. 1392. Timur gave orders concerning the conduct of his army; and the sixth of the same month he order'd the drum to be beat, after the astrologers had fix'd the happy moment: and he departed at the head of his troops. He sent the Emir Hader Sultan to Samarcand, and went to Amouye on the tenth of Ramadan, from whence he sent back to his capital the eunuchs Serai Mule Canum, Toman Aga, and other eunuchs: and two days after, the Mirza Chirac also receiv'd orders to return home. The emperor embrac'd and kiss'd him, and having comforted him for his separation, he curs'd those thousand times, and recommending him to God, took leave of him. The same day the Sultan set out for Samarcand, Timur departed from Amouye, cross'd the Gihon, and enter'd into Coras-

Corassana. Some days after he went to Macan Ghaur and Abivard, and on the twenty-fourth of Ramadan to Yaffi Dabon. While on the appearance of the new moon he gave the prayer of Boiram, which is the first of the Moslems. He then spent these happy days. He at length departed for Ngazigage Gabonchan, where he joined the Mirza Mehemet Sulran, who commanded the body of the scouts. He also found there the Mirza Pir-Mehomed, son of Gehanghir, at the head of his troops, and the Emir Gehancha with his, who according to orders, were already come from Condoz and Bacalan to join the scouts. The princess Canzade, widow of Gehanghir, came thither also from Herat; she put a stole round her neck, according to custom, that she might have the honor to present to Timur the princes his sons, presumptive heirs of the crown. At this place she gave a magnificent entertainment to the emperor, who made her several rich presents. Timur decamp'd on the twenty-seventh of Ramadan, and arrived on the first of the first of the month. The same day the venerable Said Berens brought to Timur the Said Cais Eddin, son of Kems-laddin, with considerable presents. He told his majesty, that his father order'd him to come and submit to him, and to shew his willingness

Aug. 15

to engage between Abivard and Elter Aboi in Corassana. There is a mountain Ngazigage near Shemerkand.

A river which passes by a town of the same name, in the province of Macan, on the frontiers of Ghilan, and runs into the Caspian, long. 89. lat. 38.

Kems-laddin was a son of false devotion, of the race of Mahomet, who by his hypocrisy made himself chief of his party, and master of the town of Macan in Mzandran.

Mahanasar², which are three towns situate four Chap. 10
leagues from Amol, on the shore of the Caspian
sea; and that they were built on an ad-
jacent hill, which was on one side, and
instead of a wall, the high and steep precipi-
ces which were commanded for the space of a
mile by the sea, which in turbulent weather
flow'd within the rocks, so that the place
seem'd to be in the middle of water. Round
about the wall they had fix'd great trees near
one another, the branches of which were so close-
ly join'd together, that they form'd instead of a
second wall. The princes of Amol and Sari re-
tir'd unto this place, with their relations, hous-
holds, treasures, and whatever they
had that was precious. The rich inhabitants of
these countrys, and the foreign merchants them-
selves, also retir'd thither with all their effects,
confiding in the strength of their walls, and the
inaccessibleness of the place: and thus this for-
tress was fill'd with so great a quantity of gold,
silver, and treasures, that the most skilful arithme-
tician could not compute the value of 'em.
The Sultan then prepar'd to march with expedition, and
the lakos and marthes of these forells, and in
three days arriv'd at Amol. He order'd the
Serd Cayas Eddin to go and confer with his
father, and bring him to him. And as this na-
tion had always the character of being faithless,
irreligious, and deprav'd in their morals, God
permitted that the infamous sentence which was
us'd to be pronounc'd in, and the other Cheriffs,
should be pronounc'd by his own son, whom Ti-

² Long. 28. 8. lat. 37. 50.

³ A town of Ghilan near the Caspian, Long. 27. 25. lat. 37.

Bokkhi, now sent to him, ordering him to make the fol-
 lowing speech: "You are men not to be trust-
 ed, and of a corrupt religion; you have no
 temple to worship God in, and you assemble
 no where to perform acts of piety according
 to your duty. You neither observe the com-
 mandments of God, nor the counsels of the
 prophets, and when any one is about to call
 on him to pray, you turn by your side to death."
 The names of Said and Ghalib are profaned
 by you, and you are unworthy of the honor
 of being descended from the great Mahomet.
 As soon as the son of Said Kemal-eddin was
 set out, Timur order'd that the water in all the
 reservoirs, cisterns, and other vessels, which
 were in Anatolia, should be spilt. When this was
 done, the army began its march, and the
 army cry'd. And as it was about to enter the
 city, they shout'd and sung songs of praise to
 God, and to the great Mahomet, and to the
 great Timur. This was
 tedious work; for they cou'd advance but one
 league a day, and were oblig'd to encamp in
 moorish ground upon fascines. Thus at length
 this country, which was so full of trees that the
 sun cou'd scarce penetrate it, became like a bare
 plain, after the army had cut 'em down. On
 the twenty-sixth of Zilcade 794, the hosts of
 both partys join'd, and there were skirmishes
 in which the blood flow'd on all sides. Hubbi
 Coja did surprizing actions, but he was unfor-
 tunately slain, being willing to sacrifice his life
 to his honor, while he imagin'd that a warrior
 whose reputation is famous among posterity, ne-
 ver dies. As he was the son of Cheik Behader,
 his loss was regretted not only for his valor, but
 because of his birth. Three days after this bat-
 tle of the scouts, wherein neither party gain'd

Septemb.
 21. 1392.

the advantage, the Sept Remission Dera and Chapra
Moulana Anadad they sent to cast themselves
at the feet of Timur, to beseech his clemency.
They desired him to pardon them, and brought him to

on condition that the Chiriff, who commanded
in all these quarters, should send him part of
the goods of the inhabitants, and one of each
of their children in hostage, so that he might be
assur'd of their fidelity. He told them, that if
the Chiriff would exactly execute this order,
they might then be forgiven, and come before
him with confidence, since he had given his
word for their safety.

Timur then return'd home, and declar'd the
will of Timur to their brethren: but their ill
fortune depriv'd 'em of their reason; for imag-
ining themselves able to make a defence, they
were so far from hearkning to his proposals,
that they caus'd the kettledrums to be beat,
and war to be declar'd. Timur, on advice of
his son, the Prince of Samarkand, Pir Pacha, Ar-
ghun, and other nobles, march'd to the relief of
the beleaguerr'd city, and the banners of tri-
umphal fire, that they might get possession of
the enemy's works, and attack Mahanagar. They
follow'd their instructions, and were so success-
ful, that they surpris'd the enemy's vessels, and
crested horses-tails on sticks instead of stan-
dards. They distributed all their soldiers into
three divisions, whom they brought by squadrons
to the foot of the walls, at the sound of kettle-
drums and trumpets; their colors being dis-
play'd. The soldiers with their cuirasses on,
and sword in hand, made the great cry to begin
the attack, and besiege Mahanagar in form.
They cast a great number of arrows, with pitch
and

Book III and on the fire, from the smoke and the
 Nov. 25. 1392. smoke, it is said that the city of Samarkand
 was become a sea of fire. The attack was so
 vigorous, that those who guarded the out-works
 were oblig'd to fly into the place to save their
 lives; while others at the same time scald'd the
 walls. The sultan of Zhetysay, Timur took
 horse and approach'd the place, which put the
 enemy in confusion. They held a council on what
 they had to do; and perceiving they would be
 at last oblig'd to surrender, considering their
 advantages, Timur's men had already gain'd
 they resolv'd to implore his clemency, before
 they were reduc'd to too great extremity.
 They came out of the place in company and
 calling themselves on the feet of the general
 Timur, implor'd his protection, and confidently
 trusted all their affairs in his
 hands, obliging him to spare

himself, so that they were
 able to have held out a long time, and to
 have harass'd his troops; and moreover, that
 they had acted thus, because they knew they had
 to do with the most generous prince in the uni-
 verse. Timur highly reprimand'd 'em for their
 errors in religion, for they were Christians, and
 threaten'd to hang 'em all if they would not
 profess the orthodox tenets of the Saracens; but
 he was at length more moderate, at least of
 their nobleness; and the honor they had to de-
 scend from Mahomet, whom he regarded as their
 seal and the greatest of the prophets. He told
 'em that this consideration gain'd with the most

* A sect of Persians at present.

* A sect of the Ottomans and the Moguls of India.

cession of the place and their submission, ap-
 prais'd his wrath, and forgave his re-
 solution. After which he receiv'd an embassy, and
 even made answer, that he continu'd to
 adore the same God, and himself in the
 maxims of the religion of the Sunnis, and errors
 of the Christians; he prais'd the professors and
 doctors of the law of the former, and earnestly
 invited the Christians to be instructed, that they
 knowing which law is agreeable to God, they
 might remain in it, and be at ease in their consciences.
 After having receiv'd this answer, he sent 'em to
 their cities, with orders to guard that
 place for the present.

Timur staid some days at Mahanasar, to give
 orders for the carrying away the great riches,
 which were brought thither from all parts; he
 fill'd the barks with 'em, and generously distri-
 buted 'em among the Emirs and soldiers, who
 had signaliz'd themselves on this occasion. Af-
 ter this he order'd to clear the place, they
 deliver'd up to him a great heap of
 arms, and the great number of men, who were
 brought to the camp from all parts, that there were in the
 country, a great number of men of an erroneous
 opinion, call'd Frisais, whom the Euro-
 peans term Assassins. Whereupon he order'd that
 all those who were of the race of Mahomet
 should be separated from these men, and be
 brought to him; and that then they shou'd put
 to death all who were of this sect; which
 was immediately done; and the country freed
 from the disorders those assassins had caus'd there.
 When these fellows found a stranger, or any
 one else, with a paper or book in his possession,
 whether he were a lawyer, philosopher, or a
 man

Book III man of letters, they believed it lawful to put him to death. Cheik Ali Bahadur had a great hand in the destruction of these wretches, to revenge the death of Hubbi Coja his son. Bahender Cheiki was also resolv'd to revenge that of his father Efrasiab, and other relations slain by the Dervises, the disciples of Scid Caemmedin. They invaded Amol, that no one might escape their wrath, and made the most terrible massacre in that city ever mention'd in history. Timur caus'd the Saide Kamaladdin and his son to be put in a vessel to be carry'd to Carazem; and the Saide Mountain and Adalla, with their sons, and several other men, were carry'd to Samarcand, and thence to Tachkent.

Terrible
massacre
in Amol.

Timur sends a letter to Samarcand.

THE province of Mazendran being entirely brought under subjection, Timur sent to Samarcand the news of the taking of Sari, Amol, and Mahanazar, with their dependencies: he sent for the Mirza Chagha his son, and the Mirzas Calil and Roshan his grandsons, as well as the Sultan Hussein, grandson of the Emir Moussa, and son of Timur's daughter: as also the princess Baghisi Sultan, daughter of the Mirza Mirancho, and the empresses Serai Mulk Camur, Temnan Aga, and others. In the month of Muharrem 793. he caus'd a very fine palace to be built in a place nam'd Chel-man, in the neighbourhood of Jorjiana. He gave the government of Sari to Genghis Carren,

December
1392.

ren, native of Cam in Cossoban; and that of Chapak Amola to Eschender Eschak, from whom the Cherifs had taken it, after having traiterously slain his father and mother, as they had also serv'd him, and not fled for refuge to Timur's camp, where he staid a long time. On the twentieth of Muharrem the emperor lodg'd in the palace which he had built at Chafman. He sent out Tavatchis to cause all the troops which were dispers'd to return to the camp. He had advice that his letter got safe to Samarcand, with the riches and rarities of Mazendran; and that on the twentieth of Zilhidje, they had made public rejoicings, and beautify'd the city, in token of joy for this conquest. The person who brought this news had several presents made him; and much alms were given away to the poor.

Decem. 17.
1392.

Nov. 15.
1392.

Serai Mulc Canum, Touman Aga, and the other ladys, with the emperor's children, departed from Samarcand on the twenty-fourth of Zilhidje, and arrived the first night at Tutuc. The night was very great rains and snow, and it was extremely cold, by reason of a hurricane which rose from the Caspian sea. This bad weather did not hinder the ladys and princes coming to Chafman, where they lodg'd in the Caravanserai's. On the 10th they came to Darias, a famous hospital, founded by Timur for the relief of the poor; where they staid three days till the storm was over: then they departed, and in three days arriv'd at Carchi, where they met a courier from Timur, who sent orders that they shou'd leave their baggage behind, and make haste themselves. But as the

* A village five leagues from Samarcand.

Book III. Mirza Charoo excus'd himself from making so much haste by reason of a distemper in his eyes, the others came but slowly, that he might not be left alone. They cross'd the Gihon^a. A

Decem. 13. mouye on the sixteenth of Muharrem 792 and
1392. encamp'd on the other side: from whence they

march'd day and night till they came to Marcan, where the distemper in Mirza Charoo's eyes abated. Serai Male Canan sent to Timur an account of the health of the prince, his children, and of all that had happen'd since their departure from Samarcand. The messenger was no sooner set out, than they departed and came for the village of Dehi Hendoum, where they left their baggage to make the more haste. They then march'd day and night, and in thirteen days arriv'd at Chilaoun^b, where they paid their respects to Timur. He receiv'd them with great honour, and his sons, the lords, and princes made their compliments, and offer'd presents to him, as usual; then they went with him to Chasman, where they found all necessary preparations for their diversion; and the great lords of the court had also furnished and other things to adorn their apartments, which render'd the joy compleat.

^a A town near Jorjiana in Cassiana.

Timur, making his second campaign, the king-
doms of Fars and Irak, march'd

TIMUR's courage not permitting him to
pass, all his life in pleasure, at the end
of winter, the sun being in Capricorn, he pre-
par'd to continue his conquests: He fix'd the
campaign of that year for the kingdoms of Fars
and Irak: the great general, the officers and
soldiers, and their courage; and the empe-
ror sent the Emir Moheemet Sultan at the head
of the vanguard, with his brother the prince
Bey Moheemet, accompany'd by the Cheik Ali
Behader and other Emirs. Then he chose three
men out of each ten, who compos'd a separate
body, at the head of which he departed from
Mazendran the twenty-fourth of Sefer 795,
leaving the Emir Yaghliar Berlas, Gehancha Be-
hader, and other Emirs, and
to follow him slowly. Among the companies,
Seraf Mule Canum, and Touman Aga, sail'd
with the baggage; and Triumpan Mule Aga,
Baro Sultan Aga, and Neghlar Aga, had the
honor to accompany Timur. He gave the com-
mand of another vanguard to Mirza Charoc,
and went himself to Yeilac Veli^{*}; and after
having furnish'd victuals for the army at Dam-
gan[†], Guranan[‡], and Rei Chehriar[§], he march'd

Jan. 20.
1393.

* A town in a mountain, where the Emir Veli prince of
Mazendran pass'd the summer; long. 89. lat. 36. 30.

† A town of Coumes, frontier of Tabarestan, long. 89.
lat. 36. 20.

‡ A town of Coumes, frontier of Irak Agemi, long. 88. lat. 36.

§ A town of Irak Agemi, long. 86. lat. 35. 30.

further.

Book III. further. The Mirzas Mehemet Sultan and Pir Mehemet at their arrival at Candahar gave battle to Chahsqar, governor of it; whom Coja Cheik attack'd, took prisoner tho he was arm'd, and brought to the two princes, who sent him to Timur. From thence they went to Saitania, the governor of which Aitcheghi was dead, and Aanescha his intendant had taken the government on him in his stead. This coward fled at their approach. The two Mirzas staid there eight days; furnish'd the troops with victuals; and having put a good garison in the place, march'd towards Bagdad. When they had enter'd Courdistan, there arriv'd a messenger from Timur, who brought orders for 'em to pass by Geh Chama. Upon which they immediately return'd, and went to take the castle of Sancar, the victuals and ammunition of which they brought away.

At their departure there came a second messenger who brought an order for 'em to reduce all the inhabitants of Courdistan; and to free the country from these robbers. For which reason they went to Tchetchal, and thence to the mountain of Bistoun, where Seyind Behader, Temour Coja son of Acbouga, and Mobacher Behader went from the main body into

* A town of Irac Agemi, frontier of Ghilan, long. 85. lat. 37.

* A town of Irac Agemi, frontier of Azerbijana, long. 84. 20. lat. 36. 30.

* A town between Irac and Courdistan, long. 82. 40. lat. 36.

* On the top of a mountain, frontier of Azerbijana and Courdistan, long. 81. lat. 36. 50.

* Long. 77. 35. lat. 37.

* Long. 75. lat. 37.

the country of the Courdes. The Mirzas march'd towards ~~Darbend~~ Tachi Catun, whether one of the chief men of the country, in hopes of obtaining the government of it, fled. He told 'em as he knew the road so well as he, and if they pleas'd, he wou'd be their guide. The Mirza Mehemet kindly receiv'd him, gave him a belt, a vest, and some gold; and order'd the Cheik Ali Behader to go as a Mangani, with this man for a guide. Ibrahim Cha, prince of these places, handsomly receiv'd the Cheik Ali, submitted, and sent his son Sultancha to the Mirzas with Arabian horses, and other curious presents, consisting of nine pieces of each sort. Sultancha came to the princes, kiss'd the carpet, and made presents from their father. The Mirza Mehemet Sultan was content with these submissions of the Courde prince, and sent an express for the Cheik Ali to come back. He accordingly began his march; but being upon the road, his guide, frustrated of his hopes by the peace with Ibrahim Cha, traitorously stuck him with a knife while he was sleeping, of which he fell dead upon the spot. This brave man, who had signaliz'd his courage in twenty famous bat-tels, cou'd not save himself from this coward, who was taken by Cheik Ali's men, and immediately put to death with the most cruel torments, and afterwards burnt.

* A defile of mountains near Eclat in Courdistan.

C H A P. XXII.

Timur marches to the kingdoms of Lorestan and Courestan.

TIMUR, being at Chehriar, chose a number of brave men, and left the Mirza Mirancha with the rest of the army in that place, ordering him to wait the baggage which shou'd come from Esterabad; and at the head of this select body he march'd to Ouroudgerd¹. The Mirza Omar Cheik, at the head of the left wing, march'd by Kiochki Toupan² and Ave³, to besiege the fortress of Kion⁴; which he took after a short defence, and put the governor Mehemet Comi in chains. The next day he went to Masvan⁵, the governor of which place, Mehemet Perahzai, who commanded there for Mehemet Comi, came to him, and saluted him. From thence he march'd to Kerheroud⁶. Esfendiar the governor, not imagining himself strong enough to make a defence, came out of it, was seiz'd and carry'd to the Mirza, who sent him to the emperor with Mehemet Comi.

Feb. 26.

1393.

Timur arriv'd at Ouroudgerd the first of Rabiulakher 795; to which place the Mirza Omar

¹ A town eighteen leagues from Hamadan in the province of Couhestan in Irac Agemi, long. 84. 40. lat. 34. 25.

² A hill between Rei and Ave.

³ A town of Couhestan between Rei and Hamadan, long. 85. lat. 35. 50.

⁴ On a mountain, long. 84. lat. 36.

⁵ A town of Couhestan, near Hamadan, long. 84. lat. 35. 30.

⁶ A town of Couhestan, long. 84. 10. lat. 35.

Cheik came, after he had pass'd by Turvan³; and with Timur's permission he return'd to the right wing of the army. Timur gave the command of the militia of Ouroudgerd to Seifeddin; and leaving Cheik Micail with the government of Nehavend, three days after he arriv'd at Corram Abad⁴; the governor of which, Malek Azzeddin, not daring to defend himself, fled. Timur staid one night in these quarters, left troops to besiege the place, and order'd the Mirza Omar Cheik to pursue Malek. Then he sent partys of horse into all the quarters of the kingdom of Lorestan, to exterminate the robbers, and put a stop to the disorders they committed. Timur departed from Corram Abad to Toftar⁵; and when he was almost at the end of his day's march, he plac'd some brave men in ambuscade near the high-ways, who slew the Lores robbers as they went into their cottages from the mountains. Timur arriv'd in eleven days at the bridge of the river Abzal⁶. The Mirza Omar Cheik diligently pursu'd Malek

³ A town of Couhestan, long. 84. 40. lat. 35.

⁴ Otherwise call'd Nouhavend, a town of Couhestan, built by Noah, on a mountain fourteen leagues south from Hamadan, near Ouroudgerd; long. 83. 50. lat. 34. 10. Here was a famous battel between the Mahometans, commanded by the Calif Omar, son of Elcattab, and the king of Persia, Yez Degerd, who was vanquish'd, and lost his kingdom, A. D. 638.

⁵ A fortress of Lorestan near the town of Lor, long. 84. lat. 32. 40. the residence of the prince of Lorestan.

⁶ Capital of Courestan, between the kingdom of Fars and the Persian gulf, towards Basra and Vaset; long. 84. 30. lat. 31. 30. It is accounted the antientest city in the world.

⁷ A river which runs thro Courestan by Toftar, and falls into the Persian gulf at Hufn Mehdi. Sapor king of Persia caus'd an aqueduct to be built from one of its branches a mile long, which conveys water to the city of Toftar; it is the most remarkable and curious machine extant.

Book III. Azeddin as far as the castle of Minchore^{*}; but he could hear nothing of him: he reduc'd all the places and inhabitants in those mountains[†], and afterwards join'd the imperial camp at the bridge of Abzal. The Mirza Miran Chah, who conducted the baggage and main body of the army, march'd with a troop of horse to the gates of Cachan[‡]. Melouk Serbedal (governor of it for Chah Mansour king of Persia, to whom he fled before from Corassana, for fear of being seiz'd by the soldiers of this Mirza) had no sooner heard of his arrival than he sent an express out of the town to beg quarter; which was granted, and a vest sent him. Then Melouk came out, and put himself under the protection of the Mirza, who return'd to join the baggage. Timur sent prince Omar Chah to the right with a body of the army; when he came to Haviza[§], so one resist'd him, and Timur march'd on to the town of Haviza, and to the river. The Mirza fortify'd, and plac'd a garrison in Haviza. Timur departed from the Abzal on the sixteenth night of his march; at ten a clock in the morning he cross'd the bridge, and went to a town on the other side. This bridge is very famous, and of curious structure; it is said to have been built by Sapor Zulestaf; has twenty eight lofty magnificent arches, each of which has a lesser, which make in all fifty six. It is built of stone and brick, with great beauty and strength; so that it has always attracted the eyes of the cu-

Descrip-
tion of the
bridge on
the river
Abzal.

^{*} Towards Vaset upon the Tigris. [†] On the banks of the river Chat, which joins the Tigris and Euphrates at Gourni.

[‡] A town of Couhestan, where porcelain is dug, with which the walls and houses of Persia are cover'd, three days journey from Ispahan; long. 86. lat. 34.

[§] Corruptly so call'd from Ahouaz, a town of Couhestan on the river Abzal, long. 85. lat. 31.

rious, and brought to their remembrance the king who built it. Chap. 22.

Whilst Timur staid at Dey Foul, a town at the foot of the mountains, Chamfeddin the governor of it presented him with twenty loads of silver, and the commanders afterwards carry'd away the very horses and mules. Timur departed for Tostar at noon, and in his way staid upon a hill, where he caus'd the horses to be put to grass: then marching all night, he came the next morning in the sight of Tostar, where he encamp'd on the bank of the river Tchegar Donke. Ali, Comrat and Estendiar Nam, governors of Tostar for Chan Mantow, fled to Larar at the report of Timur's approach. But the chief men and Cherifs of Tostar went out of the town at his arrival, cross'd the river, and came to the door of his tent to make their submission, and assure him of their obedience. In the mean while the Emirs and soldiers pillag'd all the inhabitants of the neighbouring country, and brought to the camp a great number of slaves and booty. Timur distribut all their effects by the emperor's wish, and his friends obtain'd pardon by his clemency.

On the 20th of Zilhadge, Timur cross'd the river of Tchegar Donke, and went into a forest of palms without the city. The Mirzas, Mehemet Sultan and Pir Mehemet, also departed from Derbend Tachicatan; and after having pass'd several rivers and mountains in Courdistan and Lorestan, exterminated the robbers there, and reduc'd the inhabitants to obedience, they arriv'd here, where they had the honor to salute the emperor. All the troops also join'd the imperial camp at this place. March 12.

C H A P. XXIII.

An account of the motions of the princes of Fars, of Persia and Irac, on which the present affairs depend.

WE mention'd in the second book, that Timur, after a campaign of three years, returning from Persia to Samarcand, pass'd by Chiraz, because the princes of the family of Muzaffer became obedient to him, and several of 'em had lifted themselves in his service; upon which he then gave the government of Chiraz to Chah Yahia, head of that family; and confirm'd him in that of Yezd, which he had before possess'd.

He then sent Chah Yahia, with a detachment to Sultan Ahmed, brother of Chah Chuja, with permission to return to his own country; that of Seirjan to Sultan Abou Ithac, son of Avis, son of Chah Chuja; and because the Pehlevan, Muhaddab Corasani, one of the Emirs of Chah Chuja, (who had been long time governor of Abreconk for this prince, and after his death for his son, the Sultan Zein Elabeddin) had been faithful to his trust in this government, Timur confirm'd it to him. Chah Mansour, younger brother of Chah Yahia, was then governor of Tostar, whither the Sultan Zein Elabeddin was retir'd, for fear of our army; nevertheless Chah Mansour caus'd him to be arrested and put in irons. By which means, from the year 790, when Timur march'd from Persia to Touran, to the year 795, when he return'd from Mazendran to Persia, there were

An. Dom.

1388.

An. Dom.

1393.

were great disorders among the princes of the house of Muzaffer. At length Zein Elabeddin, prisoner in the castle of Kerkend four leagues from Tostar, by the assistance of Ahmet Chah Turmetarchi and Mahmout his relation, escap'd with cheer to Malek Azeddin Kerit at Onoudgerd, who conducted him to Ispahan. And as the officers of this city were in the interest of Zein Elabeddin, the Sultan Mehemet retir'd into the fortress, and a month after went out with the consent of Mehemet Courtchi, who went with him to Yezd; and by this means Zein Elabeddin became master of Ispahan. Then Chah Mansour departed from Tostar at the head of an army, and came to the gates of Chiraz, where the Cheriffs, back'd by their disciples, open'd to him the gate of Salem. Chah Yahia sat in the Divan of Chah Chujs till the arrival of Chah Mansour: then he took horse, went out of the town by the gate of Sader, and took the road of Yezd. Chah Mansour took his seat in Shiraz, and would not pursue his brother; but went on to Yezd, where he rais'd an army on the ruins of the city, of which he was a capital. At length he rais'd a powerful army, with which he seiz'd on the castles of Bid, Sermac and Mersonar, and march'd to the town of Abrecouh, commanded by the Pehlevan Murhaddeb: tho he did not besiege it, but return'd to Chiraz. The Sultan Zein Elabeddin also rais'd an army at Ispahan, imagining that the Emir of Chah Mansour wou'd come over to his side, because most of 'em had rais'd themselves in his father's court. He march'd to Chiraz with his small army; while Chah Mansour advanc'd with his to give him battel. They met near the fortress of Estaeer, at the foot of the new bridge; and Zein Elabeddin's expectations

In the Pehlevan
 Muhammad, loaded him with chains, and sent
 him to the castle of Melous on the frontiers of
 Yezd, where he was put to death by the order
 of Chah Yahia, who plac'd a strong garison at
 Abrecoub under the Emir Mehemet Cauri,
 and return'd to Yezd. On advice of Chah
 Mansour departed from Chiraz with the head of a
 formidable army to besiege Abrecoub, the go-
 vernor of which having fortified himself in the
 castle, he took the town, and having plac'd
 troops in garison, march'd to Yezd, to attack
 Chah Yahia, but the latter being inform'd of
 his march, sent an express to Mehemet Cauri
 chi, ordering him to surrender the place to Chah
 Mansour, on condition he shou'd not bring his
 army to Yezd. Chah Mansour having learnt
 this circumstance from the courier whom he met,

immediately return'd to Abreeough, the castle of which was deliver'd to him without opposition. He plac'd a good garrison in the town as well as in the castles, and took the road to Ispahan, making the river the grant to be observ'd; and after such business done, he return'd to Chiraz. The following year he march'd thither again at the head of an army, and return'd after having committed the like disorders. Zein Elabeddin seeing himself so oppress'd by this powerful prince, sought for protection from the princes his relations. The Sultan Ahmed prince of Kirman, and the Sultan Abou Hnac of Seirjan, came to assist him at the head of their troops, which were well equip'd. Chah Yahir made some fair promises, which he did not keep; for he came out of the town of Yezd, but did not join the princes. Several other lords of the house of Mirasser join'd in defence of Zein Elabeddin, march'd towards Chiraz in the beginning of the spring, passing several countrys, especially that of Shirvan, whence they com'd towards Chiraz. Chah Manfour, a prince of the house of Chah Yahir, was at the head of the army, in a village nam'd Jurber. This prince, whose name signifies victorious, was in effect so; for he routed the confederate princes so that every one retreated to his own country.

In the following spring Chah Manfour return'd against Ispahan; as soon as he was encamp'd without the city, he order'd Coja Azad to go to him, whom this prince * of * Chah Manfour. entertain'd at Ispahan, to carry on his intrigues. He came out of

* A town between Ispahan and Abreeough.

Book III. the city; and, what is most surprising, the inhabitants, as soon as he was got to the tent of Chah Mansour, deliver'd up the place. The Sultan Zein-Elabeddin fled; but he was taken near Rei between Veramin and Chahris by Mousa Choucar, who sent him to Chah Mansour; who, with unparallel'd cruelty put out this prince's eyes with a hot iron, not thinking of the threatnings of God, which are, *That he will never pity them who shew no pity to others.* Chah Mansour, seeing himself master of Ispahan, march'd twice to the gates of Yezd: the second time his mother, who was also Chah Yahia, came out of the town, to endeavor to make peace betwixt 'em; and thus exhorted her son: "Behold your eldest brother, who is contented to live with his two brothers in the town of Yezd, and to leave you the town of Herat and Shiraz." *These words made him return from before Yezd to Chiraz.*

Besides these there were several motions for the last four or five years between the princes of the family of Muzaffer, who naturally delighted to make war on each other, which put the empire of Iran in great disorder. The kingdom of Persia was but one, and yet ten kings pretended to it, who were, as one may say, so many butchers to destroy the people and country. It being too long to give a detail of their history, we will only mention what belongs to our subject. When Timur escap'd without the town of Toftar, the towns of Chiraz, Ispahan and Abrecouh, were in the hands of Chah Mansour, who resided at Chiraz; the town of Yezd was possess'd by Chah Yahia, who liv'd there with his two sons; the kingdom of Kirman

man was govern'd by Sultan Ahmed; and the Chap. 17
Sultan Abou Ishan command'd in Scirjan. All
these princes were of the family of Mirzaffer.

C H A P. XXIV.

Timur marches to Chiraz against Chah Mansour.

AFTER the Mirzas Mehemet Sultan and
Pir Mehemet were return'd in triumph
from Derbend Tache-Catan, to the imperial
camp without Toflar, Timur sent Sevindgie
Behader to Havara to summon the Mirza Omar
Chah to court; and having made himself ma-
ster of Toflar, he gave the government of it to
Coja Mafoud Sebzari, to maintain there the
troops of Sebzari which he commanded. At
length Timur left the army, and on the 25th of
Rabynakher 795, which answers to the year of
the 1493, march'd with diligence towards Chiraz,
and on the 17th of April 1493, arriv'd at the city.
The emperor order'd him to follow him to Chiraz at
the head of the baggage and main-body. The
27th of Rabynakher 795, Timur cross'd the
river Doudanke, and two days after encamp'd
on the bank of that of Chouroukan Kende.
The 1st of Jumaziulevel he went to encamp at
Ram Hermez, where Arabec Pir Mehemet,
prince of the upper Lorestan, came to kiss the foot
of his throne, and offer him presents; to which
honor he was admitted by the mediation of the
great Emir, and being well receiv'd by the

April 17.
1493.

April 22.

* Rivers in Corestan, which fall into the Abzal.
* A town of Corestan, long. 86. lat. 31. 25.

Book III emperor, he follow'd his brother Timur took
house about noon, pass'd the river of Ham-Hes-
maz *, and encamp'd on the other side. The 2d
of Jumaziulevel he encamp'd on the river Fei *.
April 23. The third, after having march'd all night, he
24. went to encamp in the plain of Zohra. The
25. fourth he pass'd by Kerdistan *, cross'd the
Abargom *, and went to encamp at Behbahan *.
26. The fifth he pass'd the Abchirin *, and encamp'd
27. in the plain of Lachter *. The sixth he march'd
to Kedge Havas *, and encamp'd at the spring
28. of the river Canbidac *. The seventh he en-
29. camp'd at the village Joulana. The eighth
he went to Bacht *, cross'd the Abchok *, and
30. encamp'd at Malem Chah. The ninth he pass'd
the Cavadan *, where he gain'd intelligence
concerning the fortrels of Galsahid, from
whence he went to stay at Mankon. The
10th of Tammuz.

May 1.

his, one of the strongest citadels of Asia. The
governor for Chah Mansour was nam'd Sades,
which signifies good fortune, tho he was an un-
fortunate wicked fellow. The Persians consider

* This runs thro' the town, and falls into the Abzal below A-
houaz. * A river of Courestan which falls into the Abzal.
* A town of Courestan, frontier of Fars.
* A river which divides the kingdom of Courestan and Fars,
runs by Serairén, and falls into the Abzal.
* A town of Fars, long. 86. 25. lat. 30. 30.
* A river which comes from the town of Cosachirin.
* A great town of Fars. * A village of Fars.
* A river which falls into the Persian gulf near Bender.
* A town of Fars dependent on Mankon.
* A river which comes from Bouin, accounted by the Arabians
one of the seven wonders of the world.
* A river which passes by Caxton, and falls into the Persian
gulf. * A town of Fars, long. 87. 10. lat. 30. 30.

in this place, because it was situate on the top of ~~Chapal~~
a very rugged mountain, where there was but
one slippery way to ascend. On the top of this
mountain there was a beautiful smooth plain, a
league long and much broad. There are rivers
and fountains, fruit-trees, and cultivated lands,
with all sorts of beasts and birds. The princes
had built there many pleasure-houses, where they
had no reason to fear fires or torrents, and much
less mines or assaults by battering-rams, and
other machines: so that no king had ever un-
dertaken to besiege it, believing it impregnable
and inaccessible, as well because of its height
and the impossibility of carrying up battering-
rams, as for the hardness of the rock which
could not be digg'd. The way which leads to the
top of the mountain is made so, that in any
strait three men may oppose a hundred thou-
sand, and hinder their ascending. The inhabi-
tants, not contented with its natural strength,
had fortify'd and wall'd all the turnings
~~of the mountain with mortar.~~ As the
~~main-tenance of the soldiers, and the cattle and~~
~~food had enough to feed on, no one had dreamt~~
~~of starving 'em out, seeing nothing but death~~
~~had any power over the inhabitants.~~ Timur
coming to the foot of this mountain, ascended
in company with his most faithful captains as
far as the gate of the fortress, and caus'd the
great cry Souroun to be made in the troops
who follow'd him. The two wings encamp'd on
the top of another mountain which join'd the
place. Timur's tent was pitch'd there; and he
order'd his soldiers to give a general assault.
The cavalry and infantry march'd up the moun-
tain to the fort: the Mirza Mehemet Sultan
attack'd it on the right side, as the Mirza Pir
Me-

Mehemet did on his: the Mirza Charoc parted from the left wing, and went to the foot of the place with his men, whom he made to dismount: all the army did the same, and gave a furious assault. After having labour'd all day, these men wou'd ascend the highest parts of the mountain, and give a general attack to carry the place: but night being come, every one staid in the place he was in. The next morning the princes, Emirs and soldiers began the assault at the noise of drums, kettle-drums and trumpets. The enemy shot from the place a great number of arrows and stones. Our brave captains sacrific'd their lives in Timur's service: every one took a pick-ax in his hand to break the rock, as formerly Ferhad did. Aebouga, an officer of the Cheik Mehemet Aicoutmur, by chance mounted a place unseen; when he was there, he prais'd God and the prophet, saying, *Timur is victorious, and his army are confounded.* He acted the part of a valiant man upon this steep rock; for covering himself with his buckler, he fell upon the besieg'd, who were so surpriz'd at being attack'd in a place they thought no one dar'd ascend, that they left off fighting. The soldiers of the Mirza Mehemet Sultan went up the way which leads to the gate of the fortress, where displaying their ensigns, and fixing their horse-tails, they cry'd out, *Victory!* The others mounted the rock which Aebouga had shewn, and some went up by other ways: so that the place was taken, and the garison precipitated from the top of the mountain.

' A famous sculptor in the reign of Cosroes king of Persia'

Mehemet Azad seiz'd on the governor Sader, and brought him to Timur, who order'd that in his blood they shou'd revenge those who had lost their lives in the assault. The sword is the instrument of vengeance to those who forget themselves; and when God chooses any one to command, we must submit to him without resistance. The Sultan Zein Elabeddin, whom Chah Mansour had blinded and kept prisoner in this place, was brought to Timur, who receiv'd him kindly, gave him a vest, and comforted him, promising to revenge him on Chah Mansour, whom he wou'd punish for his injustice and cruelty. The emperor order'd all the women, whom the soldiers had taken, to be releas'd; and leaving Malik Mehemed Aonbehi governor there, he return'd. The 11th of Jumazinlevel, he went to encamp at Neubendgian: He gave Achouga, who first mounted the rock of Calaaesfid, so much silver-mony, stuffs, tents, women-slaves, horses, camels, mules and other things, that this officer, who the day before was master but of one horse, and with this abundance, did not know whether what he saw was a dream or reality. The next morning Timur pass'd by the defile of Bouan, and encamp'd at Tirmerdan*; from whence he departed on the 13th, and encamp'd at Jaragian*; on the 14th he arriv'd at Jouyem*. On the road he inform'd himself concerning Chah Mansour; who, as every one told him, had fled.

May 2.

* Towns of Fars between Chiraz and Neubendgian.

C H A P. XXV.

*Battel between Timur and Chah Mansour.
The death of the latter.*

AS Timur was not troubled at the affair of Chah Mansour, he the same day divided his army into two bodys, one of which was led by himself, and the other by Mirza Mehemet Sultan: he gave the vanguard of his own body to Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir, and the rear to Coja Arbouga. The troops of Mehemet Sultan were on the right, whose vanguard was commanded by Cheik Temour Behader. The Mirza Charoc had no troops, for he was attended on Timur. The fear being now spread, Emir Osman Abbas, and himself at the head of the army took the road to Chiraz. The Emir Osman had not gone far, before he perceiv'd a body of the scouts of Chah Mansour, who were at the end of the gardens without the town, marching forwards: he hid himself in a barren ground till they had pass'd him; and then he sall'y'd out of his ambuscade with Saints Maure, Acous, Temoue, Mouelli, Carz Mehemet, and Behram Yefouri. The brave Behram overtook 'em first sword in hand, and cut one of the horses bridles: the man fell, and not being able to get away, Behram put him on his own horse back, and brought him to Timur, who question'd him concerning Chah Mansour, and the number of his soldiers; and then continu'd his road. When he had gone about a league, he perceiv'd in the fields without the town three or four thousand horse,

horse, arm'd with coats of mail, helmets, and breast-plates of leather and with iron; their horses cover'd with a kind of cuirasses made of thick silk, and their shields of the same. These men being in a great deal of fatigue, and skilful at the bow, Çah Mansour advanc'd at their head like a furious lion, and in opposition to his reason, which should have preserv'd in his mind a sensible idea of the person he had to do with, as one whose arm had cast down all his enemys, on a Friday at the hour of prayer he attack'd our main body compos'd of thirty thousand Turks, the most dextrous men of their time, in a place nam'd Patta. He overthrew their squadrons, broke their ranks, made his way into the midst, and gain'd behind our army posts of the utmost consequence: then he return'd furious as a dragon to the fight, seeming resolv'd to lose his life. Timur stopp'd short with some of his favorites, to consider the extreme vigor, or rather rashness, of this prince, who dar'd attack him in person. Timur's army then came directly against him, who was at the head of his army with his lance to oppose them; but he was not able to stand. He was briskly attack'd, that he fled and carry'd away the lance. Timur, who had only fourteen or fifteen persons with him, did not stir out of his place till Çah Mansour came up to him. This rash person struck the emperor's helmet twice with his scymitar; but the blows did no harm, for they glanc'd along his arms: he kept firm as a rock, and did not change his posture. Adel Arkan held a buckler over Timur's head, and Çah Mansour advanc'd before him: he did several great actions, and was wounded in his hand with a sword.

Then Mamoutcha, Tavakul Beg, and Aman-
 cha, and Mehemet Azad, enter'd into the mid-
 dle of the enemy's army, and gave extraordi-
 nary proofs of their courage and strength. Chah
 Mansour, who had been repuls'd from before
 the emperor, fell upon the infantry of the main-
 body, while Mirza Mehemet Sultan so briskly
 attack'd the right wing of the Persian army,
 that it gave way. Mobacher and the other
 Emirs closely pursu'd them, and made a terrible
 slaughter. The Mirza Pir Mehemet Gohangar
 bravely defeated their left wing, killing some,
 and obliging the others to fly. The Mirza Cha-
 roc, who fought near Timur like a lion, rally'd
 a whole battalion of soldiers who fled; and Ge-
 labad, Behram Souh, sons of Cayafeddin
 Tefcin, and Coss Kassin behav'd themselves
 courageously in his presence, and with their ar-
 rows made the enemy give way.

Then the emperor call'd the
 banners of Chah Norreddin, son of Sar-
 bouga, nam'd Aimulc; and that of Boi, which
 was the imperial regiment call'd Coutchin;
 which were in the main-body, having been
 routed by Mansour, rally'd, and displaying their
 colors, form'd themselves into a complete bat-
 talion. The three regiments of Chah Aul-
 lam Coutchin, and Behramdad, would not stir
 from their post, where they bravely fought. At
 length the Mirza Charoc, tho' but seventeen
 years old, behav'd himself with so much valor
 and conduct, that he hem'd in Chah Mansour,
 cut off his head, and cast it at the feet of the
 emperor his father, congratulating him on the
 victory. "May the heads, said he, of all your
 "enemys be thus laid at your feet, as that of
 "the proud Mansour is." This lucky accident

Charoc
 cuts off
 Chah Man-
 sour's head.

discourag'd the Persian soldiers, who till that time had fought well. These leopards were turn'd into dogs, the prey who were not kill'd fled. Timur, at this great victory, embrac'd the crown his sons and the Nobles, and set his officers with him to return thanks to God for the victory. At length the Emirs came to him, and having congratulated him, they also fell on their knees: and as they presented him the gold cup, according to the custom of the Moguls, they saw on a sudden come behind 'em a body of the enemys rang'd in order of battle and well equip'd, who advanc'd to attack 'em. Timur led the Mirza Charoc, with the lords, march'd against 'em; they made the great cry, and rout'd the enemy with so much vigor, that they immediately gave way and were routed. The fugitives gain'd the mountain of Calatser, that is, the red castle; while some Emirs pursu'd 'em, who cut 'em to pieces. Timur pass'd the night at the village of Dinou Can; and the next day the emperor, like Menoucher¹, when he entered victorious into Babel, solemnly the capital of Persia, began his march to make his entry in triumph, and in warlike habit, into the famous city of Chiraz, the present capital of that kingdom. He order'd his standard to be display'd on the gate of Selm², where he lodg'd, while the army encamp'd in the out-parts of the town. Eight gates were shut up, while only that of Selm was kept open. Then many chief lords of the court enter'd the city, took down the names of the magistrates and heads of the quarters, according to which they collected the treasures, riches, furniture, stuffs, horses and mules of Ghah Mansour, his courtiers, and fa-

¹ Son of Feridon, one of the first kings of Persia.

² So call'd from one of the sons of Feridon.

Book III. mily; which they convey'd out of the city, and presented to Timur, who liberally distributed 'em among the Emirs. The inhabitants were rewarded for having their lives preserv'd, and the tax was regularly paid. Timur sent the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to Ispahan, with orders to fix a garison there, and to receive a tribute for saving the lives of the inhabitants. The Debirs had orders to prepare the letters of conquests, to send to Samarcand and other capitals of the kingdoms of the empire of Timur. The Mirza Omar Cheik, who, according to the orders given him, staid behind with the baggage, pillag'd all the rebels he cou'd meet, as well the remains of Chah Mansour's army, as the robbers of Lorestan, the Chouls³, and the Courdes. When he had pass'd by Neubendgian, and was come to Gazerou⁴, he receiv'd orders to stay there, and place garisons in all those countries, and make regulations according to the laws of the empire. Some days after he had orders to come to court, at Chiraz, where he had the honor to salute the emperor.

The princes of the family of Muzaffer, having no place to retire to, where Timur cou'd not come at 'em, resolv'd in good earnest to submit. Chah Yahia departed from Yezd with his sons, and the Sultan Ahmed of Kirman, to come to court. They made presents to the emperor of precious stones, horses, mules, tents, pavilions, and all sorts of curiositys. The Sultan Mehdi son of Chahchujaz, and Sultan Gadanfer son of Chah Mansour, were in Chiraz. Timur

³ Inhabitants of the mountains of Malenut Chol and Casan.

⁴ A town of Fars, long. 57. lat. 29.

The history of Timur-Bec.

421

Chapter 26

with the princes, his sons, the great Emirs and Nevians, spent a month in feasts and diversions; in which music was played upon organs and harps; and red wine was presented in gold cups by the most beautiful virgins in the city. The Sultan Abou Ishac, son of Chahchuja, also came to court from Scirjan, and made presents to Timur, who employ'd himself in regulating the kingdom of Persia, and the affairs of the people; that under the shadow of his laws they might enjoy peace, of which continual wars and tyranny had depriv'd 'em: he eas'd their extraordinary taxes, as a prince of moderation and equity ought to do. He appointed governor of the kingdom of Fars, which is the heart of the empire, and the most full of citys, towns, and villages of any place in Asia, his dear son, Mirza Omar Cheik, who made a magnificent feast to thank the emperor, offer'd him presents on his knees, and assur'd him with an oath of his inviolable fidelity, and exactness in executing his orders.

CH A P. XXVI.

Timur seizes the princes of the house of Muzaffer, and disposes of their effects among his lieutenants.

THE children and successors of Mehemet Muzaffer having made themselves masters of the provinces of Persia and Irac, every one set himself up for sovereign, coin'd his own money, and had public prayers read in his own name. These princes, notwithstanding their affinity, hated one other so much, that every one

Book III made attempts on the life and estate of his brother, and let no occasion slip whereby he might pillage the country; and when any one gain'd advantage over another, if he gave him his life, he was sure to blind him with a hot iron: the father fear'd not the son, nor the son the father. But what was worst of all, the poor people bore the burden of these disorders, and were in a manner the tennis-ball of misfortune and misery, and groan'd under the weight of tyranny and oppression. Our conqueror applying himself to regulate the affairs of this kingdom, the Cheiks, the doctors, the Imams, and the high-bisshop of Persia and Irac, presented to him petitions concerning the state of affairs, the changing of the laws and maxims of the country, and the disorders into which the perversity of the Muzafferian princes had brought it. He was sensible that the empire was in the hands of those tyrants; that under a milder government the Mussulmans might be freed from their misery, collect their scatter'd effects, re-settle their families, and render this ruin'd once more a flourishing kingdom. In answer to these requests, Timur order'd that these princes shou'd be seized and loaded with chains, and their houses pillag'd; which was done on the twenty third of Jumaziulakher 795. The Emir Chaman sent men to Kirman to bring away the treasures of the Sultan Ahmed: the Mirza Omar Chah said at Chiraz, to govern the kingdom of Persia, and the emperor nam'd for his counsellors the Emirs Birdibei, Sarbouga, Mirza Omar Muaid, Zirec Yacou, and Sevimdgi Behader, with annual commissions, and assign'd good troops to the prince to maintain his authority.

June 14.
1393.

The emperor was accompany'd by Beiran Temour, Javakul, Melic Akerai, Doriel Coja, and other favorites; who gave the government of Kirman to Agha Ali, son of Cayafeldin Berlas, the brother of Emir Jacou Berlas; that of Kev to Temour Couchin; and that of Abrescouth to Eshan Couchin. He sent troops to besiege the town of Seirdgian, of which Goudem was governor for Sultan Abou Ishac, grandson of Chahchouja. The strength of this place, situate on the top of a high mountain, had inspir'd this governor with the thoughts of fortifying it, and living independent.

At this time Timur sent to Samarcand the prince Chahel, whose eyes had been put out by Chahchouja his father; and Zein Elabeddin, who had been us'd in the same manner by Chah Mansour; and assign'd for their subsistence some of the best ground of that city, that they might spend the remainder of their lives with pleasure under the shadow of his clemency. In these remote places, which the ambitious never visit, the art of learning, and the sciences of Fars and Grece, abandon'd their country, and went to dwell at Samarcand. Timur gave the government of the little kingdom of Lorestan to the Atabec Pir Ahmed, with letters patent seal'd with the seal of his red hand*. Thus Pir Ahmed return'd to his antient residence with near two thousand families, whom Chah Mansour had pillag'd, and constrain'd to retire to Chiraz; and this old Atabec began to govern the country of Malemir, as his ancestors had done before.

* The Mogul emperors make their hand red, and imprint it on their patents as a seal.

* The same as Lorestan; and different from Malemir Chol.



C H A P. XXVII

*Timur marches to the Kingdom of Irac Agem,
or Hircania.*

June 18.
1393.

TIMUR departed from Chiraz for Ispahan the twenty-seventh of Jumazulakhir 795, hunting and destroying the game, which abounds in that country, all the way. He encamp'd at Coumcha^a after twelve days march, at which place he issu'd out that famous order, so much desir'd by the people, and so remarkable in history, that the princes of the house of Muzaffer should be put to death, which was done with rigor, according to the law of Ghengiz Can, to the great satisfaction of the people of this kingdom. The princes of Kirman, were to death by the governors of these countries, that the people might be deliver'd from the fear of their violence and tyranny.

June 30.
1399.

Timur decamp'd from Coumcha, and arriv'd at Ispahan the sixth of Regeb 795. Mahomet Sultan went to meet him, gave him a handfom entertainment, and offer'd presents worthy of the greatest emperors; he executed his commissions very faithfully, which prov'd of service to him for the advancement of his fortune. Timur staid five days at Ispahan in the palace of Nacchidgehan, and departed thence on the fifteenth of Regeb. He permitted Mir Charec to go and meet the queen his mother.

^a A village near Ispahan.

The history of Timur-Bec.

415

Serai Mulk Cannm, taking the road to the village of Dehi Alavi.

Timur in two days march arriv'd at Gerbadecan, and next night went to the village of Ancouan, the inhabitants of which, being atheists, had shut up themselves in the caverns of rocks. A stratagem was made use of to subdue 'em; all the troops were employ'd in digging rivulets along the mountains where there were rivers or springs, and to break down the banks, that all the waters might flow at once like torrents into the caverns where these miscreants were, and drown 'em presently if they did not make haste out. This design succeeded; the waters fell on a sudden into those cavities, and cast these miserable people into the fires of a dark eternity: and their goods were pillag'd by the soldiers. Timur pass'd the night at Ancouan, and departed the thirtieth of Regeb, in the morning, and encamp'd in the plain of Perahan, where a general hunting was order'd: all the country was full of deer, and abundance of antelopes and wild asses were kill'd. The emperor, Serai Mulk Cannm, and Toman Beg, the prince of Canzra, and the other wives of Timur's sons, partook of the diversions of this chase. As they had left their baggage to come the more easily to court, they join'd the emperor at this place, congratulated him on his conquests and return, sprinkled on him precious stones, and made presents to him.

July 10.

The third of the moon Schaban, Timur de-
camp'd and went down to the meadow of Foul
Canzra, where he staid three days; he took
leave on the sixth, and encamp'd the eighth at
Schaban in the agreeable plain of Hamadan.
The Mirza Mirancha left the baggage on the
road, to come to the court of the emperor his
father.

13.

The History of Timur-Bek

Book III fether. The Emirs Gehancha Behader, Ghanseddin Abbas, Hadgi Mamontcha, and Ghancharsa Behader, who staid with the baggage and main-body, took the road to Sultania; with the troops they commanded, and had the honor to salute Timur at Hamadan. Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who was left behind at Isfahan, join'd the court at this place: and the two empresses, Serai Male Caman and Founan Aga, to divert the court, gave Timur a magnificent feast in this agreeable place.

C H A P. XXVIII.

Timur invests the Mirza Miran Chah in the kingdom of Halacou.

THE emperor Timur, for his services, gave him the sovereignty of the kingdoms of Azerbijana, Rei, Derbend Bacou, Chiruan, and Ghilan, with their dependencys, and the adjacent countrys as far as Roum or Anatolia, subject to the Ottomans. This Mirza gave Timur an entertainment in Hamadan, becoming the greatness of the gift he had receiv'd; he made him considerable presents of raritys which he had got at Tauris, Sultania, and other places where he had staid. They spent several days in pleasures and diversions, and were entertain'd with consorts of music on all sorts of instruments. After the feast, the emperor departed from Hamadan on the thirteenth of Schaban 795, sending before him the Mirza Mirancha towards Conlaghi: he order'd

Aug. 3.
1393.

* A town of Courdisan, long. 79. 30. lat. 27. 10.

and went to encamp in the meadow of Ilma Courous. On the next day the circle was made, and the game kill'd. The court then went to Tashkent, and staid there five days; and on the sixth having display'd the standard for destruction, there was another hunting. The Emirs of both wings form'd the great circle as usual, surrounding all the plain of Bech Parmac. From thence they went to encamp in the meadow of Ghul Loudja; the next day at Dalper, in the plain of Gonbedec, where they made entertainments. The nineteenth of Schahban they departed, and the court went to encamp four leagues from thence. The Mirza Miranchar being arriv'd at the plain of Coulaghi, sent an express to Timur, to acquaint him that the robber Sarec Mehemet Turcoman had fortify'd himself in the mountains with his family, and getting together a company of seditious people, had set himself up for sovereign.

Aug. 9.
1393.

C H A P. XXIX

Timur vanquishes the Turcoman Hachan Sarec.

TIMUR had no sooner receiv'd this advice from the Mirza, than passing by the castle of Sagasoun, he came to Coulaghi in two night's march. Being at the plain of Gehanaver, he plac'd a strict guard in all the ways whereby

* A town near Merv in Coorbistan.

* A village of Coorbistan.

* Town of the country of Coorbistan.

* Town of Coorbistan, long. 80, 45. lat. 35. 30.

Book III the enemy might get away. These robbers had a fortress nam'd Habachi, as well as other defiles of mountains, wherein the ways were extreme rugged and narrow: in these places the Turcomans had retrench'd themselves, placing troops in the narrow passages, whom our army attack'd. Our soldiers got up to the very top of the mountain, from whence they brought away a great many sheep and cattle. Berat Coja Kukeltach on this occasion gave marks of an extraordinary valor; and ascending the mountain by very difficult ways, fought with extreme courage, and made himself admir'd by all the army: but he was at length unfortunately slain by a poison'd arrow, to the great regret of Timur and all the Emirs. The Cheik Hadji son of Comari, who ascended the mountain with him, was also wounded in the leg, and constrain'd to return to the camp. The soldiers of his army willingly sacrific'd their lives to their honor and reputation. The Turcomans observing the resoluteness of our soldiers, fled the same night by the by-ways and woods of the mountain Aourman, leaving their baggage behind 'em: our men pursu'd 'em as far as the other mountains, bringing away a great number of horses, mules, sheep and other cattle. The Cheik Temour Behader at the head of a body of horse, pursu'd the fugitives with so much expedition, that he overtook 'em, and slew a vast number of 'em. Our men made themselves masters of the place they had fortify'd, which was fit for the summer-season.

Death of
Berat Coja
Kukeltach.

There was another place in these quarters, in which a great number of Guebres were got

* Adorers of fire, and professing the religion of the ancient Persians. There are to this day a great many of 'em in the east, particularly in India.

toget

together. Timur order'd 'em to make them-
selves masters of this place, and to run it. The
siege lasted some time: but being at length ta-
ken, it was reduced to a heap of rubbish, and
all those who were in the place exterminated.
The emperor, with the empress, and the princes
his sons, return'd to the plain of Coulaghi:
on the tenth of Ramadan he decamp'd to return
home, and the next morning join'd the baggage-
on the banks of the river Acsai. He staid one
or two days at every encampment in these quar-
ters, to consult of the means to exterminate the
robbers in each place. He sent Mirza Miran-
chi to besiege Sarec-Courgan*, and Ouchcara
had orders to besiege Carouton†: they assault-
ed these places with so much fury, that they
took and ruin'd 'em, after having put to the
sword the soldiers who were in 'em; and then
return'd victorious to the imperial camp. Ti-
mur order'd Mirza Mehemed Sultan to go to
the Derbend‡ of Courdistan, to reduce that
country, and destroy the robbers of those places,
who made it dangerous to travel there. The
Mirza departed in obedience to this order, and he had
made preparations for a magnificent entertain-
ment, which he design'd to give the court. Af-
ter the court departed for Acboulac§, where
they spent the month of Ramadan in fasting
and prayer. The first of Chawal, after the fast
was over, Timur gave great alms, and cele-
brated the Bairam, that is, the passover of the
Mussalmans. Two days after, the great Mufti
Noureddin Abderrahman Esferaini, famous for

Aug. 30.

* Castles in Courdistan.

† Or Demur Capi, iron-gate, a narrow passage like the
Porte Caspianz.

‡ A town near Arbelle in Courdistan.

Book III.

Descend-
ed from
Hulacou.

his learning, came from Bagdat as ambassador from the Sultan Ahmed Gelai. Timur receiv'd him handsomly, as he was wont to do learned men, and noted doctors; he gave him audience, the subject of his embassy being, that the Sultan sincerely submitted to the emperor; but being surpriz'd at the approach of the great Timur, he dur'd not come to cast himself at his feet; that he knew himself not powerful enough to make any resistance; and moreover that his intention was not to oppose him, nor to sustain a siege. The ambassador made his presents, which consisted of nine of each sort; among which were Murkens, a kind of large deer, leopard, Arabian horses with saddles of gold; and then he went back. Timur did not receive these presents after his usual kind manner, because he suspected the sincerity of Sultan Ahmed, for the prayers were not so loud as usual. He sent him back without any positive answer.

C H A P. XXX.

Timur marches to Bagdad.

AFTER Timur had dismissed the ambassador of Sultan Ahmed Gelair*, he resolved to besiege Bagdad. He order'd Mirza Pir Mehemet Gheghahir to return to Sultania with the baggage, and the concubines and ladies; and the soldiers to provide themselves with two bottles of water apiece. On the third

Octob. 3.
1393.

reckon'd of Calwal 795. Timur took the road to Bagdad; he march'd day and night to encamp at Yan Houlac†, and after three days he went before as a scout; he march'd all night, and arriv'd at Coura Courgan‡; the next morning he met Mehemet, prince of the Turcomans, whom he attack'd at the head of a hundred horse, and sent him; the army which came after him, he sent to the head of the Choh-rang§. At this place Timur receiv'd a number of brave soldiers, at whose head he march'd in a faster thro narrow passages between

* Capital of Irac Arabi, seat of the Califs, on the Tigris, long. 36. lat. 33. 20. fifteen leagues from the ancient Babylon; it was built by Aboulasor Almanfor, second Calif of the house of the Abbassides, A. D. 757.

† A Mogul prince; for Bagdad remain'd in the hands of the Magulians until 1258 when Hulacou Can, grandson of Genghiz Can, slew Mustafem Billah last of the Abbasside Califs, and extirpated the Califate which had continu'd six hundred years.

‡ Village near Arbelle in Courdistan.

§ A town in Courdistan, near Cherezour.

* A chy of Couhestan, frontier of Courdistan, long. 84. lat. 34 30.

Book III. sleep mountains, which were very difficult to get thro'. He order'd 'em to light the Machi-lets, a sort of great torches, by which means he made expedition, stopping no where on the road, so that the army cou'd scarce follow him. When he was at Ibrahim Lie^e, he enquir'd of the inhabitants whether they had sent pigeons to Bagdad to give advice of his arrival. They told him that as soon as they perceiv'd the dust of his army, they had done so. Timur immediately caus'd another pigeon to be brought, and making the same men write a billet, the contents of which were, that the dust they had perceiv'd at a distance was caus'd by the Turcomans, who fled to avoid Timur, they tied this letter under the wing of the pigeon, which they cast into the air. The bird immediately fled to its pigeon-house at Bagdad: it was brought to Sultan Ahmed, who on the receipt of this intelligence, immediately order'd the receipt of the first he had caus'd his furniture to be carry'd to the other side of the Tigris.

Timur having at the tomb of the Santon pray'd to God for victory, and distributed much alms to the poor who resided there, he sent before him as a scout Osman Behader, and departed himself at the head of the army: he went twenty seven leagues, each of which were three measur'd miles, without getting off his horse, and on the twenty first of Chawal 795, in the

Octob. 10.

1393.

* A place of devotion, twenty seven leagues from Bagdad.

† This practice is common in the East. They carry pigeons from their pigeon-houses to the place from whence they wou'd have advice. These birds, when set at liberty, immediately fly to their nests, by which means news is brought to a very distant country in a short time.

morning, arriv'd at Bagdad. The Sultan had already cross'd the Tigris, and having broken the bridge, and sunk the boats, resolv'd to stay on the other side, till our army arriv'd, and he was perceiv'd by our men. He had no sooner heard the noise of our trumpets, and the cries of our soldiers, than he fled out of the kingdom by the way of Hille*. Our troops, who cover'd near two leagues of ground nigh the city, cast themselves into the water with a great cry, and pass'd the Tigris notwithstanding its rapidity. Mehemet Azad, who was one of 'em, having found the royal galley of the Sultan, to which he had given the name of Chams, that is, the sun, brought it to Bagdad, and Timur cross'd the river in it. The Mirza Mirancha, at the head of the army, cross'd the Tigris, over against Caryatula Cab*, below the city. Thus the Tartar troops having pass'd the Tigris, enter'd Irac Arabi; like armys of pismires or grass-hoppers, they cover'd the fields, pillaging and endeavoring to find the enemy, that they might block up his way. The inhabitants of Bagdad were as much surpriz'd to see so great a number of Zagataians swim over their river, as their neighbours the Babylonians were formerly at the confusion of languages; and biting their fingers in token of admiration, they were satisfy'd that the progress of Timur, and the courage of his soldiers, were not to be equal'd by those of other potentates of the

* Otherwise Hille Benimezid, a town of Irac Arabi, between Bagdad and Couts, in the land of Babel or Babylon; long. 79. 45. lat. 31. 50. There are three other towns of the same name, one near Abouez in Courestan, another near Moussel, and the other between Vaset and Basra.

* The village of the eagle, the suburbs of Bagdad.

Book III. earth; but that this conqueror was guided by the hand of God, and that his victories were the immediate work of heaven. Our prince wou'd himself pursue Sultan Ahmed, accompany'd by the princes his sons and the Emirs: he march'd by Serfer^a; and being arriv'd at Carbatou^b, Aibadge Aglen, the Nevians, the generals and his chief courtiers, besought him to return to Bagdad to repose himself, while they pursu'd the enemy, and endeavor'd to seize the Sultan, and bring him to him with his hands and feet bound. Timur knowing their sincerity, return'd to Bagdad, where he staid in the palace of Sultan Ahmed, whose treasures which he had left fell in to the hands of the officers of Timur's household. The Emirs at the head of the troops march'd all the day and the following night, and next morning arriv'd at the Euphrates, which Sultan Ahmed had pass'd in the night, having broken the bridge and sunk the boats. He had taken the road to Dama^c by the way of Carbatou^b; on advice of which Osmian Behader told the other Emirs that he thought it proper to swim over the river, and pursue the Sultan. The other Emirs oppos'd it, saying it was better to go along the bank till they shou'd come to a place where the army might pass without any risk. This proposal was follow'd, and they march'd along the banks till they found four empty vessels. Our Emirs em-

^a A town three leagues from Bagdad, between that and Coufa. The pilgrims of Mecca going from Bagdad, take their first lodgings here. A little river, call'd the river of Serfer, which falls into the Euphrates, runs by it.

^b Village in Irak Arabi, seven leagues from Serfer.

^c A plain, long 77. lat. 32. 30. on the Euphrates, where Imam Hussein, grandson of the false prophet Mahomet, was slain by Yezide, son of Muavia, first of the Califs of the house of Ommiah.

hard, and made their horses cross the water, while they held 'em on the sides of the vessels: the whole army did the same, and march'd with such expedition, that they overtook the Sultan's baggage, which was d on his furniture, tents, money, &c. and whatever fear had made him leave behind him; by which means he lost all his goods. The Mirza Miranicha arriv'd at Hissar, where he sent his troops in pursuit of Sultan Ahmed. Aibadgo Aglen, prince of the house of Touchi, Gelalhamid, Osman Behader, Cheik Arslan, Seid Coja son of Ghair Ali Behader, and other Emirs of Tomans, in all forty five, overtook Sultan Ahmed in the plain of Kerbelah on the twenty-second of Ghawal.

Oct. 11.

These Emirs were oblig'd to pursue him themselves, because the horses of the common soldiers were so fatigu'd, that they were constrain'd to be left behind to rest themselves. The Sultan had with him near two thousand horse, two hundred of whom turn'd upon our Emirs sword in hand. The Emirs got off their horses, and by which means they repuls'd 'em: then they remounted their horses to pursue 'em; but they fac'd about again and attack'd the Emirs, who got off their horses and took to their arrows, on which the enemy fled once more. Ours pursu'd 'em again; but they return'd to the charge a third time with so much fury, that the Emirs had not time to dismount: thus they fought with extreme vigor, and many were kill'd on each side. Osman Behad did wonders; but he was wounded in the hand with a sword. At length the enemy were repuls'd; whereupon our men seiz'd on a great quantity of spoils, and pursu'd 'em no longer.

Book III.

That day being extreme hot, and the plain of Kербela affording no water, our men expected to perish by thirst. Aibadge Aglen and Gelahamid sent men to seek for water, who cou'd get no more than two pots full : Aibadge drank one of 'em without quenching his thirst ; wherefore he said to Gelahamid, " I shall certainly die with thirst, if you don't give me the pot which is your portion." The Emir Gelahamid answer'd, " I have heard it told the emperor, that a certain Persian travelling with an Arabian, the like misfortune which we now suffer happen'd to them in a desert. The Arabian had a little water left ; on which the Persian said, I know the generosity of the Arabians is so noted, that it hath pass'd into a proverb : you will discover a great proof of it, if you will give me the cup of water you have left. The Arabian answer'd him, If I give you water, I must die of thirst. He then said, I shall not make me transgress the maxims of the Arabians ; for I prefer a good name to life. I had rather run the hazard of dying than let my action put a stop to the celebrating of the virtue of my countrymen. Then the Arabian gave his water to the Persian, who by this means pass'd the desert, and gave occasion to every one to praise the extraordinary charity of the Arabians." The Emir Gelahamid after having related this story, said to Aibadge, " I will imitate the Arabian in giving you my portion of water ; but on condition that you mention this charity to the princes of the house of Touchi, and to their subjects, so that the fame of my action may bring credit to the descendents of Zagatai Can, one of whom I have the honor to be : moreover, that when you arrive at the imperial camp, you shall

“ shall inform the emperor of what I have done,
 “ that this action may have a place in history,
 “ and be a monument of my virtue to all our
 “ descendents.”

Aibadge having consented to these conditions, Gelal resolv'd to die; wherefore he gave his water to Aibadge, who quench'd his thirst. Yet Gelal did not die, God permitting him to escape for this good action. They then departed with the rest of the Emirs, and arriv'd at Mackhad near the Euphrates, where Husein son of Ali was slain. Every one kiss'd the gate of the holy place, and paid his devotions, according to the custom of the Mahometan pilgrims. The brave Emir gain'd great advantages over the enemys, and took prisoner Aladdole son of Sultan Ahmed, and some others of his children, as likewise his wives and domestics, of whom the Sultan rather chose to be depriv'd, than expose himself to the fury of our Emirs. Thus the Sultan escap'd with a few of his men, and the Emirs return'd home enrich'd with slaves and spoils. Aibadge again and the Emir Gelal related what had pass'd about the water; which extremely pleas'd Timur, who was naturally generous. This monarch extoll'd the great wisdom of the Emir Hamid father of Gelal, and pray'd for the repose of his soul: he then applauded Gelal, telling him that he must acknowledge he had many times offer'd to sacrifice his life to his service, but that this action of exposing himself to a certain death by giving the water to Aibadge to preserve his life, and by this means to gain renown to the Zagataians, more sensibly touch'd him than all his former actions. Timur therefore made great presents to Gelal, who answer'd 'em with an unlimited obedience.

C H A P. XXXI.

Return of Mirza Mehemet Sultan after the defeat of the Courdes robbers.

THE Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who before the expedition to Bagdad was gone against the Courdes, enter'd their mountains, and destroy'd a great number of these robbers; some of whom he had reduc'd to obedience, and precipitated from the tops of the mountains others who were most rebellious, and had fortify'd themselves on the ridge of a high mountain. This severing was not useless, for since that time one or two men may travel safely in their great roads, whereas before they were oblig'd to pass by the ways, as I have said, can witness, having gone thro' em several times. The young prince having successfully finish'd this expedition, return'd to court by Derbend Tachi Catun*, and had the honor to salute the emperor at Bagdad. Some days after he was sent to Vaset', as governor of that town, and the province dependent on it. Then Timur sent express to Mirza Mirancha who was at Hille, to depart for Basra†. At length orders were given that the wives of Sultan Ahmed and his son A-

* Cherefeddin Ali, author of this book. M. Petis, the translator, has also gone this way twice.

* A defile of mountains, where one must pass under an arch cut in the rock, more than six hundred paces.

† A town of Irac Arabi on the Tigris, long. 81. 30. lat. 32. 10.

* A town near the place where the Tigris and Euphrates fall into the Persian gulf, long. 84. lat. 30. call'd also Basra.

Iaddole shou'd be transported to Samarcand, with all the learned men of Bagdad, and the masters of arts and sciences; as also the famous Coja Abdelkerim, author of the book of Edouars, that is, the several tunes in musick. Letters of conquest were sent to Samarcand, Cachgar, Coran, Carèzem, Azerbijana, Persia, Irac, Corasana, Zabulestan, Mazendran, Tabarestan, and other kingdoms and citys, that on this good news rejoicings might be made every where for the emperor's victorys.

Timur spent two months at Bagdad in diversions in the palaces, and pleasure houses on the banks of the Tigris; being intirely satisfied with the progress of his campaign, and the other conquests his subjects continu'd to make with so much glory. The officers of justice by his orders seiz'd on all the wines they found in Bagdad, and cast 'em into the Tigris: and the inhabitants of Bagdad paid to the commissarys the accustomed tribute for the preservation of


C H A P. XXXII.

Timur sends an ambassador to the Sultan Barroc in Egypt.

AS Timur's chief study and ambition was to secure the roads from robbers, to regulate the affairs of kingdoms, and give peace to the people, he thought proper to send the Cheik Sava, one of the most skilful and famous doctors of his time, in embassy to Malek Ezzaher Barroc, Sultan of Egypt and Syria. He order'd several noble Moguls to accompany him, and he gave him a magnificent equipage and a royal

garment. The letter which he carry'd was as follows: " The potent emperors of the house
 " of Genghiz Can having been at war with the
 " kings your predecessors, who oppress'd the peo-
 " ple of Syria; and these wars having ended in
 " a peace by the intervention of ambassadors,
 " security and union have been establish'd be-
 " tween the two nations. And forasmuch as
 " since the death of the invincible Abousaid
 " Behader Can¹, there has not reign'd in the
 " empire of Iran any sovereign prince of the
 " race of Genghiz Can, who has regulated the
 " affairs of the people; but on the contrary there
 " have been governors in all the provinces of
 " this great empire, who have set themselves
 " up for kings, and caus'd infinite misfortunes to
 " the people: the King of kings hath made
 " choice of us, by a peculiar favor, to remedy
 " these disorders, and permitted our victorious
 " sword to conquer all the kingdoms of Iran,
 " as far as Irac Arabi which borders on your do-
 " minions. We imagine that the love we owe our
 " people requires that, because of the proximity
 " of our two empires, a correspondence should
 " be settled between us by letters, and that am-
 " bassadors should go and come mutually from
 " one empire to the other, so that the mer-
 " chants of both nations might travel with le-
 " curity: which will render the countrys flour-
 " ishing, produce plenty in the towns, and
 " maintain the people in peace. 'Tis for this
 " reason we have sent an ambassador to you;
 " beseeching God to load you with his favors,
 " if you act as becomes you. Now thanks be

¹ Son of Codabende, son of Argouncha, inter'd at Sultania.

“to him, who is the sole lord and master of *Chap. 44.*
“kings, and of all the people in the universe.” 

C H A P. XXXIII.

The taking of the town of Tecrit.*

AFTER the reduction of Bagdad, the merchants and travellers presented petitions to Timur, importing that in the neighbourhood of Bagdad there was a place call'd Tecrit, which for its strength was esteem'd impregnable, and had drawn thither a great number of robbers, who had fortify'd themselves in that rock, and when caravans pass'd by that place, pillag'd 'em, and especially those of Egypt and Syria, which were the richest of any: they likewise assur'd him that battering-rams and other machines cou'd do no harm to this place; that the inhabitants were not satisfy'd with robbing, but that they murder'd the passengers; and that till this time no prince, how powerful soever, has been able to put a stop to these disorders. For these reasons Timur conceiv'd that the reduction of this place, and the ruin of these villains, wou'd gain him a treasure of merit in the other world, and great honor even in this. He therefore order'd Burhan Aglen, Yaic Soufi, Gelalhamid, Chamelic, and Seid Coja, to march to Tecrit, and block up the place; which they accordingly did. Timur distributed among the Emirs and soldiers the money which had been collected from the inhabitants of Bagdad for

* Long. 79. lat. 34. 30.

Book III. preserving their lives; and left at that place the Emir Osman Abbas, who had been wounded in a skirmish at Kerbela, giving him for a pension a thousand Dinars Copeghil a day, which he generously said was to pay the surgeon. After this he departed from Bagdad the twenty fourth

Nov. 11. of Zilhadge 795, to encamp at the tomb of Cheic
1393. Behloul, where he pray'd this Sultan to inter-

cede with God for the victory. Timur having sent Mirza Charoc with the scouts, march'd all the following day, cross'd the Tigris, and lay on the bank of the river: the next day he arriv'd at a great lake, where he encamp'd. On the morrow he went to Anna², and the day

Nov. 17. after to Lejerna. The first of Muharrem 796, he came to the town of Harbi; the following night he encamp'd at Bendasar, and the next morning he went for Ghez Betan. In his way thither a lion-bone, ~~persecuted by a lion~~, ~~and a lioness, which~~ ~~abounded in this country~~, for which reason the wood was surrounded, and there came out five lions, which furiously prepar'd their claws and teeth to kill the hunters, whom they fiercely attack'd; but they were receiv'd with so much dexterity and vigor, that all the five were slain at the same time, and made the prey of other beasts.

Nov. 20. After this chace Timur departed, and the 4th of Muharrem arriv'd at Feerit. He rang'd his army in order, commanded the drum to be beat, and the great cry made. The men surrounded the place, and sapp'd the out-parts, which they overthrew. Timur order'd his tent to be fix'd near the works, to animate the soldiers. Then

² A town on the Euphrates, long. 76. 30. lat. 34.

Tarali prince of Maufel, and the Cheik Ali Oirat¹, prince of Arak, came to cast themselves at the feet of Timur, with many presents. Timur ordered his soldiers to enter the place not withstanding any difficulties. This town was built on a rock near the Tigris² in the reign of the Sultans³. The passages were clos'd up with mortar and stones, and it was so well fortified, that it cou'd never be taken by force; the rock on which it was built being very high. The Emir Hassan, the governor, robb'd on the highways, not obeying any prince: but when he knew of Timur's arrival, he was afraid, and sent his younger brother to assure him of his obedience and services. Timur receiv'd him handsomely, and having made him a present of a beautiful horse and a vest, he dismiss'd him, ordering him to tell his brother Hassan, that if he came cheerfully before him, he shou'd be well receiv'd. Hassan's brother gave him an account of all this: but this unfortunate prince resolv'd to defend himself. He immediately began to build machines to shoot stones, with which they ruin'd the houses of these robbers. The third day of the siege, the Emir Hassan sent his mother to Timur, so intreated for him, with presents of horses and rarities. She humbly represented that Hassan well knew that he was not powerful enough to defend himself against the imperial army; but that the fear of appearing before

¹ A name of the ancient Moguls.

² The Tigris is call'd Delgele by the Arabians. Tir, in Persian, signifies an arrow, because the Tigris is rapid, some pretend that the name of Tigris is from that etymology.

³ The kings of Persia of the fourth race, the last of whom, Yezdegerd, was kill'd by Hassan, the Dom. 645.

the majesty of Timur, hinder'd his coming out; that if he wou'd pardon him, he wou'd send his brother and sons as hostages to the court. Timur was very civil to Hassan's mother, and told her, that for her sake he wou'd pardon her son; but that he must come out of the place, or be responsible for the death of so many persons who were in the town. These words disquieted the lady, who return'd to the town, the siege of which was continually going forward; the soldiers having already advanc'd under covert to the foot of the walls, and Seid Coja with his regiment having made the enemy abandon a tower in the night, and oblig'd the guards to retreat into the town. The taking of this tower facilitated the taking of all the out-works, for they were presently abandon'd. Timur's answer to Hassan troubled him so very much, that he resolv'd upon fighting on the next day. He might have the advantage of the night, in which Timur order'd all the soldiers to assault the walls together: whereupon the Tavatchis divided the space the walls took up among the troops, and mark'd with a red furrow what each regiment shou'd sap, and gave it 'em in writing. This distribution began with the regiment of the left wing, which was the most honorable of the two; which regiments compos'd the Toman of Kepek Can, which had for their leader Arslan. This Toman work'd in files, and was follow'd by the regiments of the Toman of prince Charoc, who labor'd with so much earnestness, that in a short time they pierc'd the rock thirty five cubits. The regiments of the other Tomans employ'd themselves in the same

* The names of the Tomans and Hezars, as well as of their generals, are given in the original; but the French translator thought proper to omit 'em, as too tedious for the reader.

manner in the place allotted 'em. By this may ~~Chapter~~ be known the strength of the town of Tecrit, since they were oblig'd to employ at once seventy-two thousand men, the number of soldiers in Timur's army, to undermine the place.

The Emir Hassan seeing the work so far advanced, was greatly troubled; wherefore he sent to Timur, to confess his fault and demand quarter. Timur answer'd, that to obtain his request, Hassan must come out of the place. The next day he sent another man to Miraa Charoc to beg his protection, and to intercede for him. Hassan afterwards sent his brother to the same person, to represent his despair and misery, telling him that every one in the place, and Hassan himself were firmly resolv'd to obey Timur for the future; but that the fear of appearing before him hinder'd Hassan's coming out. Charoc conducted him to Timur, who declar'd, that if Hassan did not come before him to give assurances of his repentance for his crimes, and the robbery's he had committed on the high ways, with promise to abstain for the future, he wou'd bear no more excuses; but if he did what he desir'd, he wou'd not only pardon his crimes, but treat him according to his quality. Timur gave Hassan's brother a vest, and sent him back to the town, telling him, that if Hassan wou'd not come, yet he might stay with him. When the two brothers came to a conference, one of 'em argu'd in this manner: "It is
 " a long time since from one generation to ano-
 " ther we have been sovereigns in this place, and
 " done what we pleas'd, having no one to con-
 " trol us. If we shou'd now surrender, those
 " whom we have wrongfully plunder'd, will
 " demand justice against us: then we must not
 " only restore what we have taken away; but
 " shall

The Siege of Timor Dec.

Book III.

"shall be punish'd, and perhaps put to death in a shameful manner. Wherefore I approve of fighting to the last drop of our blood". The robbers in the place willingly consented to this resolution, and began hostilities. This irritated Timur, who order'd the drums and kettle-drums to be beat, the trumpets to be sounded, and the great cry to be made. Part of the walls fell down, having been propt by large pieces of timber, which were now set on fire. The besieg'd repair'd this great breach, and fought like desperate men resolv'd to die. Timur order'd all the soldiers to advance together, and enter the places they had undermin'd, and where they had fix'd props, to fill 'em with small pieces of dry wood and pitch, which they accordingly did: and on the month of Moharrum 796, at night, they set fire to the wood and pitch. The air was darken'd by the smoke, and most part of the walls fell down. Likewise the tower which had been taken by Yaic Soub; and twenty of the enemys fell with the walls. The besieg'd, notwithstanding the ruin of the walls, arm'd themselves with planks and great bucklers, and continu'd to make a defence against our men, who advanc'd to the very middle of the place, where there was a furious and bloody battel; the besiegers fighting for glory, and the besieged for their liberty and lives.

Further orders were given, that the walls which were yet standing shou'd be undermin'd: the bastion where the Tomars of Allahdad and Amancha were working, was destroy'd to the very foundations by Bedreddin. Whereupon the Emir Hassan being terrify'd, retir'd with his soldiers to the edge of the mountain, of which they were yet masters. The brave Emir

bagg'd

Decemb.
6. 1393.

beg'd leave upon their knees to ascend that mountain, to finish the destruction of these rash people: but Timur answer'd 'em, that it was better to wait the razing of the place. Some of the besieg'd on this mount, to beseech the Emirs to intercede for their lives: but Timur warmly answer'd, let him come or not, no quarter shall be given: for I know that by God's assistance I shall gain the victory: I will seize the chief of the robbers, and hinder the retreat of these villains. The soldiers were animated by these words of the emperor, and at length getting up to the top of the mountain, finish'd the assault of the place. They bound the Emir Hassan and those who accompany'd him, neck and heels, and brought 'em to Timur, who order'd the inhabitants to be separated from the soldiers, and prohibited any one to insult 'em; but that the soldiers shou'd be shar'd among the Tomans, and put to death. Thus they made these robbers suffer the punishment due for their crimes, in plundering and killing passengers. The Tavar-chis cut off the heads of the robbers with their hands for an example to others, and fix'd the following writing on them, *Thus the multifaits are punish'd*. This conquest was on the 25th of Muharrem 796, which answers to the year of the Hen. Timur order'd that one of the walls of the place shou'd be left entire, that posterity might wonder how it cou'd be taken by assault and the strength of men; and that they might remember with fear the punishment of these robbers, and acknowledge with admiration the valor of the soldiers of so powerful a conqueror.

Dec. 11.

C H A P. XXXIV.

Timur continues his journey, and sends his princes and Emirs to make inroads in several kingdoms.

Decemb.
17. 1393.

THE first of Sefer 796, Timur return'd to Harbi, which was the rendezvous of all the troops, which were sent to make inroads both before and during the siege of Tecrit; and order'd a general hunting to divert the court and army, wherein they kill'd a great many wild asses and antilopes. The Mirzas and Emirs, who went with troops to make incursions in the provinces of Irac Arabi, and other parts, to put an end to the disorders of the Arabian robbers, came here to wait on the emperor: of which number was the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who went to Vaset along the banks of the Tigris; as likewise Mobacher and Argouncha, who march'd another way with their troops; and the Mirza Mirancha, who went from Hille to Basra at the head of his; Emin Yadhghiar Berlas and Gehancha Yakou, who went out together; Mehemet Dervich Berlas, Ghoul Ali Margoub, and Ismael Berlas, who had taken another road. All these Emirs establish'd the laws of Genhiz Can, slew a great number of Arabians, and pillag'd their goods and horses, because they robb'd on the high roads, and hinder'd the passage of the caravans going in pilgrimage to Mecca.

They who had brought into subjection and made tributary the princes of the tribes of the
furthest

further parts of the desert, came also to Harbi Chapter
 to give an account of their progress. The prince
 Mirancha, having consign'd the government of
 Basra to ~~his son~~, cross'd the great ri-
 ver of ~~the Euphrates~~, and join'd the Mirza Me-
 hemet Sultan: and these two princes, having
 gloriously accomplish'd their designs, destroy'd
 the common enemy of the empire, and execu-
 ted Timur's intentions, come also to court,
 where they had the honor to salute his majesty.
 Bagdad and all Irac Arabi being brought into
 subjection to Timur, this conqueror sent the fol-
 lowing mandate to all the princes, governors,
 lords of provinces and towns, and even to the
 generals of forces, the Cheiks of the tribes and
 familys of the Turcomans and Ogours.

"You stand these countrys without a sove-
 reign; and like players at mell, who finding
 the ground empty, sling their ball from one
 side to t'other at their pleasure, you have car-
 ry'd your sword wheresoever your ambition
 led you, and acted in an arbitrary
 manner, without any regard to the rights of
 what is past, cease to rob on the high ways,
 and no longer insult passengers, if you ex-
 pect that our mercy and justice shou'd extend
 as far as your estates: but if you obey not
 this command, know that whatever happens
 to you for the future in consequence of this
 refusal, will be thro your own fault, and you
 will have none to accuse but your selves."
 Some who receiv'd this order, on serious conside-
 ration, came to cast themselves at Timur's feet,

* A river into which the Tigris and Euphrates fall; that is,
 from Coana as far as Basra or Bassora.

whom he regarded favorably, and gave 'em employments in their own countrys according to their merit and birth: but the others who continu'd in rebellion, by their disobedience brought on themselves the wrath of God, and consequently all the disasters which happen to the most wretched; and these men were at last exterminated, as we shall see hereafter. In the mean while Emir Osman Abbas came from Bagdad with the baggage, and join'd the imperial camp at Harbi.

C H A P. XXXV.

Timur marches to Diarbekir.

WHEN Timur had reduced Amoud, he order'd a march to the country of Diarbekir, having first committed the government of Bagdad to Coja Mafaoud Sebznari, and order'd him to maintain peace among the inhabitants; to inform himself of the condition of the poor and infirm; and to shew respect to the Cherifs, the descendents of Mahomet, as well as to the doctors and men of letters; and even to feed the poor as far as he was able. Then he departed for Diarbekir, sending the Mirza Mirancha with many Emirs and troops to conquer other places situate on the Tigris. Timur caus'd a bridge of boats to be built over this river, which he pass'd, and order'd a rumor to be given out, that he was on his return home, that

* The same as Amed; only that Diarbekir takes in both the town and country; whereas Amed is only the town: it is situate on the Tigris, long. 74. lat. 38.

the enemys might be left on their guard. He chose two men out of every ten in all his army, leaving the rest, and the baggage with Osman Behador, to march slowly: he also gave to every man, the care of his own horse, as well as of proper places and fit ground to encamp in. The Mirza Mehemet Sultan, Emir Cayafoddin Tercan, and Ouchcara Behader, had orders to stay with the baggage, and to take care of it, in conjunction with the commander. Timur embark'd with the greatest diligence; and when he had pass'd by Toonc, and was got to Carcouc, the inhabitants came out to meet him with great ceremony, and sincere marks of respect and obedience: and he gave this place, as a lordship for ever, to Emir Ali Mouseli. Then Cza Mirali Qirat, Pirali, and Gehanghir, ran to cast themselves at the emperor's feet, to assure him of their submission; as did the princes of all these quarters, the governor of Aleppo, especially the prince of Altoun. Timur receiv'd them with a glorious reception, and made them presents of robes of gold, magnificent vests, gold, precious stones, and stuffs for their wives and daughters.

Timur departed on the 4th of Sefer 796, for Arbelle, the prince of which, Cheik Ali, paid his devours to him, and treated him magnificently, with all his court. The next day Timur went to encamp on the bank of the river Cuna-

Decemb.
20. 1293.

¹ A town in Mesopotamia near Harran.
² A town in Mesopotamia, long. 76. 35. lat. 35. 25.
³ A town of Mesopotamia between Mousel and Teer, dependent of Chelwesour, famous for the battel between Alexander and Darius, long. 77. 10. lat. 35. 50.

The History of Timur-Bec.

Book III. zab⁶: two days after he swam over, and arriv'd at Moussel⁷, where he devoutly visited the tombs of the prophets Jonas and Georges⁸; recommending himself to their prayers; he gave ten thousand Dinars Koughl⁹ to each tomb, for the building of magnificent domes over these illustrious bodys: he also distributed much alms among the poor.

In the mean time Mirza Mirancha arriv'd, after having conquer'd the countrys and towns situate on the Tigris, and reduc'd many people to the obedience of Timur, whom he had the honor to salute at Moussel. Yarali, prince of this place, gave a sumptuous banquet to Timur and all the court; at which some one heard this poor prince say, when the victuals was serv'd up to Timur, "Is not this the history of Solomon¹⁰ and the pismire?" He then offer'd his presents on his knees.

C H A P. XXXVI.

Timur marches to Edessa.

TIMUR departed from Moussel for Raha or Edessa, taking Yarali prince of that place for his guide. The Emirs of Tomans rang'd the army in order, advancing by squa-

⁶ It falls into the Tigris below Moussel.

⁷ A city W. of the Tigris, long. 77. lat. 36. 30.

⁸ The Mahometans admit of many prophets unknown to us, as the prophet Georges.

⁹ This is a fable of the Mahometans, who believe that Solomon was entertain'd by a pismire.

¹⁰ A town of Mesopotamia, long. 76. lat. 36.

HISTORY



TAMUUR-BEC,

Known by the Name of

Tamerlain the Great,

Emperor of the

MOGULS and TARTARS

BEING

An historical JOURNAL of his Conquests
in *Asia and Europe.*

Written by *Abul Fazl*, his Secretary.

Translated into French by the late *Abel-Des-Clers*, Arabic Secretary to the Royal College, and Secretary and Interpreter to the King in the Oriental Languages.

With historical Notes and Maps.

Now faithfully render'd into ENGLISH.

In Two Volumes.

LONDON: Printed for J. DART in Bartholemew-Clofe,
R. BELL in Cornhill, W. NATION in Peter-mast-row,
W. and J. INNES at the West End of St. Paul's Church-
yard, J. OSBORNE in Leabard-street, and T. PAYNE in
Stationers-Court. MDCCLXIII.

YACHT

YACHT

YACHT

YACHT

YACHT

YACHT

YACHT

YACHT

YACHT

YACHT

YACHT

YACHT

YACHT

YACHT

YACHT

YACHT

drons. While they were on their march, Sul-
tan Aisa, prince of Merdin, sent an express to
meet Timur, to offer him his services. Where-
upon, at the end of Sefer 796, Timur being near
Merdin, sent to this prince to come with expe-
dition to join his army, because he had a design
to enter Syria and attack Egypt. Timur having
pass'd this place, encamp'd at Raselain*, from
whence he sent all the army to pillage the ene-
my's country. The right wing plunder'd the
lands subject to Hussein, call'd the black sheep;
and the left wing the neighbouring places, from
whence they brought away a great many horses,
camels, oxen and sheep. When they were re-
turn'd loaded with spoils, they decamp'd and
march'd to Edessa; the prince of which place,
nam'd Ghuzel, had abandon'd that city on the
approach of our army, with some of the inha-
bitants, who took shelter with him on a high
mountain. Timur sent Emirs and soldiers in
search of 'em, who pillag'd 'em, and took 'em
prisoners. Then Timur, accompany'd by the
princes his sons, the Navians, and principal E-
mirs, made his entry into the city of Edessa, all
the houses of which were built with stone. This
place is said to have been built by Nembroth*:
and the Mahometans believe that Abraham was
cast into the furnace here, the fountain which
sprung up in the midst of the fire to quench it,
being now to be seen; and round about the foun-
tain the place is black with smoke. Timur and
all his court were overjoy'd to see the remains of
this miracle, tho they already believ'd it true,
by the light of faith. They bath'd in this foun-

Beginning
of A. D.
1394.

* Nimrod.

* A town of Mesopotamia, long. 74. lat. 37. 15.

* A town of Mesopotamia, where are several springs, from
whence the Cabour rises.

The history of Timur-Bec.

Book III. rain, and drank of its water with great devotion.

Timur spent nineteen days in this city in plays and entertainments, giving largesses to the warriors who had expos'd themselves to the greatest dangers for his service. Juneid, a Turcoman prince, had the honor to pay his respects to the emperor in this place, whereby he obtain'd the lives of himself, his family, children, and subjects. The prince of Haini Keifa⁴ had the same honor; for he submitted to Timur, and brought him the keys of his town; he therefore met with a kind reception. The Sultan Aisa prince of Merdin, refus'd to come to court notwithstanding his promise: upon which Timur thinking it not prudent that a rebel should be left in the midst of his dominions, return'd to Merdin the twenty sixth of Rabiullevel 808. He met the Sultan Ali prince of ~~Ain~~ ^{Cast} cast himself at his feet, and offer'd his service, with magnificent presents. The prince of Batman⁵ did the same, and was receiv'd into the number of Timur's subjects. The empresses Tchelpan Mulc Aga, and Dilchadaga, who had been thirty-five days absent from court, and had follow'd the baggage, join'd Timur on the top of a hill. The baggage also arriv'd, having pass'd by Merdin. Timur rang'd his army for battel, and continu'd his march: he encamp'd at Tchumlic, seven leagues from Merdin, where Malek Azzeddin prince of Gezire⁶ had the ho-

Feb. 10.
1394.

⁴ Town on the Tigris, in Mesopotamia, long. 74. 20. lat. 37. 20.

⁵ Town of Cowdistan.

⁶ Town and river which falls into the Tigris, in Cowdistan.

⁷ A town in Mesopotamia on the Tigris, long. 75. 30. lat. 37. also call'd Geziret Ber Omar.

nor to salute him, making great presents, and submitting to pay tribute. Timur receiv'd him courteously, and permitted him to return home. The Sultan, who had no sooner learn'd that the emperor was on his march to Merdin, than he came out of that place, to cast himself at his feet, with presents of fine horses, mules, and other curiosities, nine of each sort. He was presented to Timur on the twenty-eighth of Rabiulevel, by the great Emirs: the emperor demanded the cause of his unwillingness to come before him; on which he beg'd pardon for his fault. Timur was willing to pardon him; and to comfort him, gave him a vest. Then he departed from that place, and went to encamp at the foot of the mountain Merdin.

C H A P. XXXVII.

Death of Mirza Omar Cheik, Timur's son.

THE Mirza Omar Cheik, who among all his royal virtues possess'd a supreme degree of valor and intrepidity, being the head-general of the army under Timur, during the year that he was in the country of Fars, had made himself master of all the provinces and places, which were not subjected to Timur while he march'd thro that country: of which number were the fortresses of Estazar Ferec, and Chehri-ari Ghernich. He then went into the out-parts of Serjan, which was besieg'd by many Emirs, who had not yet taken it. But when Timur took up a resolution to make war in Syria and Egypt, and had march'd to Diarbekir, he sent orders to Mirza Omar Cheik to return to court;

which orders the Mirza receiv'd, while he was besieging Seirjan: yet he did not wait till the reduction of the place, but immediately departed, leaving Aidecou Berlas, with Chah Chahan governor of Sistan, and Pirali Selduz, to continue the siege. The Mirza being on his return to Chiraz, equip'd himself for his journey, leaving Sevindgic to govern the kingdom of Persia in his absence. This Emir rebuilt the fortress of Cander, ruin'd by Chahchuja, while the Mirza with his guards took the road to Chouleslan. He pass'd by the country of the Courdes, and arriv'd at a little fort nam'd Cormaton, inhabited by a small number of men. The Mirza got upon an eminence to view the place, where he was shot with an arrow in the Vena Cava, which kill'd him on the spot. This unforeseen accident had almost made the Mirza Pir Mehemet, and those who accompany'd him despair, so that they even wish'd their own deaths: but who can escape when fate calls? This misfortune happen'd in the midst of winter in the month of Rabiulevel, 796, which answers to the year of the Hen; the Mirza being but forty years old. After the soldiers had bitterly lamented the death of their prince, they destroy'd with fire and sword all the living creatures they cou'd find in the place, which they raz'd.

Feb. 1394.

When the news of this misfortune came to the imperial camp, which was without the town of Merdin, every one was in so great a consternation, that no one dar'd reveal it: yet as it was improper to keep it secret, after different resolutions they agreed to tell it to the emperor, which they did in his closet, with many sighs and tears. Timur heard all this without being mov'd, only answering in the words of the Alcoran, *We belong to God, and must return to him.* Then

Then he gave the kingdom of Fars to Mirza Pir Chap. 57
 Mehemet son of the deceas'd, who he was but
 sixteen years, and order'd Oucheara Beha-
 der to take care of the corps of the deceas'd
 Mirza, and carry'd to Chiraz by the Emirs,
 and that he should accompany 'em. Oucheara
 Behader at his arrival at Cormatou signify'd
 these orders to the Emirs Birdi Bei, and Zireo
 Yacou, who with their regiments return'd to the
 camp. And the Mirza Pir Mehemet, with the
 Emirs of the court of the deceas'd, as also the
 Emir Ouchara and others, march'd in ceremony
 from Cormatou to Chiraz with the corps, which
 was there laid under a dome. Some time after
 the principles Sevindgie Cotluc Aga, Bei Mulc
 Aga, and Melket Aga, the wives of the deceas'd,
 with his little son the Mirza Eskender, carry'd
 the body to Kech, where he was inter'd in a
 mausoleum built by the emperor his father. The
 cause of this translation was, that Timur had
 erected at Kech an edifice with several domes,
 which he design'd for the burying-place of the
 princes of his household. This new place of build-
 ing was on the south of the tombe of Saiton
 Chamseddin Kekar, and the Emir Tragai, Ti-
 mur's father; and had on the right and left se-
 pulchres, which the prince had erected, as well
 for the Mirza Gehanghir, for whom this was
 principally design'd, as for his other children.
 God, being willing to honor Timur not only
 in his life, but also after his death, inspir'd so
 sincere a love for him in the great Emirs, who
 seconded him in all his enterprizes, that they all
 caus'd their burying-places to be erected near
 this sumptuous monument, according to their
 quality and birth; and wherever they died,
 they were, according to their last wills, trans-
 ported to this place, to testify to posterity the
 great

The Story of Timur-Bec.

Book III. great love they had for their prince. The Emir Aebonga bore so great a reverence to him, that wherever he sat or lay, he never turn'd his back towards the place where Timur was, and his feet were always stretch'd out that way. All these demonstrations of respect and love in Timur's officers, were not only proofs of his merit, but also mark'd out something divine, which was granted to him above other men.

When the Sultan Aisa, prince of Merdin, came to cast himself at Timur's feet, he submitted to pay the tribute usually impos'd on towns which are taken: upon which the commissarys went to the place to receive these taxes, as did the soldiers to buy what they had occasion for. But a company of young men, who were got together, insulted the soldiers; of which Timur being inform'd, he order'd the Sultan to come before him, of what he had done. The cause of this quarrel, and several questions put to him, they found; that at his coming out of the town he had charg'd his brother and subjects not to deliver up their arms, or surrender the place; and what was found most criminal in his conduct was, that he had order'd 'em not to obey the commands sent to 'em in any letter about receiving a governor; for he had refus'd to sacrifice his life for their safety. Sultan Aisa being convicted of what was alleg'd against him, orders were given to seize him, and bind him in chains: yet Timur did not think proper to besiege Merdin at that time, because there was not grass enough for the great number of horses, and winter was almost at an end.

Timur decamp'd from before Merdin the eighth of Rabyutakher 796, and march'd towards the mountains, where he encamp'd; the next day he departed for Espendge.

On the third

third day the Emirs being every one in their posts at the head of their regiments, there happen'd a terrible tempest, it lightn'd and thunder'd every where, and such great rains fell, that all the country was full of water, and our men were in the utmost confusion; they cou'd not stay in the camp for fear of being drown'd; the camels as well as the mules were stuck fast, and in a short time nothing cou'd be seen but the horses ears, because the soil was very soft, and caus'd much mud: they suffer'd thus many days, whereby a great many beasts were lost. The greatest part of the cavalry were oblig'd to dismount to put their tents in order; but the storm still encreasing, they were forc'd to leave all their effects, and march on foot. At length Timur with his guards, after great fatigues, got out of the sloughs, and on the tenth of Jumazin-
level 796, encamp'd on ground which was firm and full of grass. He immediately sent men to inquire himself of the condition of the princes his sons, and their Emirs, as well as their Emirs, with letters before them, and ambassadors on their heads, pass'd the sloughs with their persons: then they departed from this place for old Moussel.

March 25.
1394-

Timur had before this time sent to Soltania many presents for the princes his sons; and an Emir, who had saluted Timur at Thumlic with Malec Azzeddin prince of Gezire, was so rash and daring as to steal these curiosities, and carry 'em to Gezire. Malec Azzeddin, notwithstanding his promises to be obedient to the emperor's orders, entertain'd this robber, promis'd to protect him, and by this action declar'd himself Timur's enemy.

Timur resolving to revenge himself on this bold fellow, sent two couriers to Malec, with orders

Book III. orders requiring him to seize the Cheik, and to send him to court in fetters, if he was desirous to obtain pardon for the fault he had committed, in protecting him; but if he refus'd to do this, he wou'd bring his cavalry to Gezire, and destroy his country, fortresses, subjects, and domestics, not excepting one. Malec Azzeddin was so blinded by his adverse fortune, the trusting in the strength of his castle, and the Tigris which surrounded it, he refus'd to obey these orders.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

Timur marches to Gezire.

March 8. **O**N the refusal of Malec Azzeddin, Timur departed on the 8th of June, leaving the baggage behind, and crossing the Tigris on floats: he march'd all night, at break of day, while the enemy were asleep, fell upon 'em with his troops, who pillag'd the country, took two or three fortresses, enrich'd themselves with a great quantity of goods and horses.

During this confusion, Malec Azzeddin fell into the hands of one of our soldiers, who took from him many valuable pieces; and not knowing who he was, let him escape.

After Timur had ravag'd the town and country of Gezire, and oblig'd Malec to wander about the desert as a vagabond, he return'd home, repass'd the Tigris, and order'd that all the booty, nay even the sheep, shou'd be conducted to Mouffel. Upon which the booty was convey'd over the Tigris in forty barks, and arriv'd

arriv'd at the imperial camp in ten days and Chap. 15.
ten nights.

C H A P. XXXIX.

Timur's second enterprize upon Merdin.

WHEN Timur had taken Gazire, and the fortresses of that province, he held a council with the Emirs, and took care himself of the regulation of the army, providing the infantry with horses. So on the first of Jamaziul¹ latter 795, he began his march towards Merdin, sending the Mirza Mirancha at the head of the vanguard. Timur in his march pillag'd the inhabitants of the plains and mountains, and on the twelfth came in view of Merdin with all his army. Then tents were erected for the soldiers to lie in, and the troops enter'd into the garden, where they posted themselves to advance.

April 15.
1394.

The next day the prince, Mirza, and soldiers of the Romans, Bezares and Sedes, gave no assault upon the place on the noise of drums, trumpets, kettledrums, the great trumpet Kerronai, and the terrible cry of Souroum. The main-body placing their bucklers on their heads, fix'd the ladders; and then taking their war-clubs in their hands, and their sabres in their mouths, they fell on the walls with such fury, that they made the enemy give way. They soon made themselves masters of the town, while the besieged fled into the fortress Conh, which was

¹ Tho Conh signifies in Persian a mountain, yet it is the name of the fortress of Merdin in particular.

Book III. situate on the ridge of a mountain, thinking to escape the fury of the conquerors: but our warriors closely pursu'd 'em, taking many girls and boys, besides a great many horses, mules, and camels. Then they posted themselves at the foot of the walls, with design to force the besieg'd, after they had repos'd themselves. There was but one way to get up to the fortress, on the top of which was a fountain sufficient to turn a mill, which falls down the rock. Many poets have describ'd the strength and advantageous situation of this fortress, and among others, Ebnî Feris, who gives it the surname of *Qale Chah-ba*, that is, the white castle. We attack'd it in the evening, while the enemy cast down abundance of stones; we desisted during night, but the next day our soldiers got upon the mountain level with the walls of the place; here they seiz'd on several of the garrison, hid themselves in the towers, and the Turkish soldiers, who were our soldiers, and with what vigor they advanc'd, were so dismay'd, that they came with tears and groans to beg quarter; which being told Timur, he retir'd from the foot of the walls, and re-entred his camp. Then the besieg'd came out on the place with several presents, nine of a sort, among which were Turcoman horses, of an inestimable value, with large sums of money; they swore to become faithful and obedient, submitting to pay a tribute every year. The present conjuncture was very favorable to the people of Merdin, and appeas'd Timur's fury: the next day an express arriv'd from Sultanah from the empress Serai Mulk Canum, mother of Mirza Charoc, with advice of the birth of a son to this heir of the crown.

CHAPTER XL

Birth of the Mirza Oluc Beg.

THE first of Jumazadevel 796, which answers to the year of the Dog in the Mogul calendar, God was pleas'd to bless the Mirza Charoc with the birth of a son in the castle of Sultania, on whose countenance the splendor of the royal majesty seem'd already to appear. The astrologers took all necessary precautions to assure themselves of the moment of his nativity; and to find the point of his horoscope, that they might observe the centers of all the houses, and fix the situation of the planets and their aspects, they erected the figure of his horoscope. The house of his nativity was Leo, which has the Sun for its lord, and which prognosticated the accomplishment of his destiny and his coming to the crown: the sun ascended in the house of Aries in which it was at that time, which signified that this prince wou'd be learned, and put the sciences in practice. When this news was brought to Timur, he was so overjoy'd, that his fury was abated, and he pardon'd the rashness which the inhabitants of Merdim had been guilty of, and even remitted the taxes they had submitted to pay. Then he gave the principality of the country to Sultan Sale, brother of Sultan Aisa. The next day the drums were beat for their departure, and Timur began his march. The roads were mark'd out for the regiments, and they march'd towards Bosri: the Mirza Mehmet Sultan took the road to Meidan; Timur march'd to Saour, being accompany'd by Mirza Charoc;

April 3.
1394.

Book III. Charoc; and the Mirza Mirancha went to Jaconec; the Emirs of Tomans, according to their ranks, took also different ways. Timur, at his arrival at the Tigris near Saour, sent by water the Mirza Mirancha to give necessary orders, as to the regulation of the garisons, and the receiving the revenues from the places conquer'd on the river. Timur cross'd the Tigris, and encamp'd in a delightful meadow, where he staid three days with a design to return to Alatac. But he receiv'd advice from Mirza Mehemet Sultan, and Mirza Mirancha, that the inhabitants of the town of Caratche Coja, which is commonly call'd Hamed, priding themselves in the strength of their walls, refus'd to come before him to testify their obedience.

CHAPTER III.

Timur marches to Amed or Hamed, capital of the country of Diarbekir.*

TIMUR on information of the insolence of the men of Hamed, sent thither the Emir Gehancha; and on the 23d of June, A. H. 796, march'd in person against this city, where he arriv'd in two days and one night. The Tigris was so shallow, that the troops pass'd it on foot: then they encamp'd round the walls of the town, and besieg'd it. The strength of this place consists in the height of its walls,

* Amed or Hamed, Caratche Coja, Diarbekir, and Carmit, are the same place, situate on the Tigris in Mesopotamia, long. 74. lat. 38.

Book III. gave marks of a singular valor. The other Emirs of Tashkent also behav'd themselves bravely, every one scaling the walls by different ways. Thus this place, which no conqueror had been able to take in four thousand years before, was carry'd in less than three days by the valor of Timur's foldiers, whose whole life was a continu'd scene of victorys and prodigious evens. They enter'd into this great city, and pillag'd it, setting fire to the houses; while most part of the garison were kill'd to the breach. The officers began to beat down the walls with axes and other instruments; but as they were built very strong, they work'd a long time without being able to demolish any considerable parts. Wherefore thinking it would require an age to ruin this intirely, they only pull'd down the tops.

May 9.

The last day of January, 1396, Yaic Soufi, who had been a rebel, and designing to fly during night. Yaic was arrested, and being question'd by Timur, he confess'd his crime, and discover'd his accomplices. But as he had several times before been convicted of the same crimes, which the emperor had pardon'd, and had receiv'd favors from Timur, who had made him a Tashkent, and made him the great captain in the left wing of the army, next to the prince of the blood; his judges order'd him and his son to be laid in irons, and all his accomplices to be put to death; which was accordingly done.

CHAP.

CHAP. II. OF THE CONQUEST OF THE EMPIRE OF THE TURKS, AND THE DESTRUCTION OF THE CITY OF SAMARKAND.

THE HISTORY OF TIMUR-BEC. BOOK II. CHAP. II.

Timur-Bec, after his victory over the King of India, returned to Samarkand.

Timur-Bec took the road to Alatai, and being in the meadow of Mehrouan, the princes and governors of the neighboring places, the chiefs of tribes, and the generals of armies, came from all parts to pay their respects to him, and submit to the taxes imposed upon them. After Timur-Bec pass'd by Miasirekin, Bagan and Achma, he mark'd out the roads to the Emirs of Tomans, assigning guides to each. The Mirza Mehmed Sultan took the road to Tchepatchour, with the Emirs of the left-wing. Timur march'd by Sivasser, and continuing his road towards Sahra ' Mouchi, where he encamp'd the road of Bostan with Mirza Charoc, he came to Bostan, where it was spring time, Timur

May 25.

herbes, mules and camels, with the Emirs of the right wing, the camp at Bostan, which the Mirza Mehmed Sultan did also with the left wing: and the princes of these parts submitted to Timur. The prince of Bostan, who was the most famous and courteous of all the princes of Caschian, and who had always attach'd himself to Timur's interest, came to salute him; and presented to him six hundred horses, which were

A little town in the meadow, two days journey in length, at the same distance from Miasirekin, and three from Bostan, long 74-30. lat. 35-30.

A town near the lake of Samarkand, long 75-30. lat. 38. 30.

460
Book II. not only strong, but even swifter than stags
and wild goats; brisk in action, and more gen-
tle in humors: among the rest was a bay-horse,
which outran all Timur's swiftest horses. Ti-
mur was pleas'd with Hadgi Cheref, and treat-
ed him with the utmost civility, not only con-
firming him in his former possessions, but even
joining other lands to his domain: and to dis-
tinguish this prince above the other princes of
Caucasian, he gave him a vest embroidered
with gold, as likewise a belt, and a sword with
a gold handle. He then put Yart Souf into his
hands to be kept prisoner in his castle: and
afterwards order'd that the roads should be
taken down in writing.

CHAP. VI.

Timur's march to enlarge his conquests.

TIMUR order'd Mehemet Dervish Beg
las to besiege the castle of Aleng: and
whose approach Cara Yousef with his Tur-
kians fled: whereupon Timur, in council with
the princes and Emirs, resolv'd that they
should march in pursuit of 'em. He then Bar-
han Aglen general of the horse, ordering him,
with Aibadge Aglen, Gehanish Begler, and
other Emirs, to decamp from Sahabouch, and
pursue these Tarcomans to the very utmost: and
so deliver the public from the disorders they
committed by their robbery.

Then Timur resolv'd to exterminate all the
Courdes princes, who refus'd to come before
him, according to the orders sent 'em.

Mirza

The Story of Timur Bar.

Book III

the three churches of Alatae. In the morning the eunuchs and ladies arriv'd with Mirza Bar, Mehemet Gebanghir; and had the honor to salute Timur, and testify their joy at seeing him. But this their pleasure was mixt with bitterness, because of their complements of condolence for the death of the Mirza Omar Cheik; which now was the emperor's grief, who only said to his son, *God gave him to me, and God has taken him away.* Then Timur sent Timur Gopak of Aeshbagh with a body of soldiers to assist Mehmet Daul with battles in the siege of the fortress of Alatae. The 8th of Chaban Timur setting out for Aeshbagh, the inhabitants of which place came to meet him with much submission, bringing with them all their treasures, horses and cattle, fruits, and provisions; and with many in their eyes they besought him to grant him quarters, which he did, and hasten.

June 24.

Then he departed for Gutch Kidisa, where he arriv'd in one night. Here Taharten, governor of Arzendgian, came to pay his respects to him, and on his hands made him large presents, after having given him assurances of his obedience. Timur being pleas'd with his conduct, accepted of his presents, and treated him with all imaginable honor and civility.

A town of Cordislan, where are the three churches of Archimedian; the seat of the patriarch of Armenia, near Nakhichevan, long. 77. lat. 38.

Book XLV.

The taking of the town and fortress of Avenic.

MESSER, son of Cara Mehemet and prince of Avenic, persisting in his design not to come to court, tho he had been summon'd by a circular letter; Timur resolv'd to make himself master of that town: he therefore sent before him his son, under the Mirza Mehemet Sultan, and on the 10th of Chaban march'd thither himself in person, first encamping in the meadow of Avenic, from whence, passing by Kio-
tun, in two days he arriv'd at Avenic, before the Mirza. The soldiers immediately attack'd the town, and soon made themselves masters of the walls, which they raz'd. Upon this Messer sent his men into the fortress, situate on a mountain, all the pal-

July 2.

laces of the town being already taken. The son of the mountain, tho he was not Messer and his Turcomans resolv'd to defend it to the last. He sent out his men, and the bravest men of the army dismounted and march'd up as far as the gate, which they attack'd, after having closely invested the castle. At the sound of drums the soldiers in the tower were made ready, while the horsemen were mounted as high as the walls, to discharge arrows on those who were plac'd on the breast-work.

On the 10th of Chaban, Messer sent his son and his lieutenant, with considerable presents, to Timur, to whom they said, That Messer, being

satif-

satisfy'd of his inability to defend himself against the valiant officers of the imperial army, had resolv'd entirely to submit to the emperor's orders, but had not boldness enough to come out of the place; that if Timur wou'd grant him quarter, he wou'd not fail for the future of behaving himself like a faithful servant, in whom he might confide. Timur gave these envoys a handsome reception, presenting each with a robe and a gift belt; telling each that he freely pardon'd Meffer, and that he might come out of the place without any fear, since he had promised him quarter. The envoys carry'd this answer to Meffer, who had done what Timur requir'd, and forgave him. Meffer was so oblig'd to Timur, that he was inclin'd to follow the advice given him, and chose to save himself, discharging on a sudden a whole volley of arrows on our men, who by this time

to speak to Meffer, where he cou'd suspect no danger; he demanded of him what unruly passion made him persist in his stubbornness, and commit hostilities against a prince who oblig'd the kings of the seven climates of Asia to lay down their arms, being satisfy'd of his inability to defend themselves against him. He told him he wou'd be a self-murderer, if he did not submit to Timur. Consider, says he, that all the kings of Asia have laid their crowns and scepters at the emperor's feet; that he has under him two hundred princes, each of 'em equal in rank to the great Meffer; and that their lords bear so much respect to him, that they are always ready to sacrifice their lives in his service. The magnanimity and grandeur of this monarch impos'd

that of Feridon, Genchi, and the em-
perors of China. I wish to consider the
danger you are in, considering in the
strength of your position, and in your
weakness. I am sure you will find
it difficult to escape from the forest. I
am sure you will find it difficult to
escape from the forest. I am sure you
will find it difficult to escape from the
forest. I am sure you will find it
difficult to escape from the forest.

On this advice Meller was in greater perplexity than before; he sent Barton, and his nearest relations named Seidlitz, to the emperor with presents of very beautiful robes with ermine and furs they begged pardon, they had no choice. But Timur perceiving that they had no intention to quit the place, caused them to be put to death.

The son of Chaghan, the Mirza Mahmud, July 7.
Sultan rejoined the camp with his troops. During
this night the soldiers scaled the mountain as far
as the fort against which they made a vigor-
ous attack. During this

at the end of the day, the men within this place being deprived of their general will lose all courage. This move was not surprising, and it had been already in the air. Next morning Timur bore him a young prince around his & the emperor's

Book 1

feet, and in submissive terms besought pardon for his father, promising that if his father would spare his father his life, he would go himself and summon him to appear before the throne, with a sword and handkerchief in his hand. Timur being sensibly touch'd with these supplications, said, "Go, my child, I will give your father his life on condition that he makes his appearance before me." Then he gave the child a vest, and fix'd a collar of gold about his neck, sending him back to his father with a very obliging letter. When the young prince was introduced into the castle in this condition, the soldiers murmur'd against their prince, and they were so angry, they very cruelly beat him, and when they had done so, they sent him back to his father at their departing gave him gold and silver. Yet his father would not receive them, saying that he had been too long in the castle, and that he was now going to keep fix'd in their respective posts, and make ready the machines for casting stones, and other necessary arms. The assault began, our troops battering the walls, where they were not stopp'd with the stones cast by the besiegers, they were by our arrows: but at length the walls from our machines run'd several breaches on the top of the mountain. Upon this the mother of Melier came down from the towers, and throwing her self at Timur's feet, besought him to pardon her son: she represented to him that there was no other way, that a battle of Timourians might be able to hold out against the emperor's army; and begg'd of him to consider that this disorder proceeded only from the fear her son was in, which would not long know his own interest. Next day Timourians

a magnificent vest as his mother, and told her that if her father would see her, he must immediately appear before her. The empress, however, and the emperor, then also gave her a command to the effect, that she should go to the place where the late Timur had been, and there, independently, construct his tombstone. Timur order'd a hill of earth to be rais'd over against the walls of the place, whereupon the soldiers went to all places within three days journey of the town to cut down trees, which when they had convey'd to the fortress, Timur order'd a great number to be set on fire, and in the morning they cut out sort of work, and raising the stones. When the trees were cut down, the spaces were fill'd up with stones and mud mix'd together, and thus the Mole was finish'd in a short time, and rais'd higher than the fortress. A regiment inhabited it, and having prepar'd the machines, and great a quantity of stones, that it

The 15th of July 30.
fourth of the month of July, the emperor and his army, with the officers and garrison of the fortress, went to defend themselves to the last. Nevertheless, as the machines, which were continually discharging great stones, ruin'd the bodies, and beat down the soldiers upon the fortress walls, Meffer being informed of his situation, to improve the advantage, Mirza Mehemet Sultan, who accompanied him to the emperor, to whom he made known the disorder Meffer underwent. The emperor promis'd him quarter if he would continue here, and gave the lieutenant a rest at his departure. Notwithstanding all this, Meffer

contin'd in his stubborn rage, and refus'd to
 submit himself. A company of soldiers, who
 had remain'd all night in the caverns of the
 mountain, and in the narrow and almost im-
 passible passages, Coja Chahin, one of the com-
 mander, advanc'd with seven others, and mounting
 one of the arches, got to the foot of the wall
 of the place, where he lighted a fire to alarm
 the army. Upon this the brave, Aslan,
 Edzgi, and Amancha, Carnadgi, ascend-
 ing the mountain in the same place, came to a
 very narrow arch; where the bold Aslan, not-
 withstanding the darkness of the night,
 Amancha being dangerous, he was killed, and
 Aslan, in return to the camp, while he was
 one of the first persons who were killed, and
 which is above three hundred, and he was
 killed at the foot of the wall, which was
 with their horses.

Thus put in
 it, and no longer stand their ground, but they
 don'd Messer: some flung themselves off the
 mountains, while the others exclaim'd against
 Messer, and in token of submission flung their
 arms on the ground, and beg'd leave to go
 out of the place. Messer, to appease
 his mother and son to Timur on Friday
 was the day of their feast. His mother and
 herself at the emperor's feet, and with tears
 in her eyes begg'd for her son. Timur
 touch'd with her affliction, and her that for
 her sake he would grant her desire, but on
 condition that he came himself to be present
 otherwise that after the reduction of the
 place, he would give order that every one
 should be slain, whose blood was due for ven-
 geance against Messer. The mother of

Book III. died with him; he decamp'd the seventh of
 Aug. 21. Chawal. Next day his grand vizier, being
 come from Samarcand, made him rich
 presents. Timur having inquir'd of him how
 publick affairs were in grand Tartary, Capcha-
 Gete, and Turkestan; the Emir told him, there
 was an entire tranquillity in those parts, where
 his majesty was lov'd and admir'd by all: and
 that the news of his conquests having spread as
 far as Gete, the inhabitants of Cara Goz had
 abandon'd that kingdom. Timur encamp'd
 himself in his march with the river, all things
 came to the delicious meadow, where they went
 to encamp that night: the variety of flowers
 in this place charm'd the emperor; and as there
 was good grazing here for the horses, he easily
 consented to stay some days. On the twentieth
 of Chawal he entertain'd his court with a sum-
 ptuous banquet, and the great vizier cele-
 brated his triumphs.

Aug. 31.

Taharten
 made
 prince of
 Arzend-
 gian.

He sent a messenger to Arzendgian on
 Taharten, to whom he gave advice in relation
 the government of that place: then having pre-
 sented him with a crown, and a belt of gold
 rich'd with precious stones, he sent him into his
 own country.

During these transactions the Emir Zirec
 kou, who was gone to besiege Aidin, with a
 body of the army, according to Timur's orders,
 had given such considerable assistance upon that
 town, that the Emir Bayasid, prince of it,
 found he cou'd not hold out against this general:
 upon which he demanded terms, promising that
 as soon as the army should decamp from before
 the walls, he wou'd go out of the town, and
 willingly consented to his proposal. Bayasid ac-
 cordingly went out during the night without
 Zirec's knowledge, and came straightways to
 Timur's

mur's camp; he call'd himself at the emperor's feet, and presented him with a horse of great price, whose name was *Roche*. *Roche* was renowned with him; he was the

the promulgator of his name and his dependencies, and call'd home the troops, which they block'd it up, whom he prohibited from committing any act of hostility. He sign'd patents to empower Bayazid to establish a government in the town of Aidia, whom he sent thither, furnishing him with a staff, and a belt of gold.

C H A P. XLVI.

Timur sends an army into Georgia.

advice of Mahomet

war on those who profane from themselves, and sacrifice their own souls for the increase of the faith. This caus'd Timur, who was a faithful Musselman, to send Burhan Aglon, Hader Scifeddin Gehanchiz, and Osman Behader, into Georgia, against Asica prince of this country, while he himself shou'd march thither by the forests of Alatac with a very numerous army. The Emirs enter'd Georgia, divided themselves into several bodies, and walk'd through the country, and these infidels. Timur before his departure was at a hunting; in the evening his army was surrounded, and next morning the number growing less and less, the meadow was covered with slain. Timur began the

... and the ... in
 ... so that there was ... officer
 ... had not for his share at least ...
 ... after this hunting Timur continued his road
 to Georgia in long marches, seldom dis-
 ing to repose himself; while his troops plu-
 der'd all who were of a different religion, and
 would not submit to the emperor. As Timur
 his intention in this war was God's glory,
 had every day some considerable bless-
 shower'd on him from heaven. Amongst
 delights, when he arriv'd at Car¹, he had
 pleasure of encamping in a very agreeable p^l
 where the green meadows, the infinite num-
 of springs and rivulets of water clear as cry-
 the shady groves, delicious fruit-trees, the
 riety of ballans, and flowers, and the refresh-
 zephyrs were so charming, that they ...
 most together in the ...
 ... not, a prince, at whose
 birth the court was transported with joy
 and the whole army made public rejoicing.

C H A P. XLVII.

The birth of Ibrahim Sultan.

Of all the blessings that ... being
 ... recently bestows ...
 ... not learned doctors believe there is
 ter than that of the conjunction of ...

¹ A town of Georgia, long 405 30. lat 51. 35.

that it must be confes'd that the favor which God grants to his children in virtue, or knowledge of his ex-

cellencies, is not to be compared to the favor which he bestows on his chosen ones.

It was in the year of the lion, 796, that God, whom it pleas'd to

increase Timur's power, and to furnish him with favorable conjunctures to render him all master

of the universe, granted him this blessing in a degree above that bestow'd on other potentates,

that to his power might be preserv'd in his august posterity; wherefore on the twenty-

fourth of Ethar 796, he blest'd with a son, the young Timur, whose physiognomy pre-

monstrated the height of grandeur to which he shou'd intime arrive; as his horoscope signify'd

that he shou'd ascend the throne, and be the possessor of his father's crown. Serai Mulc Canum

gave him the honorable name of Timur.

Timur, being then a child, was brought up in the palace of his father, the emperor's children, the

princes of the empire, and the nobles, who paid him respect as to him, and Timur order'd a large

palace to be built for him, and many great lords to attend

him, and deliver'd the poor from their oppressions, that there was never any complaint

made against him, who had not cause to return thanks to him, he exempted the people from

taxes for a whole year. Orders were given to the most skilful astrologers to come

to him, and to examine the horoscope of the young prince.

They found that the young prince was the

skil-

Sept. 9.
1393.

Book III. CHAPTER XLIII. *of his present; they also attended his wishes; which were, that he should be endow'd with all the virtues of a great prince; that from the cradle he should wear a crown, and become the greatest monarch; and that the crown should remain for ever in his family, because the kin was at this time in the tenth house of Israel. Then I saw order that he call'd Abraham. I saw that he might have for his patron that prophet who was God's chief favorite.*

CHAPTER XLVIII.

Solomon's embassy for the birth of Ibrahim.

Solomon, son of Chazar.

... for the plain of Megheul; where he had information of the Emirs, who had been sent into Georgia after having gain'd several battels, and taken many places from the Christians, were upon their turn. Shortly after these Emirs had return'd to Salts Timur; and having presented the spoils they had taken in Georgia, congratulated him on the birth of his prince grandson. After this, orders were given preparations to be made for the banquet, provided tents and canopies, which they adorn'd with the most magnificent furniture of gold. These tents took up two leagues of ground.

* A village near the mountain Joudi in Georgia.

emperor's was under a canopy, sustained by four Chinese pillars, and an altar in the middle of it. The emperor sat on a throne, which was lifted up by four slaves. He wore a crown of gold, set with precious stones, and a robe of purple and gold. He held a scepter in his right hand, and a sword in his left. He was surrounded by two rows of attendants, the vocal on the right, and the instrumental on the left. Nine Chaur of a handsome make, well equipped, and mounted on Arabian horses, came before him in quality of stewards of the feast. They having dismounted, took golden vessels in their hands, and march'd in procession before him, which were serv'd up. They were follow'd by cup-bearers, having in their hands crystal bottles, and golden cups, with red wine of Shiraz, white of Mazendran, grey of Caboul, and water as clear as that

480
481

480

* Fountain in Mahomet's paradise.

of Chiraz, which were serv'd up to the very ground. The emperor then rose to his throne, and gave orders to his officers, that they should be ready to receive the ambassadors of the new king, who was to be crowned in the city of Samarkand. The emperor then retired to his palace, and the ambassadors of the new king arrived in the city of Samarkand. They were received by the emperor's officers, and were conducted to the emperor's palace. The emperor then received them, and gave them orders to be ready to receive the ambassadors of the new king, who was to be crowned in the city of Samarkand. The emperor then retired to his palace, and the ambassadors of the new king arrived in the city of Samarkand. They were received by the emperor's officers, and were conducted to the emperor's palace. The emperor then received them, and gave them orders to be ready to receive the ambassadors of the new king, who was to be crowned in the city of Samarkand.

Timur-Bec, who was the wife of the emperor, was also present. She was a beautiful woman, and was very kind to the ambassadors. She gave them orders to be ready to receive the ambassadors of the new king, who was to be crowned in the city of Samarkand. The emperor then retired to his palace, and the ambassadors of the new king arrived in the city of Samarkand. They were received by the emperor's officers, and were conducted to the emperor's palace. The emperor then received them, and gave them orders to be ready to receive the ambassadors of the new king, who was to be crowned in the city of Samarkand.

Book III.

governor of the young Mirza, which he
made a magnificent banquet, which
lasted eight days, to return thanks
for the honor he did her. The Emir Soliman
Abbas was appointed his governor, and his son
Sadokh Agz, a relation of Timur, his minister.
When these entertainments, which lasted three
weeks, were finished, Timur departed from
Mashghul the night of the 24th of Zilcade 806, and
went to encamp on the top of a mountain.

Octob. 5.
1394.

CHAPTER XLIX.

*Timur's march to the Mirza's camp, and his
of Samarkand.*

Octob. 8.

THE Emir Soliman
went to apply himself to the doing acts
justice, and treating his people as his children
in which paternal advices Timur acted
great prudence. Then he embrac'd his son
having kiss'd his eyes and head, took him
of him. After Charoc's departure,
proceeds Serai Mulk Canum, his mother,
Agz, and other princesses and ladies of the court
also departed with the baggage for Samarkand,
which place they had orders to go to,
having cross'd the Oxus. The Mirza's
Cathoxiana came as far as the Oxus
to receive him, and all the people
to be illustrious & victorious: and the
lin'd with people from the Ganges to the
Kech. The Emir Soliman, and the
the Mirza was near Kech,

* Gihon.

with great ceremony, the city of Samarcand Chap. 93
 was adorn'd; the artificers brought th
 brought th
 to
 to
 with display
 which had been taken from
 the several barres the emperor
 had won; and the ground was cover'd with car-
 min and scarlet cloth. Cossroes made his entry
 amidst the people's acclamations; and as soon
 as he was seated on the throne, he order'd for
 coming to the example of the just Anouchi-
 rwan, to proclaim that the inha-^{* Cossroes:}
 bitants shou'd repair to him for justice against
 Thus he began to exercise the
 function of vicaroy, exactly following his father's
 advices; so that the contented happy people had
 cause to thank God for giving 'em so equitable
 whom the weak cou'd live in as

Book III

* A town between Teflis and the river Cyrus.

most, these rash inhabitants of Capchac, with their regiments, shamefully

The enemy, as they were on the banks of the

Abcc, * Cyrus.

of Mahmud, which is in which Timur † In Georgia.

and engaged on the plain of Calis Gai

near the town of Sacabul. Timur, who ex-

travels led the princes his children, sent to Sel-

zania for them, the crepases, and the banners of

some to the imperial camp; which they accord-

ingly did, and then crossed the Caspian

sea. Timur, who was the siege of Ailengic, in

coming to meet, and being at Babi, he was in-

formed that he had a son born to him, whom the

emperor, Ali gel, Mirza B. Mehemet, leaving

ing the Timur-Beyindic, Hassan Jagadaul, and

Ali Bei son of Aisa, at Chiraz, departed thence,

and join'd the imperial camp in the winter-

camp, where they pass'd the season agreeably

diverting themselves with various amusements.

CHAPTER II.

Timur-Bec's second time into Capchac
against Tamerlane's Car.

As the winter was advancing on the decline,
Timur-Bec departed for Capchac at the
head of a powerful army, to make war on To-
merlane's Car, who had not only re-established
himself in the kingdom, but was daily making

* A town of Georgia, long ago destroyed.

Book III. Timur's dominions, to repair
 the loss of his last defeat. Timur distributed
 among his soldiers several sums out of his own
 treasury; and sent the ladies with the baggage to
 Soltania, to which place also came Timur's
 Mulk Aga, while the amir Bera Mulk Aga
 and Toman Aga, with the young princes
 departed for Samarcand. Timur then
 conveyed Bera Mulk Aga to the government
 of Soltania, in concert with the
 Irachan governor of the fortress. The forces
 of both armies met, the army of Timur
 in order of battle, with their ensigns
 and their flags waving in the air, and
 the army of Bera Mulk Aga in the
 ranks of the army of Timur, the
 army marching. While they were in
 winter quarters, the

March 10.
 1395.

the world; I de-
 mand of you, whom the devil of pride has
 turn'd from the right way, what is your
 sign in passing beyond your bounds? who has
 put you upon such vain undertakings? Alas
 you forgot how in the last war your
 and effects were reduc'd to nothing. You
 certainly behave your self with great
 since you oppose your own happiness. Is it
 possible you can be so ignorant that they who
 have testify'd their friendship to me, have
 been receiv'd with respect, and drawn
 advantages from the treaty I have made
 with you, and which I have graciously

Among the Tartars, the last wing is most honorable
 the right.

could my ex- only been under
 ceptional- but also been
 a- unable- who in the
 gre- with
 or
 sent out to me. The
 sent'd both my sudden and lover
 at you have read this letter, don't delay
 sending me an answer; but let me know your
 resolution, either for war or peace. This
 letter was carry'd by Chamlaoun, a
 person of great wisdom, experience, and ad-
 dress, who was sent to it in consequence of
 his knowledge in conducting it with vigor; he
 was conversant with the maxims of
 the great of Persia, and with the interests
 and passions of that country. He had
 ways invented in his negotiations by his elo-
 quence, and forcible ways of arguing. * Because
 of these qualifications he was sent into Capchac,

* He was
 afterwards
 Timur's
 prime mi-
 nister.

ted in
 He afterwards
 in a manner, till
 upon any and thing persuaded of the necessity
 of peace, he was about consenting to it, and
 signing peace of Timur. He had without
 doubt concluded a treaty, if his courtiers and
 advisers, whose interest it was to make war,
 had not persuaded him against it, and by that
 means to be ruin'd by the state. Forasmuch,
 however, as the evil sentiments of his courtiers,
 were not so powerful as to overcome his wisdom,
 he sent an ambassador to Timur, by
 the hands of Chamlaoun, to whom he made a
 present of a robe. This ambassador, at his
 arrival, was received near the river of Sam-
 hour,

...the emperor: a deputy of his em-
bayed and presented to him Timur's let-
ter. Timur was enraged at the indignities
means which he alleged in his answer, and
at the same time gave orders for the review of
his army, which he commanded to get ready
with expedition.

CHAPTER III

TIMUR REVIEWS HIS ARMY.

Timur ordered his soldiers to repose
on all the banks of the river of Terek,
the place of the review, which was the
of the Gorgon. Timur's army was divided
into three parts: the left wing, the right wing,
and the center.

the great cry:
the center of the left wing was at the foot of
mount Alburz, and that of the right wing on the
banks of the sea; and from one to the other
were posted a great number of soldiers in
line. It is reported that from Genghiz Khan's
time so numerous and well-equipped an army
had not been seen in those parts; nor do we find
of any such in the history of the Timurids.
While Timur reviewed this formidable army, all
the Emirs and principal officers of the Tatar
on their knees offered him their homage, and
repetition to sacrifice their lives in his service,
for which he encouraged em with the most
flattering speeches. After the review, he returned

* Different from the river of the same name, which is a
branch of the Tis in Capcha.

Book II

THE HISTORY OF THE CAISAR

ing, who had neither time to prepare for battle, nor means to fly; so that our men were the conquerors of 'em. Timur conveyed his camp, and encamp'd on the banks of the river Tergé, till the remainder of his troops came up to him. In the mean time Tocatnich, at the head of a formidable army, encamp'd on the bank of the river Terk. His camp was fortified on all sides, and the approaches were inviolable with great bucklers and waggers which served for walls. Timur drew up his army for battle, and march'd to attack Tocatnich; who, after a short fight, to gain a more advantageous position, retired, and return'd back to his camp. Timur, having found a passage, march'd along the sides of the river Terk, towards the country of Coulat, where there were provisions in abundance, that our soldiers might be able to pursue the enemy without any obstacle. Our scouts having brought advice that Tocatnich had rally'd his troops, and was encamp'd by the lower part of the river, Timur resolv'd to give him battle, and march'd in order, and always preferring the right flank.

Timur march'd along the sides of the river Terk, towards the country of Coulat, where there were provisions in abundance, that our soldiers might be able to pursue the enemy without any obstacle. Our scouts having brought advice that Tocatnich had rally'd his troops, and was encamp'd by the lower part of the river, Timur resolv'd to give him battle, and march'd in order, and always preferring the right flank.

A river between the Terk and the Caspian, falling into the Caspian.
The name is the Timenty, & falls in mount Alburz, and falls into the Caspian.
A river in Georgia between the Caspian and the Terk; it arises in mount Alburz, and falls into the Caspian.
A fortress in Georgia, near Tarsus, near the Caspian.

The History of the Emir Cheik

with the bravest men of the army, and their equa-
ranks before the soldiers, to let them see they
had all their arms, which were furnished with
cannon, bows, and neck to catch men. He then
mounted at the head of twenty-seven thousand
men, who composed the body of reformed
Turks, and rang'd his army over against
his enemy. The night be-

fore the battle, a
sudden shower of rain fell, with a
wind which blew the clouds off the face of the
sun, and the sun shined with a
brilliant light, which was a
sign of victory to the Emir Cheik.

From the morning
upon the day of the
battle, the Emir Cheik

had with
him a select body of
his main body, rally'd, and attack'd ours
briskly, that they flew several, and in some
give ground, and retreat fighting as far as
Tiberias. By this means the enemy were
together, and broke their ranks, and were
away, by his example, and the
The enemy were willing to make the
rage of this disorder, for which reason they
advanced upon our army, but the Emir
was posted. They beat us, and our
and now standing his firm resistance, he
covered'd with a thousand marks of
duty, wherein his arms were all
his half-pike broke to shatters, and he
always in action, they had heard of
the Emir Cheik Noureddin, who'd to fight
his

106
with his Toman, and holding
the center, before him, and his
wife, they put them to flight, and
charge their swords, and defended
with an unshaken valor, against the
whose number were. But
they fell upon our men, and
and some of them.

And no
came from another part of the field, and
the enemy, who were
On the other side, the

And
Toman

with his Toman upon the main
body, which he put to flight, after having
several, and signaliz'd his valor, they
young, to the honor of the emperor.
Yashli, a favorite and
of Toratnich Can, being
himself by some great action, and
troop of brave men, and having
that he did in the center of the
army: he even raised his voice
in a loud manner, and told them
in the field of battle, and that
of various
that were waiting
he march'd forward at the head of his
man: and gave them blows, and having
their sabres, they forc'd upon them

and poignards, and grappled with one another Chapter 73.
 like two enraged lions. The soldiers of their
 Romans imitated their valour, and fought hand
 to hand. Blood flow'd in this place
 like a torrent, and never were such furious blows
 given before. At length Osman Behader had
 the advantage; he overthrew his enemy, and
 set upon his troops with so much fury, that he
 entirely defeated em. All our generals in their
 respective posts perform'd their duty so well, that
 after a long obstinate battel, they made the ene-
 my give ground, and put em into disorder. Yet
 we were not certain of the defeat till the flight
 of Touchick Cap, who shamefully turn'd his
 back, with the princes of his blood, that is,
 of the race of Touchi, the Nevians, or foreign
 princes dwelling in the kingdom of Capchac,
 and the Emirs and generals of his troops. Then
 all our men rally'd, and joining together, fell
 upon the enemy, loudly crying out, *Victory!*
 They slew a vast number of em, and afterwards
 took a great many of those whom they
 took alive.

Timur finding himself sore of the victory, got
 off his horse, and humbly knelt down before
 God; to return thanks for the assistance he had
 given him, acknowledging that he had gain'd
 the victory by his goodness. The
 princes the emperor's sons, and the other princes
 and Emirs, also on their knees congratulated
 Timur, and cast gold and precious stones upon
 him. This monarch embrac'd em all one after
 another, loading em with praises and thanks.
 They departed from this place, and when they
 were come to the bank of the Corai, Timur

Corai is Coruh in Georgia, which falls into the Cas-
 pian, north of Yaki.

Book III. got an exact information of all who had bravely
 serv'd the public on this important occasion.
 He granted great favors to the Emir Cheik Non-
 reddin, who had with so much zeal expos'd his
 life, to save his prince: he gave him a more
 honorable and advantageous post than any he had
 possess'd before, presented him with a horse of
 great price, a vest of gold brocade, a belt set
 with precious stones, and besides all this, a hun-
 dred thousand Dinars Copeghi. Timur distri-
 buted his treasures among the Emirs and cap-
 tains, who had perform'd extraordinary actions
 in this battel; and that every one might be con-
 tented, he made a general promotion of all the
 officers of the army.

CH A P. LIV.

*Timour-Bec. marches to the Volga, and
 discovers a new Can of Capchac.*

TIMUR left with the baggage the great
 booty taken after this victory; and to the
 Mirza Mirancha had been wounded in his thigh
 by a fall of his horse before the battel, he order'd
 this prince to remain behind to be cured of his
 wound; and he left with him, the Beg Beg-
 hiar Berlas, and Hadgi Seifeddin. Then he
 march'd at the head of his best troops in pur-
 suit of Tocatinich: but when he was arriv'd at
 the Volga, this Can having already pass'd it,
 he staid some time on the bank of the river at a
 passage call'd Touraton. Then he order'd Coi-
 ritchac Aglen, son of Ourous Can, who was an
 officer of his court, to come before him; he gave
 him for his household-troops the squadron of

brave Uzbeks, who were enroll'd in his service; Chap. 10.
 He order'd an eagle, secretary of a great empe-
 ror to be prepar'd for him: He gave him a vest
 of gold brocade, and a belt of gold: and after
 having crown'd him emperor of Capchac, and
 all the parts of Touthi, he made him cross the
 Volga. His new Can us'd all his endeavors to
 get together the troops of his nation, which
 were dispers'd every where, and to govern his
 new subjects. In the mean while our men closely
 pursu'd the fugitives as far as Ouket¹; they
 slew a great number of those who were in the
 rear. And as the enemy had our Zagataians
 behind 'em, and the Volga before 'em, several
 were made captives, while the others cross'd the
 river upon floats. Tocatmich seeing himself thus
 closely pursu'd, abandon'd his effects, houses,
 and all his possessions, preferring his life before
 his kingdom; he fled with his most faithful ser-
 vants, into the unknown and impenetrable fo-
 rest of Boular². Our army march'd by the west
 side of the river, to the place where it had been
 in the first campaign, and then to the east side,
 and where it had winter'd all the last year, in
 every place, which is near the dark ocean, or the
 sea. At their return the soldiers pillag'd a great
 part of Capchac, and brought in immense booty
 to Timur; as gold, silver, furs of Condoz, rubies
 and pearls, young boys and girls of great beau-
 ty, spotted furs of Vachac, and even live Va-
 chacs, whose pace is extremely grave tho' swift;
 besides several sorts of animals unknown among
 the Europeans.

¹ The left bank of the dependance of Strai, long 84
 leagues, in Capchac upon the Volga; between Bulgar and Cas-
 pian Sea, 100 leagues from each.

² Between Bulgar, or Bulgar, Siberia, along the right Ca-
 spian, 100 leagues.

The Mirza Mirancha, and the Emirs who staid behind with the baggage, join'd Timur in a place nam'd Yonlucluc Azucuc'. - And as in this expedition most part of the Emirs of the empire accompany'd Timur, and this prince had a design to advance into the remotest parts of Caspach, that his name might be known in the western kingdoms; he us'd his precautions with regard to the kingdoms he left behind, where there were not Emirs sufficient to guard 'em, on whom he cou'd entirely rely: whereupon he sent to Chiraz the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Omar Cheik, with six thousand horse; and to Samarcand the Emir Chamseddin Abbas, with three thousand men, accompany'd by Cayas Eddin Terean, because he belong'd to his Tormail. These Emirs immediately set out; and when they had pass'd Derbend, and were come to Ardebil, they receiv'd news from Tauris, that Cora Yusef had again assembled his troops, and was march'd towards the city, and encamp'd in the neighborhood of Alatac, designing to march to Coi. The Emirs Chamseddin and Cayaseddin continu'd their road towards Samarcand; but the Mirza Pir Mehemet, with the Emirs Aboufaid Berlas, Bekich, Dolet Goja, and Tokkel Behader, being come to Tauris, assembled the troops of the neighborhood, and were join'd by the Emirs of the Mirza Miran Cheik, who had remain'd at Tauris.

Pir Mehemet receiv'd all the troops he cou'd assemble together, and set out with a resolution to attack the Tuzmoms. Being arriv'd at Coi, he there join'd Tezic and Jalic, who with their soldiers follow'd the army. Ad-

vice was brought to the favour of Cara Yousef
were in the ~~the~~ The Mirza
made half ~~the~~ In making arriv'd at
this d ~~the~~ and towards Cara Yousef,
who ~~the~~ to advise
the ~~the~~ which affect
this robber spy. The Mirza pursu'd him,
and was join'd by ~~the~~ by Malek Azeem,
a Courde, whom we have before mention'd.
They pursu'd him together three days, and en-
camp'd; they likewise sent Enghis after him,
who went as far as Avenic, without being able
to join him. Then the Mirza Pir Mohomet de-
parted to return home; he pass'd by Tauris to
Sultania, where the princeess Camzade gave him
a magnificent entertainment and a vest: and he
afterwards set out for Chiraz, according to the
emperor's orders.

*Timur marches into Europe; and conquers
western Asia, as also Hungary and Russia.*

AS Timur's courage would not permit him
to be satisfy'd with an enterprise, till he
had carry'd it to the utmost perfection; so he
was not contented with having crush'd Tocat-
tan out of his empire, and having exter-
minated his army: but the same courage made

A name of mountains, at present the frontiers between
Persia and Turkey. The French translator has pass'd 'em.

A lake near, where they shut up the fish of the lake of
Van, by a contrivance to the desire of a prince. The French
translator has cross'd it.

queror; and fly with his eldest son: he was oblig'd to retreat, and his troops in the night time he did without being known. Timur brought to him his wives, children, and domestics. The emperor ordain'd tents to be erected for him to lodge in; and after having treated him very civilly, he made him presents of cattle, horses, stuffs, furniture, and other rarities, and sent him back to Bikyaroc. The Mirza Mirancha, Gubancha Behaden, and the other Emirs, also went with their Pomans and Hezarts to ravage the western countries. They exterminated Bic Coja, and other Emirs dependent on Capchac, as also the subjects of Gucoul, whom they pillag'd and sack'd. They over-run all the great kingdom of ~~the~~ Ouroufagic, or little Russia, where they took prodigious droves of cattle, and abundance of women and girls, of all ages, and of an extraordinary beauty and shape. Then

Timur marches to Moscou, and pillages it.

Timur came in person to the city of Moscou, capital of that country, which his soldiers pillag'd, as they had done all the other places dependent on it, seizing and carrying off pieces the governors and princes of these parts.

The Russians and Muscovites ne'er beheld their kingdom in so bad a condition, their plains being cover'd with dead bodys. The army enrich'd themselves with whatever precious things they cou'd find in this vast country: as ingots of gold and silver blades; great quantities of flax of Antioch very much esteem'd; cloth wove in Russia with a great deal of skill and nicety; skins of Condoz full of points, of which each soldier had whole mule-loads; vast numbers of fables ~~as~~ jet, and ermins, with which every person in the army was sufficiently furnish'd, both for his own and his childrens lives; as likewise

skins of Marach, grey, and white, spotted like tigers skins. They also brought many furs of grey, and skins of red foxes, and an infinite number of young colts, which had not yet been shod. It would be tedious to give a detail of all the booty they obtain'd in this great country.

The Mirza Mehmed Sultan pillag'd all the province subject to Cabendgi Caraoul: he got together all the household nations who had serv'd in the enemy's army during the last campaign, as those of Courbonca, Pirlan, Yurkun, and Kojadgi, who for fear of falling into the hands of our men wander'd up and down in the desert: he put to flight their effects, carrying away their wives and children as captives.

Timur having got some guides, departed from those quarters towards Balchinkin, a town on the Tanais. When he was arriv'd at Balchinkin, he found the Turans, who had been out to make incursions in the enemy's country along the bank of the Tanais. Timur order'd that the Mahometans of Azac should be separated from the others, and left at liberty: but that the other inhabitants of the town should be put to the sword, and their houses pillag'd and burnt.

Balchinkin is the Palus Maris.

A town at the mouth of the Tanais, long. 74. lat. 52. 30.

MIRZA E. LVB

Timur makes war on Circassia.

TIMUR departed from Aazoo for Couban, and as the Circassians had destroyed their meadows and pasture-grounds between those two towns, a great number of the horses of the army perished. They suffered this want of forage between seven and eight days, but at length, having passed many waters and marshes, they arriv'd at Couban, where they staid some time. Timur sent the Mirza Mehemet Sultan and Miranohi, the Emir Gehancha and other Emirs to make inroads in Circassia, with orders to return as soon as they had made themselves masters of that kingdom. These princes march'd thither with expedition, pillag'd all the country, and brought away an infinite quantity of booty to Timur's camp, to which they return'd at the end of their expedition.

Capital of Circassia, long 76. lat 47.

CHAP.

C. H. A. B. ALVII.

Timur marches to Alburtz Couh, or mount Caucasus.

TIMUR being satisfy'd with the conquest of Muscovy and Circassia, return'd with his whole army towards mount Alburtz. There some sorry fellows, who are never wanting in the courts of princes, accus'd the Emir Oghlan Abbas before Timur, of crimes which had no foundation of truth. These slanders were believ'd by the emperor, who had before lov'd the worth and credit of Oghlan. He resolv'd that this illustrious Emir shou'd be put to death, who on so many occasions had given marks of his courage.

Timur, having strength to destroy the infidels, march'd towards Bouraberdi, to attack Buraken, prince of the nation of As: and as there were forests on this road, he order'd 'em to be cut down, in order to make a free passage. Then he left the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin with the baggage, and march'd himself to mount Alburtz, where he several times attack'd the Georgians, took their castles, and made himself master of their fortify'd defiles, which they imagin'd inaccessible: he put a great number of these Georgians to the sword, after having ruin'd their fortresses, and enrich'd his soldiers with their spoils.

Timur came down from the mountain, very much pleas'd with the advantages he had gain'd. He return'd to his camp, and order'd a feast of joy of his victorys: whereupon the pavilion of

cere-

ceremony was erected, the cords of which were of silk, the pillars of gold, and the pins of silver; the canopy on which he sat with his crown on his head was of gold enrich'd with precious stones. The princes and great lords stood before him ready to receive his orders. The inside of the tent was sprinkled with an odoriferous rose-water; and then the tables were plac'd, and the meats serv'd up in dishes of gold. After they had done eating, the bottles were unstop'd, and the cups open'd, and every one drank wine of Georgia while they were entertain'd both with vocal and instrumental music. A whole week pass'd in these pleasures, and every one repos'd himself from the fatigues of the campaign. At length Timur made choice of the moment to decamp, which the astrologers found to be most fortunate, which was done at the sound of kettledrums and trumpets.

CHAP. LXVI.

Timur attacks the fortresses of Coula, Tacon, and others.

TIMUR again left the body of the army, to march to the fortresses of Coula and Tacon in Georgia, which are inhabited by the same people as those in mount Alburz, and who seek refuge into strong places situate on steep mountains, the passages to which are almost impassible. They are so very steep that one is

• The Timurids seldom drink till the end of their meals.
daz.

Chapter of the Dec.

devoted to looking upon 'em, and especially that of Tana, which is on the ridge of a high mountain, and is so very high, that the most skillful archer can't hit it with his arrow; which was the reason that no one had ever before attempted the taking of it. Timur order'd the Toman of the Meerits who were in his army to come before him: these men are so dextrous in climbing up mountains, that they will go wherever the antilopes or roebucks go. He order'd 'em to look out for the most difficult ways to ascend the place. They went all round the mountain; but were not able to find out a single passage to the castle. This very much disquieted Timur, he thought some time upon this enterprize; and at length resolv'd to make a great many high ladders, which he join'd to one another and fasten'd them against the foot of the mountain. Some brave men ascend'd a troop of the most hardy, who were resolv'd to sacrifice their lives for the success of the action, being upon the top of this ridge, bound themselves with cords; and having fasten'd the ends of the cords to the ridge of the mountain, they came down even with the place, where the besieg'd overwhelm'd 'em with stones. Several on this occasion had the honor of martyrdom. The others, encourag'd as much by a motive of religion as by the glory of dying in the service of the great Timur, took the place of the slain, and advanc'd with an extraordinary resolution. And as the whole army were continually mounting the ladders, and descending before the place, the besieg'd lost courage, and cou'd not hinder our men from getting to the castle, and making themselves masters of it. They put to the sword all the men of the nation of Iracans, who had assist'd

father.

thither. The governors of Coula and Tâous were also taken and put to death.

From thence the army march'd towards the fortress of Poulad, which was one of the great towns of Capcha, was retin'd. Timur in his march arriv'd at a place nam'd Belcan, where there was so great a quantity of honey, that all the soldiers were provided with some. The emperor being willing to make the governor of this place, whose name was also Poulad, own his fault, wrote a letter to him, in which he declar'd, that if he did not send Outarcou to him, who had fled for refuge into his place, he would make him repent of it. Poulad, confiding in the strength of his citadel, slighted the letter, and sent Timur word, that he was in a good fortress, and ready to defend himself if attack'd; that the lord Outarcou having fled for refuge to him, he wou'd not deliver him up, but as long as he had one drop of blood left, he would defend him to the utmost of his power.

Timur having receiv'd this answer, was more incens'd, and resolv'd to take the town by force. There was in the way a very thick wood, the trees of which grew so very close together, that the wind could scarce find a passage thro' it: whereupon he order'd the soldiers to cut down this forest, and make a way thro' it, which they accordingly did for the space of three leagues. Then the standards being display'd, they began their march, and arriv'd at the place. The fortress is situate in a very steep declivity of mountains; and the inhabitants had kept up the way which leads to it, and plac'd a

A town of Georgia, different from the town of Batacan, also in Georgia.

Timur-Bec.

good guard there, having resolv'd to sacrifice their lives to their master's service, at the incitation of the assassins we have already mention'd. They rashly attack'd our soldiers first; but were soon defeated: our men enter'd the place, and having made themselves masters of it, put to the sword all who were capable of bearing arms. Outarou fled, and escap'd by the defiles of Mount Alburz. Our soldiers pillag'd the goods, and set fire to the houses of these miserable people, making the inhabitants slaves, and carrying away much booty.

Advice being brought that three companies of Georgians, who had fled, were posted on the top of a mountain, Timur march'd immediately against 'em, attack'd 'em, and after their defeat, caus'd 'em all to be cast into the sea. Then the Mirza Mirancha, who commanded the troops of the right wing, sent the emperor that he had pursued O. to the very middle of Mount Alburz, where he defended himself in a place nam'd Abasa. Timur hereupon immediately departed, enter'd the mount Alburz, and being encamp'd at Abasa, they at length seiz'd on Outarou, whom they brought before the emperor, who order'd him to be bound, and loaded with chains. The soldiers pillag'd all the habitations of this great and famous mountain, of which they entirely made themselves masters.

BOOK P. LIX

Timur marches to Semsem.

TIMUR march'd against the country of Semsem, where he no sooner appear'd than he became master of all this tract of ground. Mehemet son of Gaiour Can, to whom it belong'd, came to offer it at his feet, and beg the honor for himself and all his subjects to be of the number of his servants: and he was enrol'd among the officers of Timur's court. Several of the inhabitants of these places had fled into the mountains, and maintain'd their ground in steep places where the foot soldiers were scarce able to stand upon their legs. Timur went himself in search of 'em, and mounted these difficult places; where his soldiers met with some resistance from the enemys, who were at length overcome. Timur order'd 'em to be bound, and precipitated from the top of the mountain. There were several places in Georgia, out of which neither horse nor foot cou'd get, without gently sliding down the steep hills. Timur's zeal for the honor of religion, and desire to obtain the rewards promis'd to those who make war for the faith, excit'd him to hazard his person in all these difficultys, and expose himself to the greatest fatigues. But at length he clear'd this country of the infidels who inhabited it, setting fire to their houses, and destroying their statues and churches. From

A town and country in mount Alburz in Georgia.

thence

thence he march'd to mount *Bar*, which he gave in *plage* to his soldiers; and afterwards to *Richkunt*, where he gave great largesses to the inhabitants, because they had long since offer'd him their services: he assign'd 'em lordships, with assurances that they need not fear any harm; for he prohibited his soldiers from wronging 'em in the least manner, that every one might see, that what he did was either recompence for their merits, or a punishment for their crimes. He then march'd on farther, and

* In Georgia.

rayag'd the countrys of the Cossacks of *Jutour*, putting to the sword all these robbers: our soldiers brought from thence great quantities of goods, and especially of honey, with which this country abounds. From thence they went to *Bagaz Com*, where the inhabitants of *Mastan* and *Calicomouc* came to make their submissions: he gave 'em a handsome recompence, and promised 'em that he would keep 'em in possession of their country. Then there remain'd unconquer'd in Georgia only the isles, the inhabitants of which confiding in the water which surounded 'em, had fortify'd themselves, and neglected to come and pay their devoirs to *Timur*: they were call'd *Balechian*, that is to say, the fishermen. *Timur* sent troops to reduce 'em: and as it was winter, and the waters were froze above two cubits in thickness, the soldiers pass'd over, and fell upon the houses of these islanders, pillag'd their effects, and carry'd 'em away captive to the imperial camp.

A town of Georgia, long 38. lat. 43.

A defile of mountains in Georgia.

CHAP. IX.

Timur marches into Caphtac, and pillages the nation of Hadgi Tercan, or Astracan.

O MAR Taban, Timur's lieutenant in Hadgi Tercan, having observ'd something treasonable in the conduct of Mahmoudi, who was the Kalanter, caus'd a memorial to be writ of it, which he sent to the emperor, who on that advice took up a resolution to raze the town. He began his march during winter, which was very violent this year, leaving with the baggage the Mirzas Mehemet Sultan and Mirancha, and the Emir Hadgi Seifeddin. He went at the head of his troops thro the snows, and bad ways, caus'd by the severity of the season. Hadgi Tercan is situate on the bank of the Volga: the walls of this town are close to the river, which runs round the town, and so serves for a rampart to em. And as the river is froze in winter, they usually build a wall of ice as strong as one of brick, upon which they fling water in the night, that the whole may congeal, and become one piece: to which wall they make a gate. The mention of this wall we believe will not displease the reader, because it is so extraordinary. Timur being come near Hadgi Tercan, march'd before the army, and in the morning advanc'd before the town but with few men.

A town of Caphtac upon the Volga, long. 87. lat. 47.
 Capital of the town.

The Destruction of Serai

Mahmoud was oblig'd to go out to meet the emperor, but Timur caus'd him to be arrested, and sent towards Serai under the conduct of the Mirza Pir Mehemet, and the Emirs Gehancha, Cheik Noureddin, and Coja Acbouga. He then enter'd the place, the inhabitants of which he treated very courteously; but at length he made 'em go out, and after having brought out the men and beasts, and all that was within, he caus'd it to be raz'd. The Mirza Pir Mehemet having cross'd the Volga which was frozen, thrust Mahmoudi under the ice, according to the orders they had receiv'd. Afterwards they went to Serai, capital of Capchac, which they set on fire, and reduc'd to ashes, after having made the inhabitants go out. This destruction of Serai was to revenge the insolence of the men of Capchac, who had run'd Zender Shah, the palace of Sultan Cazan Can, which was without a governor. Timur employ'd in the conquest of the kingdoms of Fars and Irac. After Timur had reveng'd himself of these traitors, he return'd to the winter-quarters: and as much as the violence of the cold had extremely weaken'd his army, so that most part of the horses perish'd, and the dearth was so great in the camp, that a pound of millet was sold for twenty Dinars Copaghi, an ox's head for a hundred, and a sheeps-head for two hundred and fifty: the emperor order'd that the spoils taken at Haggi Tercan and Serai should be divided among the soldiers. The Tarchis had the

^a Capital of Capchac, where the Tartar kings of Detch Barca, which is the Arabian name of Capchac, resided: it is situate on the Volga, long. 81. lat. 52.

^b Two leagues from Carchi in Transoxiana.

care of this: they gave houses to all those who Chap. 1
had none; for which they were very much
cared.

C H A P. LXL

Timur returns to Capchac.

AS all the countrys of Capchac, Keler,
and the west and north of the Caspian
sea, were reduc'd under Timur's dominion, and
his troops had pillag'd and sack'd the towns and
provinces of all these climates, as Onker, Mad-
agasc, Ruffia, Circassia, Bachgorod, Hungary,
Kazancow, Azar, Couban, and Alan;
and as all the princes of these countrys had given
assurances of their obedience, and the enemy
who had escap'd with their lives were dispers'd
every where without either fire or houses:

At the year 798 An. Dom.
of the Hegira 1396.

the Month of Timur decamp'd from his winter
quarters to the castle of Bougar Com, march'd
into Erzeround and Azerbaidjan, and at the sound
of drums, and the acclamations of the soldiers,
with the ensigns display'd, he cross'd the river
of Turk upon the ice. As soon as he was come
to Turk, he left the baggage, rang'd his army
in order of battle, and march'd towards U-
chak, to attack the Christians there: he be-

1. The province between Corassan and the Caspian sea.
2. A town of Capchac on the Volga, near Bulgar and Sa-
marcand.
3. A town of Capchac, long. 60. 33. lat. 48.
4. A river and country between Georgia and the Black sea.
5. A province of Georgia, north-west of Tatta.

But when they found in the morning that they had return'd laden with spoils to the camp. All the places and lordships, situate on the north of mount Alburz, were reduc'd to Timur's obedience, he decamp'd, and march'd with all his army, enrich'd with the spoils of Georgia and the northern countrys. Every soldier brought away five or six of the most beautiful young women of the country; and their waggons were fill'd with riches. The inhabitants of Zeregheran, the most skilful workmen in coats of mail, came to meet the emperor, and offer him their services, and presented him with several of the master-pieces of their art: his highness receiv'd 'em with all manner of civility, and was liberal to 'em. Those of the mountain Gishagh also submitted, and came to beg quarter: which Timur granted, and dismiss'd 'em. Then he march'd to Derbend Bacon, and forc'd the gates, and caus'd the walls of the city to be laid in a heap.

The news of the emperor's return being spread every where, all the nations came to meet him; and he was receiv'd in triumph, with ensigns display'd. The citys sent to congratulate him upon his conquests with great pomp and ceremony, and made solemn plays and feasts to return thanks to God. The Chert Iravan, prince of Chirouan, who had follow'd the court in this expedition, beg'd leave to set out before the rest. He enter'd into Chaberna, and us'd all his care to prepare a great banquet, to receive the emperor in a magnificent manner: in effect, his regale was splendid, and worthy of the court: and he acquitted himself like a good

2 A town of Chirouan between Derbend and Chamahi.

servant, and a complete courtier. From thence Timur march'd on, and encamp'd on the bank of the river of Cyrus. The same Cheik Ibrahim, who was also prince of this town, & second in the city, entertain'd the emperor and the court, making presents likewise to Timur, and obliging him of a perfect obedience to his orders. This monarch gave him a vest, and a belt of gold enrich'd with precious stones: he also distributed vests among the relations of this Cheik, and the principal officers of his household. He confirm'd him in the principality of Chirovan and Chamak, recommended to him the care of the town of Derbend, as a place of importance, and to inform himself of whatever shou'd happen near the frontiers of his principality. Timur spent some days in this fine country in plays and pleasures, cross'd the river of Cyrus, and went to encamp at Aham.

Timur gives the government of Azerbaijan to the Mirza Mirancho, who besieges Alanga.

TIMUR having given to the Mirza Mirancho the government of Azerbaijan, and all the country situate between Derbend Bacon and Bagdad, and from Hamadan to the country of the Ottomans; orders were sent by an express to all the officers of this Mirza, who had remain'd in Corassana, to march to Azerbaijan with the Emir's and troops of his household. The

Book III. emperor order'd him to govern this kingdom by himself, and to besiege Alengic. The Mirza, when he came to take his leave of the emperor, was tenderly embrac'd by him, who order'd the Mirza Roustem and Gehancha Behader to accompany him with some good troops, and conduct him as far as Alengic. The Emirs and troops, who were order'd from Corassana, being arriv'd, he fix'd the countrys of Carabagh and Nacchivan, as far as Avenic, for the hords and habitations of the troops of his right wing; and the hords of his left wing were quarter'd in the countrys from Saouc Boulac and Derguzin, as far as Hamadan.

C H A P. LXIII.

Taking of the town of Seirjan, and the treaty of Babilon to Avenic.

WHILE Timur was busy'd in the campaign of Capchac in the most northern countrys, the town of Seirjan suffer'd a siege of three years, wherein Chahchahan with the troops of Sistan were employ'd. This place was so press'd by the besiegers, that all the inhabitants and garison were slain in the assault, except Gouderz the governor and six other persons. At length, the place being deliver'd up, Gouderz was put to death for his obstinacy. Temouke Couthin, governor of Yezd for Timur, left one of his domestic officers to govern this

* A town between Tauris and Sultania.

* A town near Sultania.

* A town of Irac Agemi, long. 83. lat. 35. 30.

The history of Timur-Bec.

521

Chapter
W

town, whilst himself went to the imperial camp. The Sultan Mehemet, son of Aboufai'd Teber, with some troops of Corassana, which had formerly been in the service of the princes of Musaffer, who had fled at Yezd, were so ambitious to form a design to revolt, tho' they had been witnesses of the examples we have mention'd: he slew Temouke's lieutenant, and several of the great officers of Yezd, while others escap'd their hands by flight.

As the lieutenant had amass'd a considerable sum of money, being the revenue of this province for two years, which he had put into the hands of the receiver-general of the finances of Timur's Divan, and besides had bought several loads of stuffs for the empress Serai Mule Canum, which he had not yet sent to her; this insolent fellow seiz'd upon both the money and stuffs, and made the taylor's of the town come to him, whom he oblig'd to make him several vests of these stuffs, that he might clothe all the rebels who had joined themselves into his service, among whom he had the most of the army. By this means he assembled an infinite number of robbers and villains, who were come here from all parts, hoping to make their fortune on this occasion. This sedition oblig'd the Mirza Fir Mehemet, son of Omar Cheik, to depart from Chiraz with the Persian army, to put a stop to these disorders, and disperse the rebels. The governors of the neighboring provinces, as Is-pahan, Couhestan, and Corassana, also march'd towards Yezd at the head of their troops; and being all assembled without the city, they form'd the siege.

Timur being inform'd of what had happen'd, order'd the Mirza Fir Mehemet, son of Gehanghir, to march thither, with Temour Coja son of Ac-bouga,

The History of Timur Beg.

Timur and other Emirs, at the head of his
troop. When they were arriv'd there, they re-
ceiv'd a second order, that, there not being
a sufficient quantity of pasture in the meadows
of Yezd to feed all their horses, they should be
left in the fresh countrys of Kiochec, and the
province of Ipahan, and that the cavalry shou'd
march on foot to Yezd, to bessege it. The Mir
and the Emirs departed according to this or-
der; and when they had pass'd by Ipahan, and
were come to Yezd, they encamp'd about it and
bessege'd it, giving two assaults each day, one
in the morning, and the other in the evening.

When Timur was in Capetiae, the Emir Mo-
hammad Beg, a courteous, experienc'd, courageous
prince, and of irreproachable conduct, was his
governor in Nehavend. This lord had an offi-
cer nam'd Behloul, a man of a wicked and per-
verse inclination, and desir'd

His natural son, and principie the
swords of the Emir, and treacherously to
put him to death: by which means this villain
got to be governor of Nehavend, and made pre-
parations for an army, that he might maintain
his revolt. Timur being arriv'd at Ardebil,
sent the Emir Cheik Noureddin to Chiraz, to
receive the revenues of Persia. When this Emir
was arriv'd there, the Emir Scindgie set out
thence for the court, according to Timur's or-
ders. Timur departed for Ardebil, and en-
camp'd at Sultania, where having compassion
on the poor Sultan Aisa prince of Mardin, who
had then lain in prison for three years, he or-
der'd his chains to be taken off; and after having
comforted him, and given him a vessel, he par-
don'd him, and by letters patent restor'd him to
the principality of Mardin, which he had be-
fore enjoy'd; yet not till this prince had

learn'dly

leminly sworn before the Emirs who protected him, that he would never fail in his obedience to the emperor, and accordingly him in all his wars, and on every occasion give marks of his respect and fidelity. and then he departed to return to Merdia.

After after this order'd, the Miraz Sultan Hussein, and Codadad Hussein, to march with expedition to Nehavend, with the other Emirs and their troops, to take this place, and destroy the impious Behloul, as a punishment for what he had done. They immediately set out, and Timur went from Sultania to Hamadan. When the Emirs were come to Nehavend, they caus'd the drums to be beat, and the trumpets sound, then they besieg'd the town, which they took with abundance of toil and fatigue, and cut in pieces all the rebels who defended it: the traitor Behloul was seiz'd, and burnt alive.

Timur then order'd the Emirs to march against the robbers of the high-ways of Persia, and to bring the disorders they had committed: he order'd also the Emirs to march along the shores of the Persian gulf, to bring under his obedience all the maritim places as far as the frontiers of Ormus, and return to the court after they had gain'd all these conquests. The Emirs departed from Nehavend according to these orders; and Timur went to encamp in the great plain of Hamadan, with the usual magnificence in his tents and pavilions. This monarch said there during the whole month of Ramadan, which he spent in prayer, fasting, and the other exercises of piety which good Mussulmans observe: and he was not contented with practising all those things he was oblig'd to, but he perform'd also such acts of devotion as the prophet only advis'd.

C H A P. LXIV.

Timur sends the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to conquer the kingdom of Ormus. The reduction of Yezd.

WHEN the feast of Bairam was over, the emperor order'd the Mirza Mehemet Sultan to march to Ormus, and make himself master of all the towns near the Persian gulf: and he accordingly departed at the head of the army. Then advice was brought of the reduction of Yezd, which after a long siege was starv'd out, thirty thousand persons dying of famine. Timur pardon'd the inhabitants, because he knew they were not concern'd in the sedition: but the rebels, who had carry'd on the war, were reduc'd to such extremity, that they were constrain'd to dig a way under the ditch of the town, by which to escape: which our soldiers perceiving, they pursu'd 'em, and near Mehridgerd⁷ slew the son of Aboufaid Tebesi, the leader of these seditious persons, some of whom were cut in pieces, and others burnt alive. Timur prohibited every one from hurting or pillaging the inhabitants; he was also willing they shou'd pay no tax: and Temeuke Coutchin, who had been governor there for Timur before the rebellion, had orders to go into the town with his men, and hinder the soldiers from entering, lest they shou'd insult the inhabitants.

⁷ A town of Corassana, otherwise call'd Esferain and Mehridjan, long. 51. 30. lat. 36. 30.

Timur did not desist of even the revenues of the two last years, and as thro the tyranny of the rebels the town of Yezd had been so far ruin'd that there remain'd no shops in it, and most of the houses were empty by the death of the inhabitants, it was now re-establish'd, and in a short time became as flourishing as before the revolt, thro the good conduct of Timur's officers. After the reduction of Yezd, the Mirzas had orders to return to court, and let their troops repair to their quarters. So the Mirza Pir Mehemet Gehanghir return'd by Corassana to Condoz and Bacalan; the Mirza Pir Mehemet, son of Omar Cheik, came to court; and the troops of the victorious army march'd to their own habitations.

C H A P. LXV.

Timur returns to the seat of his empire.

THE 2d of Chawal 798, which answers to the year of the Mouse, Timur departed from Hamadan, in order to return to Samarcand. He went to encamp in a delightful meadow, from whence he sent to the Emir Gelnacha, with orders to leave the siege of Alengic to the Sultan Sendger, Hadgi Seifeddin, and the troops of the Mirza Mirancha, that he might follow the Mirza Mehemet Sulran to Fars. The same day he gave orders for a hunting: the principal officers of his court and household form'd the great circle, surrounding the plain; and Timur took the diversion of killing the birds. After the hunting was over, he sent Abdel Malec Caracan, who came from Alengic,

July 30.
1396.

He sent to the Mirza Roustem, to summon him to court. Abul Malec met the Mirza at Balkh, and they came back with expedition. Timur disbanded the whole army, and set out before the baggage, marching in one day as far as others would in three or four. At his arrival at Vermin^a, the Mirza Roustem paid his respects to him, and was soon after sent to Chiraz to join the Mirza Mehemet Sultan.

Timur at his return from Capbac, had sent the Tavachi-Sekizac to the Mirza Chirac at Samarcand, with orders to send the Mirza Aboubekere, the Emir Roustem son of Tagi-Bourgas Berlas, Pir Ali son of Mamut Chah Yafouri, and other sons of Emirs to the imperial camp, with the five thousand horse which remain'd with him. This Mirza join'd the emperor at Bestan, and was receiv'd with all imaginable cares. Timur gave him a hundred thousand Dinars Cash.

Timur then sent for his generals and witnesses: he also made presents to all the officers of this prince's household; and then he sent him to his father the Mirza Mirancha at Tautis.

Our conqueror continu'd his road towards Samarcand; and in all the places he pass'd thro' the Emirs, captains and other officers, came to testify their obedience to him, and brought him presents of all sorts of rarities. When he arriv'd at Corassana, the Emir Anbaga immediately departed from Herat, to pay his devours to him; and when he had that honor granted him, he offer'd his presents, and sprinkled upon him gold and precious stones. Timur inform'd

^a A town of Capchac in the territory of Khor, long. 60. 30. lat. 35. 25.

himself wherever he pass'd of the condition of the people: he aveng'd those who were oppress'd by tyrants, and punish'd extortioners as an example to others, putting some of 'em to death. And the better to establish justice, and hinder the great lords from wronging the people, he made the Emir Allahdad inspector-general of Transiana.

Timur having cross'd the Oxus in boats before Amoye, he enter'd the country of Cuzar, where he found the empresses Sultan Beg Begum, Serai Mulk Canum, Totman Aga, and the other ladies and princesses who came to meet him with prince Charec; they sprinkled great quantities of gold and precious stones upon his head, and made their presents to him, which consisted of a thousand horses richly caparison'd, adorn'd with precious stones, and harnesses and bridles of gold; besides a thousand mules all of one colour. They gave thanks to God for the emperor's happy return, who departed from Cuzar, and arriv'd at Kech, where he lodg'd in the palace of the emperor, which he had built. He then went to visit the court of the Emir Chamseddin Kelar, and other great Sanctions of the country, where after his devotions, he gave largesses and alms to the Sanctions, who at that time dwelt there: he enter'd into the tomb of the Emir Tragan his father, that of his dear son the Mirza Gebanghir, and those of his other children and relations, where the whole Alcoran was recited by the readers; to whom he was exceedingly liberal. The principal men of the city of Kech, and all the great lords of divers provinces, cities and towns of Transoxiana, came forthwith to Kech, where they kiss'd the emperor before the emperor, congratulated him on his conquests, and wish'd him a long and prosperous

Book III. perous reign. Timur order'd a solemn feast with banquets and plays in Acherat, to entertain 'em, with all the ceremonies usual on such occasions.

At length Timur departed; and having pass'd the mountain of Kéch, made his entry into Samarcand, which the inhabitants had adorn'd; to receive this great emperor in triumph: on all sides were to be seen garlands of flowers with crowns, amphitheaters, and musicians performing the newest pieces of music to the honor of his majesty. The walls of the houses were hung with carpets, the roofs cover'd with them, and the shops set off with curious pieces. There was a vast multitude of people, and the streets were cover'd with velvet, satin, silk, and carpets, which the horses trampled under feet. Timur had no sooner made his entry, than he went to visit the sepulchers of the sultans, and of learned and illustrious persons: he gave great largesses to the dervises who took care of 'em, and alms to the poor; and at length he came to his palace, and sat upon the imperial throne. He order'd that for joy at his happy return, a magnificent feast shou'd be made with all manner of diversions, in his own palace of Gheuc Serai, where the greatest splendour and sumptuousness appear'd. All the poets compos'd verses in his praise, and nothing was to be heard but *Long live the emperor*.

After this feast was over, Timur entirely employ'd his time in the government of the state, and regulating the public affairs: he order'd the Cherifs, or descendents of Mahomet, the doctors, the men of letters, and the chief persons belonging to the mosques of his empire, who were then at court, to come before him; and he gave to every one of 'em, according to his rank

CHAP. LXVI.

The building of the palace of Baghi Chemel.

An. Dom.
1397.

AT the beginning of the spring of 799, Timur went to a pleasure house he had built north of Samarcand, and which for that reason he had nam'd Baghi Chemel, the garden of the north, where his canopy and royal tent were erected. He order'd a palace to be built in this delightful garden, whose beauty and magnificence should be the admiration of the monarch and which should host proper places for plays and banquets on days of festivity. He dedicated this palace to the prince, Bughl Khan, daughter of the Khan.

April
1397.

Each of these plans, according to the nicest rules of architecture. His highness having made choice of one of these plans, gave orders that the palace should be built according to that model: he commanded the astrologers to come before him, whom he join'd to observe the happy moment for beginning the building. According to their directions, the foundations were laid in the month of January, after 799, which answers to the year of the crocodile, under a fortunate horoscope. The four pavilions of the corners were distributed among the Emirs, who were to inspect the workmen. The most skilful masters in each art were employ'd: and as they were carefully observ'd, the work was soon in its desir'd condition: and Timur was so intent upon his building, that

and leaving a crown to their son, reflected upon the disorders which would arise at any time discord should creep in among them: but as he forelaw that his royal posterity would be perpetuated in the Mirza Charoc his eldest son, he resolv'd to give him during his life the propriety of the kingdom of Corasana, being that of all his kingdoms which by its situation seem'd fittest for the seat of his empire, as it lay in the fourth climate, and was a temperate country in the middle of Asia, between the two empires of Iran and Togan. The seat of the concenteration of the palace of Baghi Charoc was a favorable conjuncture for the enlargement of the Mirza. Soliman was invited thither by this happy occasion: and while most part of the lords of the empire were assembled, he presented the Mirza Charoc before him, together with some princely of the kingdom of Corasana, Sultan, and his brothers, and his sons. Then he nam'd Emirs and generals of the first rank for the principal posts in the court of this new foreign reign, of whom the Emir Soliman Chah was the most considerable, the others were lords of great figure. Each of 'em was put at the head of a company selected out of a Togan, and all the other Emirs had the honor to have their sons or brothers to accompany him. As soon as our conqueror had sent out his letters patent to establish Charoc king of Corasana, he tenderly embrac'd him, kiss'd his eyes and forehead, and dismiss'd him, not having rectify'd the sorrow he felt at his absence. The new king took leave of his father and set out at the head of his army, being accompany'd by the princes his brothers for two days journey, as also by the Emirs and great lords

of the emperor's of
their return home
road, and
where he
which
he

no sooner on
continued his
Amouye,
799,
the year of the Crocodile:
he was at
Telutschek, the Emir Achmet, with the
Oghuz, the great lords, lawyers, and persons
of quality of Herat, came to meet him in
company, and offered him their presents,
and attended him the remainder of his
journey. The last day of Chahar, he happily
came down from the meadow of Keshkeshan,
situated without the town of Herat, where he
chose for his residence the palace of Bagh Zage-
han, which signifies the garden of crows; and
there he immediately betook himself to render
homage to the governors of Corassana, Mazen-
deran, and other provinces, and receive their homage

June
1399.

and a few days of rest, and then he
brought him the largest and most fertile places;
and all the lords of governments, after having
seen their presents, congratulated him on his
coming to the crown. The night of the 21st
of the month 799, which answers to the year of
the Crocodile, he had a son born to him, who
had good omens for his ascent; advice of which
he immediately sent to the emperor, who nam'd
him *Shah Rukh*.

Sept. 25.

C H A P T E R L X V I I I .

Timur stays some time at Kyzil: Returns to the Miran Mubender Sultan from the same place of Kyzil.

IN the month of Chait of the said year Timur departed from Bagh Saltnah, and by Babayanah, and thence to the town of Kyzil, where he went down into the charming meadow of Kyzil, where he pitched his tent, and the meadow was so fertile, that it produced all manner of grain, the children of the meadow, and the fine grass which was so green, and the stream and the water which was so sweet, and the meadow was so fertile, that it produced all manner of grain.

Timur remained, and the town of Balkan, after which he departed thence, and ascended a delightful place, named Balkan Artongde, to spend the summer in. In the mean while the Miran Mubender Sultan, by order of the emperor of China, had sent from Chiraz to Ormuz a few thousand good army, returned to court, after which much of many countries, and by him, he sent his servants. He took the road of Dardistan, and Paron, accompanied by the Miran Mubender, and having left Selim, he went at Kyzil.

* A town of Fars, where they find fair of diamonds; in the middle of the town is a mountain of free stone, which stands single, not joining any other mountain; a town of Fars, 32-40, 33-40.

* A town of Fars near Seipagan.

and falling into a precipice, was slain. Some of the prince's domestics having pursued him to the top of the mountain, perceiv'd the dead body; they cut off his head, and cast it at the Sultan's feet.

This prince, having successfully finish'd his campaign, resolv'd to return to court; he departed by the ways of Ouroudgerd, pass'd by Hamadan, and took the road to Samarcand. Having gone thro' Corasana, he cross'd the Gihon, and had the honor to salute Timur at the summer palace of Selan. The sultan Timur receiv'd him, talk'd with him in private, to enquire how he pass'd in the campaign; he was most serviceable, and discover'd a great deal of just and reasonable counsel. He then set off his horse, and offer'd his sword and bow to Timur, who took them, and said, I will keep them as a memorial of your valor. Timur then sent him to his son, the Miran, who met him, and went to meet her; she had the pleasure of embracing him, and she so tenderly lov'd, and had so long desired to see, with the greatest impatience. As soon as the princess was arriv'd at Samarcand, she went to pay her respects to the emperor in the palace of Baghistan; she presented him with two embroidered with gold, and Arabian horses with saddles of gold; and to complete this valuable present, she gave to each of Timur's two sons embroidered with gold.

* Tamerlane's
grand-daughter.

...author of the Book of Edwards,
...of the palace, for his
...music, was there in person, and presided
over the rest. And first three dances;
and the principal Beghni Sultan * was there
...to the
laws of the Alcoran, and the manner of Ma-
homet. Then the principal eunuchs took leave
of the emperor to return to their families by the way
of Bocara.

An. Dom.
1397.

...of 799, Ti-
...that at the end of the delight-
ful meadow of Canigheul, a garden should be
laid out, whose beauty should surpass all the
gardens which had ever yet been in the world.
The astrologers made choice of the hour, and
then were to begin it, and the emperor
...to regulate the allegiances, and the
...of the provinces.
...some new master-piece, and in the
palace, which was to be built, and the
most skilled architects of Asia were hired to
...laid the foundations of a square
...and in the middle of each was a very high gate.
The columns of the palace were covered with
flowers of all sorts, as marble work, and
were covered with porcelaine of Canton.

each of the four quarters of the garden a very beautiful
 house, built with
 with
 the
 on the
 partitioned
 of fruit-trees, and others which only bore flowers.
 When the garden was completed, Timur
 called it the Garden of the Four Seasons, and in
 that garden which rejoices the heart, and the
 of the four seasons of the year, which
 were thirty fathoms high, were laid; the trees were
 planted in rows; it was adorn'd with all the
 things which could charm the eyes of men:
 and it was built exceeding strong. It was
 surrounded with a colonade of marble, which
 gave it a majestic aspect. As it was customary
 in palaces to some lady, Timur dedi-

icated it to his
 daughter, whom he had married before his
 marriage. The emperor then
 returned to Samarkand, and Timur
 went to the village of Penkiss, where he passed the
 winter, interlaving hunt books, or other
 games of cards by reason of the weather, which
 was so cold that the Timur and his
 went to the village of Penkiss, to visit the tomb
 of the great Alim, and of the tomb of
 the Imam, and the Muezzin Hassan. He caused
 the illustrious sepulcher to be rebuilt, it being
 nearly ruin'd; and he augmented it with a su-
 perior edifice, containing a lofty room, two Mi-
 narets, and a dome with four fronts, the fourth
 side

The history of Timur-Bec.

The emperor gave order for a feast to be prepared, to celebrate the grand victory. He commanded the great lords, judges, and doctors of the law, to attend him, and they waited upon him in the great hall. Timur-Bec, according to the custom of his religion, He was at

the same time congratulated by the emperor's princes his sons, the Emirs and Nobles, who presented upon him precious stones and pearls: and the feast lasted several days. Timur gave vests and considerable gratifications to the Navians and Mogul ladies, who accompanied the new Sultaness.

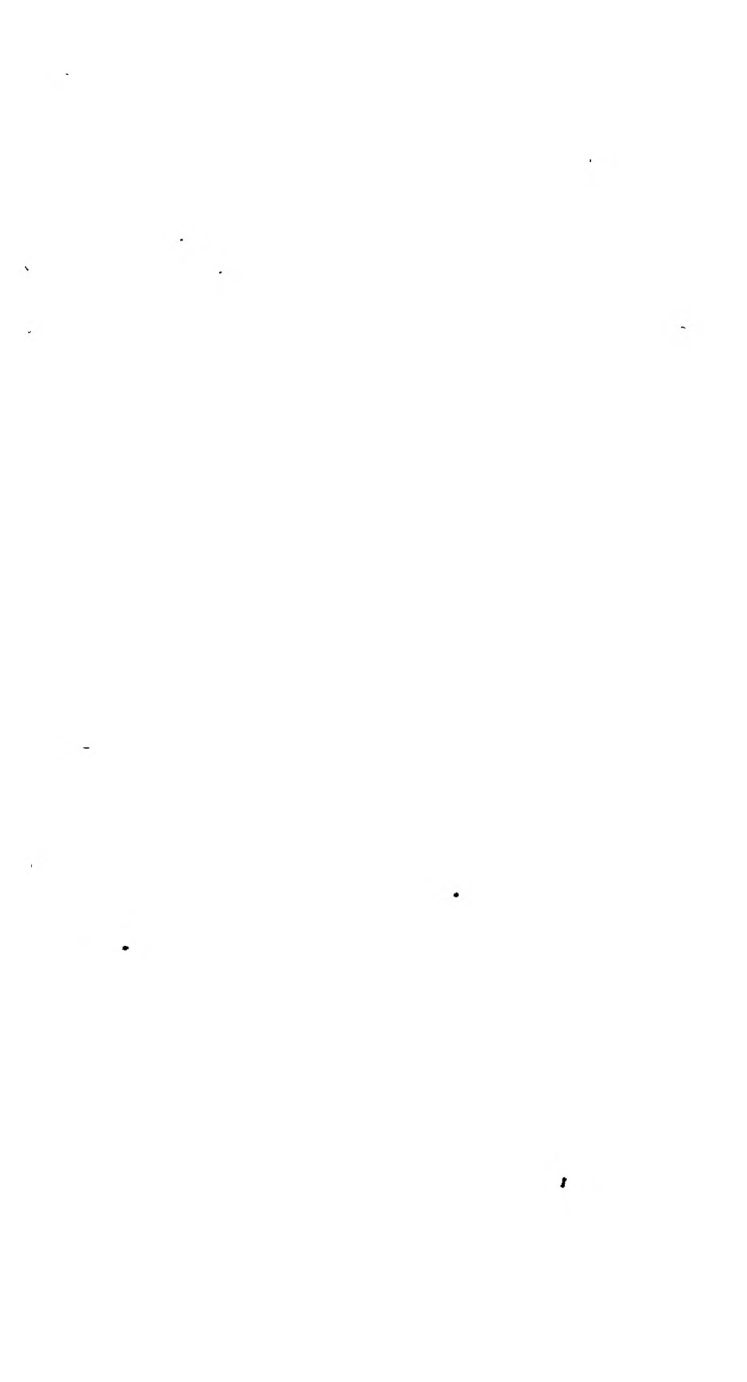
About this time ambassadors arriv'd from the great Khan, emperor of China, with abundance of curious presents. They were introduced to their audience by the great Emirs: they offer'd their presents, and after having declar'd the subject of their embassy, and deliver'd their credentials, they had their audience and return'd home.

Mohamed Sultan, governor of the province of Samarkand, desired him to build a fortress at the place, and to augment the fortifications of the town and neighbourhood, so that they had ever been, and to make the city flourishing. He nam'd for this purpose, the Emirs Birdi, Bei son of Barbuks, Hader, Scifodan, Codedan, Hussein, Chahar, Abbas, and others, with forty thousand horse. Accordingly they departed, and having pass'd the mountain Coulan, they went

A town of Mogolistan on the frontiers of China.

A mountain on the frontiers of Mogolistan towards China.

The end of the



col- 15
N 114/26 N'e

